



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

the 1990s, the number of people in the world who are undernourished has increased from 600 million to 800 million (FAO 1996).

There are a number of reasons for this increase. First, the world population has increased from 5 billion in 1987 to 6 billion in 1997, with a further 2 billion projected by the year 2025 (UNEP 1997). Second, the world population is becoming increasingly urbanized, with 50% of the world population now living in urban areas (UNEP 1997). Third, the world population is becoming increasingly aged, with the number of people aged 65 and over increasing from 200 million in 1987 to 300 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997).

Fourth, the world population is becoming increasingly mobile, with the number of people moving from rural to urban areas increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Fifth, the world population is becoming increasingly diverse, with the number of people from different ethnic groups increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Sixth, the world population is becoming increasingly educated, with the number of people with primary education increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997).

Seventh, the world population is becoming increasingly healthy, with the number of people living longer than 60 years increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Eighth, the world population is becoming increasingly wealthy, with the number of people living on less than \$1 a day increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Ninth, the world population is becoming increasingly mobile, with the number of people moving from rural to urban areas increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997).

Tenth, the world population is becoming increasingly diverse, with the number of people from different ethnic groups increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Eleventh, the world population is becoming increasingly educated, with the number of people with primary education increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Twelfth, the world population is becoming increasingly healthy, with the number of people living longer than 60 years increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997).

Thirteenth, the world population is becoming increasingly wealthy, with the number of people living on less than \$1 a day increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Fourteenth, the world population is becoming increasingly mobile, with the number of people moving from rural to urban areas increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Fifteenth, the world population is becoming increasingly diverse, with the number of people from different ethnic groups increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997).

Sixteenth, the world population is becoming increasingly educated, with the number of people with primary education increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Seventeenth, the world population is becoming increasingly healthy, with the number of people living longer than 60 years increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997). Eighteenth, the world population is becoming increasingly wealthy, with the number of people living on less than \$1 a day increasing from 100 million in 1987 to 200 million in 1997 (UNEP 1997).



DAN 6 B1





A MANUAL
FOR
STUDENTS OF DANISH
(DANO-NORWEGIAN).

HOW TO LEARN DANISH

(DANO-NORWEGIAN).

A MANUAL

FOR

STUDENTS OF DANISH

(DANO-NORWEGIAN).

Based upon the Ollendorffian System of Teaching
Languages, and adapted for Self-Instruction.

BY

E. C. OTTÉ.

LONDON:

TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.

—
1879.

[*All Rights reserved.*]



LONDON :

J. S. LEVIN, STEAM PRINTER, 2, MARK LANE SQUARE,
GREAT TOWER STREET, E.C.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	ix
FIRST LESSON.—On the Indefinite Article	1
SECOND LESSON.—On the Definite Article	4
THIRD LESSON.—On the Definite Article (<i>continued</i>)	8
FOURTH LESSON.—On Nouns	12
FIFTH LESSON.—On the Gender of Nouns	15
SIXTH LESSON.—On the Formation of the Plural of Nouns... ..	19
Conjugation of the Verb <i>at have</i> (= to have)	23
Conjugation of the Verb <i>at være</i> (= to be)	24
SEVENTH LESSON.—On Adjectives	25
EIGHTH LESSON.—On Adjectives (<i>continued</i>)	29
The Danish Cardinal Numbers	30
NINTH LESSON.—On Numerals	32
The Days of the Week	33
The Months of the Year	33
TENTH LESSON.—On certain Terms of Quantity, etc.	36
ELEVENTH LESSON.—On the Comparison of Adjectives	39
TWELFTH LESSON.—On Irregular Adjectives	43
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs <i>at få</i> (= to get, to obtain), and <i>at blive</i> (= to become, to be, to remain)	47
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs <i>at skulle</i> , to be obliged, ought (= shall, should), and <i>at ville</i> , to be willing (= will, would)	49
THIRTEENTH LESSON.—On Pronouns	51
FOURTEENTH LESSON.—On the Demonstrative Pronouns, etc.	55
FIFTEENTH LESSON.—On Pronouns (<i>continued</i>)	60
SIXTEENTH LESSON.—On the Regular Verbs	64
SEVENTEENTH LESSON.—On Adverbs	69

	PAGE
EIGHTEENTH LESSON.—Comparison of Adverbs, etc....	73
Examples of Verbs belonging to Class I.	78
Examples of Verbs belonging to Class II.	78
Verbs conjugated both in accordance with Conjugations I. and II.	79
NINETEENTH LESSON.—Prepositions	79
TWENTIETH LESSON.—Conjunctions, Interjections	83
TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.—Passive Verbs, etc.	87
Paradigms of Passive Form of Verbs	89
TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.—On Irregular Verbs	92
Exampless of Irregular Verbs	93
TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.—On the Composition of Verbs	97
TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.—On Irregular and other Verbs	101
List of Titles, Tradesmen's Callings, etc.	105
TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.—Examples of Irregular Verbs	106
TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.—On the Plural of Nouns	111
TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.—Examples of Nouns which make their Plural in <i>er</i>	116
TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.—Examples of Nouns which remain the same in the Plural as in the Singular	119
TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.—Examples of Words, the meanings of which differ in accordance with difference of Gender	123
THIRTIETH LESSON.—On Compound Verbs	126
List of Geographical and other Terms	130

PART II.

THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.—On the Formation of Words	131
THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.—On the Formation of Words (<i>continued</i>)— Nouns	135
THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.—On the Formation of Words (<i>continued</i>)— Adjectives	139
THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.—On the Formation of Words (<i>continued</i>)— Verbs	143
THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON.—On the Formation of Words (<i>continued</i>)— Adverbs and Prepositions	147
THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.—On Compound Words	150

	PAGE
THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.—Syntax.—On the use of the Indefinite Article	155
THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.—On the use of the Definite Article ...	160
THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.—On the Articles (<i>continued</i>)	164
FORTIETH LESSON.—On Nouns	168
FORTY-FIRST LESSON.—On Nouns (<i>continued</i>)	172
FORTY-SECOND LESSON.—On Adjectives	177
Names of Animals, etc.	182
FORTY-THIRD LESSON.—On Pronouns	183
FORTY-FOURTH LESSON.—On Pronouns (<i>continued</i>)	188
FORTY-FIFTH LESSON.—On Verbs	193
FORTY-SIXTH LESSON.—On the Auxiliary Verbs, etc.	197
FORTY-SEVENTH LESSON.—On Adverbs, etc.	202
FORTY-EIGHTH LESSON.—On Prepositions	206
List of Geographical and other Terms	210
FORTY-NINTH LESSON.—On Prepositions (<i>continued</i>)	211
FIFTIETH LESSON.—On the use of certain Prepositions and Conjunctions	216
FIFTY-FIRST LESSON.—On the use of certain Conjunctions	219
FIFTY-SECOND LESSON.—On the use of certain Conjunctions (<i>continued</i>)	223
FIFTY-THIRD LESSON.—On the use of some of the Auxiliaries	227
FIFTY-FOURTH LESSON.—On the use of the Participles	231
Names of Minerals, etc.	235
FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.—On the different Forms of Verbs	236
FIFTY-SIXTH LESSON.—On the Distinctive Characteristics of Irregular Verbs	240
First Class	241
FIFTY-SEVENTH LESSON.—On the Irregular Verbs (<i>continued</i>)—	
Second Class... ..	245
Third and Fourth Classes	246
FIFTY-EIGHTH LESSON.—On the Irregular Verbs (<i>continued</i>)—Fifth and Sixth Classes	250
Seventh, Eighth, Ninth, and Tenth Classes	251
FIFTY-NINTH LESSON.—On Passive and Deponent Verbs	255
SIXTIETH LESSON.—On the use of the Auxiliaries at <i>vere</i> and at <i>have</i>	259

	PAGE
SIXTY-FIRST LESSON.—On the use of the Potential Mood, etc. ...	263
SIXTY-SECOND LESSON.—On the Position of Words in a Sentence, etc. ...	266
SIXTY-THIRD LESSON.—On the Apposition of Words... ...	271
APPENDIX I.—Examples of the use of Danish Prepositions... ...	275
Danish Idioms in common use	277
Abbreviations of Common Occurrence	286
APPENDIX II.—The Alphabet	287
On the use of the Letters	289
On Accentuation	291
On the Division of Syllables	292
On Spelling and Mode of Writing	293
APPENDIX III.—Recapitulation of Grammatical Rules	296
Et mology	296
The Indefinite Article	296
The Definite Articles	297
The Noun	298
The Declination of Nouns	301
Adjectives	303
On the Comparison of Adjectives	305
Adverbs	308
On the Comparison of Adverbs	309
Pronouns	310
Verbs	312
Regular Verbs	313
Passive Verbs	313
Deponent Verbs	314
Irregular Verbs	315
On the Moods and Tenses of Verbs	320
Prepositions	322
Conjunctions	325
Interjections	326
On the Formation of Words	326
Composition of Words	328
Construction of Sentences... ..	329

INTRODUCTION.

THE term "Dano-Norwegian" has been used throughout the present work to avoid the constant repetition of the words *Danish and Norwegian*, both being, in point of fact, one and the same language.

Of late years a desire has been shown by certain patriotic Norwegians to secure for their native land a special mother-tongue, distinct from that which has for ages been common to the natives of Denmark and Norway. But the attempt to revive the language spoken by Norwegians before the union of their country with Denmark, at the close of the fourteenth century, would seem as impracticable and undesirable in our times, as if Englishmen were to insist upon incorporating in their written language the various remnants of Old English, which still survive in the local dialects of Cumberland, Dorset, and Somerset.

Since the Reformation, Norwegians and Danes have had the same Bible and Psalter, and have studied from the same school-books, while the same national ballads, songs, and proverbs have been common to both. The illiterate classes of Norway have, indeed, used Old Northern words, and spoken with a special provincial accent, but the peasants of Jutland, Fyen, and Sealand have done the same. The educated classes, on the other hand, have long spoken and written the same form of Danish, whether they were natives of Norway or of Denmark. In every branch of Danish literature Norwegians have added their full share to the common national treasury of learning, while in some departments it is not too much to say, that their country may challenge comparison with the most highly cultivated nations of Europe. In proof of this we need only point to that "Admirable Crichton" of Norway, Ludvig Holberg (born at Bergen, 1684, died in 1754), in whom

Scandinavians justly pride themselves in having a second Molière. The numerous works with which Holberg enriched his Danish mother-tongue include learned treatises on Scandinavian and European History, Biography, Statistics, Geography, Jurisprudence, Metaphysics, and Philosophy. But great as were the merits of some of these, they have been eclipsed by the more brilliant light of his inimitable comedies, the broad humour and sparkling wit of which are still as keenly appreciated by every class of Danes as they were a century and a half ago, when Holberg's plays were first acted in the theatres of Copenhagen.

Such a common heritage of language, which has grown with the growth of the literary and social culture of the two nations, is not to be cancelled at the will of one generation. Nor is there reason to fear, that any attempt to rehabilitate the Norwegian of past ages will have other results than that of preserving, for Scandinavians, the many relics of provincial dialects, which have been transmitted by word of mouth, from one generation to another, among the peasants of the Bergen, Hardanger, Nordland, Telemark, and other districts of Norway. Every effort, made for the preservation of these important heirlooms of the past condition of the language, merits the gratitude of all who are interested in the study of the Scandinavian tongues; and, happily for the fate of some of the old Norwegian dialects, several glossaries of provincial words have, during the last two centuries, been compiled by natives of the several districts in which they were current. The earliest of these compilations that deserve notice is a work, printed at Copenhagen, in 1646, and entitled *Den norske Dictionarium eller Glosebog*. And here it is curious to note that the author, Christian Jensen, pastor of Askevold in the Søndfjord, deems it necessary to crave the indulgence of the learned for his attempt to preserve a record of words, used only by illiterate persons; although he expresses a faint hope, that his dictionary may be found serviceable to those who desire to become better acquainted with their own mother-tongue. A century later, the learned historian and naturalist, Erik Pontoppidan, bishop of Bergen, brought out his *Glossarium Norvagicum, eller Samling af rare norske Ord*, (Bergen, 1749), which, small as it is, contains much interest-

ing matter that had escaped Jensen's notice. From these and other materials, augmented by the results of numerous local glossaries, compiled since Pontoppidan's time, Herr Ivar Aasen has, in our own day, successfully constructed a complete dictionary of popular Norwegian words. This exhaustive work, which appeared at Christiania in 1878, under the title of *Norsk Ordbog, med dansk Forklaring*, "Norwegian Dictionary, with explanations in Danish," makes no pretensions to be a school class-book, or to serve as a guide to the literary written language of the country, but simply claims to be a depository of all genuine northern words, with the numerous variants and differences of meaning belonging to them in different districts. In this respect it would be difficult to overrate the value of Herr Aasen's compilation, not merely for Scandinavians, but also for English students, who will find that his explanations of the strictly local meanings of many nearly obsolete Norwegian words, not unfrequently, throw considerable light on obscure etymologies in their own language.

The choice of the system of spelling and writing Danish, which should be adopted in the present work, has not been unattended by some degree of doubt and difficulty, since Danish orthography has not yet fully emerged from that condition of uncertainty and confusion, which is inseparable from the period of transition, which must intervene between the breaking away with an old state of things, and the acceptance of that which is new. Danish spelling has in fact, within the last ten years, been passing through a radical revolution, in which the objects principally aimed at have been : to arrest the further progress of the marked degeneration into which the language had fallen through contact with foreign elements; and to fix the rules for spelling upon sound phonetic principles, having respect to the Old Northern, and to the existing usages of the other Scandinavian people. This movement, which derived its origin from Rask, and some of the earlier Danish grammarians, who had long been sensible of the absolute need of instituting a complete change in the spelling of their mother-tongue, owes its present successful development to the Orthographical Congress, which met at Stockholm, in the summer of 1869.

The objects set forth at this meeting were : to deliberate upon the best means of removing the differences that existed in the written languages of the Scandinavian peoples, in order to bring them more closely into harmony with the rules of the Old Northern, from which Swedish (*Svensk*) and Danish (*Dansk-Norsk*) have derived their common origin.

The Resolutions passed by the Congress, which was composed half of Swedes, and half of Danes and Norwegians, have been so cordially received in all three countries, that they have achieved, within the limited period of one decennium, nearly all the results for which grammarians had been unsuccessfully striving during more than two hundred years. The system of spelling, advocated by the Congress of 1869, although practically in its infancy, owes its existence to long-standing requirements, since the necessity for introducing a radical change in Danish orthography had been recognised, alike by Danes and Norwegians, from the moment that scholars began to turn their attention to the study of their native tongue. One of the earliest and most zealous advocates for a reform in the spelling and writing of Danish was the accomplished and genial Peder Syv (born in 1681, died in 1702), who specially distinguished himself by the practical good sense and sound learning, with which he demonstrated the evils, resulting from the practice of his times, in using letters and modes of construction which were wholly foreign to the Old Northern. He waged special war against the inelegant practice, that had crept into the language, of doubling the consonants ; but neither precept nor ridicule could cure his countrymen of the taste for indulging in such verbal superfluity as that, for instance, of using *ffu* to represent the sound of *v*, as in *haffue* (*have*, to have). Yet, no man had a better claim than Peder Syv to command a hearing in regard to grammatical or linguistic questions, for while his great work, entitled *Grammatica danica* (Kjöbenhavn, 1685) had earned for him the appellation of *Philologus regius lingvæ danicæ*, his various collections of Danish Proverbs, and his edition of the old *Kæmpeviser*, or national ballads, had made him known to his countrymen as a zealous and proficient student of their common national literature.

It is difficult to say whether Peder Syv effected any im-

provement in the vicious spelling of his times, but he was soon followed by an able disciple, J. K. Rosenqvist Højsgård, (born 1698, died in 1778), who, taking up another weak point in his native language, assailed the cumbrous practice of doubling the vowels, as for example, in writing *Steen*, (*Sten*) stone; *Viin* (*Vin*) wine; *Noord* (*Nord*) north; *Huus* (*Hus*) house, etc. It is to Højsgård, moreover, to whom we are indebted for the earliest suggestion that the double *a* (*aa*), which has not the same sound as simple *a*, should be represented by the character *ä*, which is found in early Danish and Norwegian MSS., and had been used in Swedish from the middle of the sixteenth century. The vowel-sounds received special attention from Højsgård, who, in addition to two learned treatises, known as *Förste og anden Prøve af dansk Ortographie* (Kjöbenhavn, 1748) "First and Second Examination of Danish Orthography," wrote a comprehensive work, entitled *Accentueret og raisonneret Grammatica, som viser det danske Sprog i sin naturlige Skikkelse*, 1747, "An Accentuated and Systematic Grammar, showing the Danish language in its natural forms."

If these works, like Peder Syv's, failed to bring about any radical amendment in the spoken and written language of their day, they had, at all events, the distinguished merit of being accepted by the great philologist, Rasmus Kristian Rask, as the basis of that system of orthography, which has become identified with his name, and which he first made popularly known in a paper, which appeared in the *Tidsskrift for nordisk Oldkyndighed*, entitled *Forsøg til en videnskabelig dansk Ret-skrivningslære med Hensyn til Stamsproget og Nabosproget* (Kbhvn., 1825), "An Attempt towards a Scientific Danish Orthography, having reference to the derivative mother-tongue (Old Northern), and to the language of our neighbours (Swedish)."

Rask's system, although advocated by some of the ablest northern scholars of his time, as N. M. Petersen and others, was neglected, if not ridiculed, by the majority of his countrymen, who regarded it as at once impracticable and pedantic. It has, however, outlived neglect and ridicule, and, with some few modifications and amendments, is now embodied in the Resolutions passed by the Stockholm Congress, through which it seems destined to exert a lasting influence on the character

and future development of Swedish and Danish. In doing honour to the original founders of the new system of Danish orthography, and to those who have so ably reduced to a practical form the suggestions of Syv, Höjsgård, Rask, and Petersen, it would be unjust were we to omit to record the fact, that it is mainly due to the exertions of one man, Professor Dâ, of Christiania, that the meeting at Stockholm was called together, and consequently that to him his Scandinavian brethren are indebted for the great benefits which their mother-tongue has derived from the deliberations of the Congress of 1869.

Professor Dâ had long been sensible of the important practical advantage which the Scandinavian peoples would secure for themselves by a more uniform method of spelling and writing their respective languages; the differences in which were often exaggerated, and even in some cases created, by the absence of fixed rules of orthography. Actuated by the desire to bring about such a result, Professor Dâ visited Copenhagen in the summer of 1868, and by his strenuous endeavours secured the cooperation of the leading Danish university professors and teachers, who willingly entered into his suggestion, that the question of Scandinavian spelling should be submitted to the consideration of a mixed Commission of Swedes, and of Danes and Norwegians. In this scheme the Swedish and Norwegian universities concurred, and, after some discussion, it was finally decided that each of these bodies should choose its appointed number of representatives, in accordance with its own special rules for the election of delegates. In Copenhagen, the university authorities invited writers, publishers, printers, and other sections of the community interested in the question, to take part, through representatives, in the election of the Danish members of the Congress, which, it was agreed, should hold its meetings at Stockholm, during the last week of July, 1869. The mixed Commission consisted of 18 members (including in the Dano-Norwegian half, the poet Ibsen, Professor Dâ, and the able Danish lexicographer Svend Grundtvig), and was under the presidency of Professor Malmström, of the university of Upsala.

Full reports of the proceedings were drawn up at the close

of the meeting, by the respective secretaries, and were written and printed in strict conformity with the resolutions that had been unanimously accepted by each section. In 1870, Herr Svend Grundtvig, in conjunction with Herr A. J. Block and K. J. Lyngby, Secretary of the *Dansk-Norsk* (Dano-Norwegian) section of the Congress, brought out, at Copenhagen, a Danish dictionary, *Dansk Retskrivnings-Ordbog*, which had been compiled in exact accordance with the rules laid down at the meeting. This dictionary, which gives only words that are genuinely Danish, either through origin or long-established adoption, has been selected as the standard for spelling in the present work from the conviction, which, we think, can scarcely fail to be shared by all who are following the progress of Danish and Norwegian literature, that this new and scientifically well-based system of orthography will rapidly supersede the older and less exact modes of spelling. The benefits derived from the new forms of spelling and writing are not limited to appearance, or to the convenience arising from the rejection of superfluous characters; nor are they restricted to natives, for the changes, which the Stockholm Congress advocates, have the important advantage that they very materially lessen the apparent differences between Dano-Norwegian (*Dansk-Norsk*) and Swedish (*Svensk*), and thus supply foreigners, who have studied one of these forms of Scandinavian, with a key to the comprehension of the sister-tongue.

Having thus traced the progress of the changes in Danish orthography from their earliest development, we will briefly enumerate the principal features of the new system, which are as follows:—

1. To use *æ* and *ä* in both languages, wherever the sound of these letters is etymologically warranted; discarding in Swedish the use of the character *ä*, and in Dano-Norwegian that of *e* or *o*, often erroneously made use of to represent the sounds of *æ* and *ä*;
2. To substitute in both languages *t* for *th*;
3. To replace in both *q* by *k*;
4. To eliminate *x*, and replace it by *ks*;
5. To avoid, as far as practicable, to write as one compound any associated group of words, which belong

- to different parts of speech (as *ig^araftes*, which should be written *i G^ar Aftes*, last evening);
6. To substitute Latin characters in writing and printing for the Gothic, or German;
 7. To discard *e* in all cases where it is mute;
 8. To discard the use of double vowels;
 9. To substitute the character *ä* for *aa*;
 10. To use *j*, instead of *i*, in the so-called diphthongs *ej*, *øj*;
 11. To discard *j* after *g* and *k*, followed by a soft vowel, as *æ*, *e*, *ö*;
 12. To change *vt* into *ft*;
 13. To discard mute *d* before *sk*, and *ns*, and wherever else it may occur, unless its presence is required on etymological grounds (as in *vidste*, knew, from *at vide*, to know);
 14. To avoid doubling a consonant, except for the purpose of marking the plural of a noun ending in a short syllable;
 15. To discard the use of capital initial letters for common nouns, unless they begin a sentence.*
 16. To use an accent to distinguish words of different meanings, which are spelt the same; as: *let* (light), *lét* (laughed); this distinctive mark should, however, only be employed where the context fails to show the sense.

We have excluded from the above summary as irrelevant several points which refer exclusively to Swedish. It ought, however, to be observed that in the majority of cases, where the two languages differed, the *Dansk-Norsk* was generally found to have deviated much more widely than the *Svensk* from the rules and usage of the Old Northern. The Swedes have kept their mother-tongue much purer from admixture with foreign elements than their neighbours, and this is, undoubtedly, in a great measure due to the geographical position of Sweden, and to her long immunity from foreign

* In this particular instance we have not followed the rules laid down in S. Grundtvig's *Dansk Retskrivnings-Ordbog*. This deviation from the regulations of the new system was made, however, solely with a view of giving the student some help in recognising nouns as distinct from the other parts of speech.

domination. Denmark, on the other hand, from her close contiguity to Germany, the incorporation of German-speaking populations with her own people, and the presence of a long line of rulers, who, with few exceptions, never forgot that they were Germans by origin, has for ages been exposed to Germanising influences, which could not fail to affect the genuine Scandinavian character of her language. This is shown, amongst many other points, in the presence of numerous alien particles, and of certain modes of grammatical construction, not met with in Swedish; while the spoken language of the Danes betrays, in its less strongly-marked Northern intonation, its subjection to influences which have not acted on Norwegians with equal force, and have had comparatively little power over the Swedes.

In conclusion, it would seem almost superfluous to remind the reader, that, through the acquisition of the living Scandinavian languages, the English student will open for himself an easy road towards the attainment of Icelandic, or Old Northern, the sister-tongue of Anglo-Saxon, and a most efficient interpreter of the derivations of his own language. Even modern Danish, in spite of its numerous adventitious foreign ingredients, will be found able to show the English student the significance of numerous expressions, whose etymological meaning has been lost by the disappearance from his mother-tongue of certain derivatives, which still survive in the language of Denmark and Norway. In proof of this we will only select a few words, taken at random, as in the following list, which might easily have been extended to much greater dimensions:—

DANISH.

to ban	<i>at bande</i>	to curse
barm	<i>Bærme</i>	dregs
bast	<i>Bast</i>	a straw band
a beck	<i>Bæk</i>	a stream
to blazen	<i>at blæse</i>	to blow
to bleach, blight	<i>bleg</i>	pale
to box	<i>at bække</i>	to strike
bracken	<i>Bregne</i>	a fern
brackish	<i>brak</i>	flat
to brag	<i>at brage</i>	to crash
brocade	<i>broget</i>	variegated

buckwheat	<i>Boghvede*</i>	{ <i>Bog</i> , beech <i>Hvede</i> , wheat
bye-law	<i>Bylov</i>	town-law
to clap	<i>at klappe</i>	to strike
clout	<i>Klud</i>	a rag
hay-cock	<i>Kok</i>	a heap
costermonger	<i>Kost</i>	a broom
to cow	<i>at kue</i>	to intimidate
to cram	<i>at kramme</i>	to crush
a crate	<i>Krate</i>	copse, undergrowth
crockery	<i>Krug</i>	a jug
to cruise	<i>at krydse</i>	to cross
deal, dole	<i>Del</i>	a part
dowdy	<i>doven</i>	lazy
to drill	<i>at drille</i>	to make a hole
to egg on	<i>at egge</i>	to stir, urge
a fell	<i>Fjæld</i> (Norw.)	mountain-side
a fellow	<i>fælles</i>	mutual
flask	<i>Flaske</i>	a bottle
flagstone	<i>Flag</i>	a flake, cutting
a flint	<i>at fise</i>	to split
gammon (slang)	<i>Gammen</i>	mirth
garden	{ <i>Gård</i> <i>Gærde</i>	yard enclosure
to harrow	<i>at hærje</i>	to ravage
rose hip	<i>Hybe</i>	seed-vessel of a rose
husband	{ <i>Hus</i> <i>Bonde</i>	{ house peasant owner
jolly boat	<i>Jolle</i>	house master
to nag	<i>at nage</i>	little boat
neighbour	{ <i>nær</i> <i>Bo</i>	to gnaw near
queen, quean	<i>Kvinde</i>	dwelling
ransack	{ <i>Ran</i> <i>Sag</i>	woman robbery
rowan	<i>Røn</i>	action
to score	<i>at skære</i>	mountain ash
scurf	<i>Skorpe</i>	to cut
scrubwood	<i>skrubbet</i>	a crust
smuggle	<i>Smug</i>	rough, rugged
tarn	<i>Tjærn</i>	underhand
twine, twist	<i>tvende</i>	small lake
ware, aware	{ <i>var</i> <i>at blive var</i>	two watchful
wont	<i>Vane</i>	to perceive
wrist	{ <i>Håndvrist</i> <i>Fodvrist</i>	custom wrist
		anle,

(the joints on which the hand and foot turn [*at vriste*, to turn]).

* So called from the resemblance of the grain to a beech-nut.

It now only remains for us to state, that the object aimed at in the present grammar has been to enable the learner to be his own teacher, should circumstances not allow him to secure the help of an efficient master. With this end in view, the Ollendorffian system has been followed in its main principles of repetition and retrogression; each lesson being worked out by means of some additional words, or new rules, together with those already learnt in previous lessons. Whilst this method of progress by retrogression has been followed throughout, provision has also been made for the requirements of students, who may desire to combine with it a study of the Danish grammar in a more abstract form. We have accordingly devoted the last 50 pages of the work to a complete summary of all the grammatical rules given in the lessons, including remarks on the alphabet, accentuation, spelling, construction of sentences, etc.

By this double method of recapitulation, we have endeavoured to meet the wants of all learners, and to afford the self-taught student the means of acquiring, with facility, a practical, yet thorough knowledge of the Danish language.

LONDON, 1879.

E. C. OTTÉ.





FIRST LESSON.

ON THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

Det ubestemte Kendeord.

The indefinite article in Danish must agree in gender with the noun which it precedes.

The Danish language recognises two distinct genders, viz.:

I. The *common gender*, including all masculines and feminines, which is known in Danish as *Fælleskøn*, from *fælles*, common, mutual, and *Køn*, gender or sex.

II. The *neuter gender*, which is known as *Intetkøn*, from *intet*, nothing, and *Køn*, gender or sex.

The Indefinite Article (*det ubestemte Kendeord* [= *Artikkel*]) is:—

COMMON GENDER.

En, a.

NEUTER GENDER.

Et, a.

This article precedes in an independent form the noun to which it refers, precisely in the same manner as the indefinite article is used in English.

All nouns are either of the common, or of the neuter gender.

EXAMPLES of nouns of both genders:—

COMMON GENDER.

en Mand, a man (husband)
en Kone, a woman (wife)
en Pige, a girl
en Dreng, a boy
en Ven, a friend
en Bog, a book
en Skov, a wood
en Kniv, a knife
en Stol, a chair
en Snor, a string, cord.

NEUTER GENDER.

et Barn, a child
et Hus, a house
et Værelse, a room
et Vindue, a window
et Skib, a ship
et Brev, a letter
et Æble, an apple
et Lys, a light
et Bord, a table
et Glas, a glass.

The following words are given for the formation of sentences in connection with these nouns :—

<i>ja</i> , yes	<i>At have</i> , to have.
<i>nej</i> , no	
<i>men</i> , but	PRESENT INDICATIVE.
<i>og</i> , and	<i>Singular.</i>
<i>også</i> , also	<i>jeg har</i> , I have
<i>ikke</i> , not	<i>du har</i> , thou hast
<i>eller</i> , or	<i>han har</i> , he has
<i>nu</i> , now	<i>hun har</i> , she has
<i>med</i> , with.	<i>De har</i> , you have.

It will be observed that all persons in the singular, and *De*, answering to our "you," take the same form of the verb, viz., *har*. This is in conformity with the ordinary mode of conjugating Danish verbs, which, with few exceptions, to which attention will be drawn in the lessons on the irregular verbs, take an *r* in the present tense of the indicative mood for all persons of the singular, (including *De*, You).

COMMON. NEUTER.	<i>At være</i> , to be.	
<i>god</i> , good	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	<i>her</i> , here
<i>godt</i> , large	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>der</i> , there
<i>stor</i> , short	<i>jeg er</i> , I am	<i>hvor</i> , where
<i>kort</i> , short	<i>du er</i> , thou art	<i>på</i> , on
<i>lang</i> , long	<i>han, hun er</i> , he, she is	<i>i</i> , in
<i>min</i> , my	<i>De er</i> , you are.	<i>ud</i> , out.
<i>Deres</i> , your.		

SIMPLE PHRASES.

To illustrate the use of the words already given.

Jeg har et godt Værelse i mit Hus.	I have a good room in my house.
Er Du der?	Art thou there?
Ja, her er jeg.	Yes, here am I.
Hvor er Deres Kone?	Where is your wife?
Hun er med mit Barn.	She is with my child.
En Dreng er i Deres Skov.	A boy is in your wood.
Har ikke min Ven et stort Hus?	Has not my friend a large house?
Han har en stor Stol og en lang Kniv.	He has a large chair and a long knife.
Der er en kort Snor og et stort Bord.	There is a short string and a large table.
Hvor er min Ven?	Where is my friend?
Han er i Deres Skib.	He is in your ship.
Hun har et godt Æble med.	She has a good apple (with her).

Der er et Lys på et Bord.	There is a light upon a table.
Mit Værelse har et Lys.	My room has a light.
Der er et Vindue her.	There is a window here.
Du er også på mit Skib.	Thou art also onboard my ship.
En Dreng eller en Pige, men ikke en Mand eller en Kone.	A boy or a girl, but not a man or a woman.
Nu! hvor er Du?	Now (then)! where art thou?
Jeg er her, og hun er også her i Deres Hus.	I am here, and she is also here in your house.
Er hun en god Pige?	Is she a good girl.
Nej, en god Pige er hun ikke.	No, she is not a good girl.
Min Mand har et langt Brev.	My husband has a long letter.

FIRST EXERCISE.

A woman has a house and a wood. I have a knife and a string. Have you a knife? Yes, I have a knife. Have you a husband? No, I have not a husband. Has a boy a ship? No, a man has a ship. A house has a room. A room has a table and a chair also. A window has glass. Has a girl a book, or has he a book? No, now I have a book and a letter. A room has a light. A woman has a glass. Have you a friend? Yes, I have a friend, a wife, and a child. A boy has an apple, but not a knife or a string. A man has a candle. Has a girl or a boy a house and a wood? No, now she has not a house or a wood; but he has a house. A boy has a table and a chair, and a child has an apple and a book. Has a girl a friend? No, she has not a friend. Have you a letter? Yes, I have a letter.

Translate into English.

En Mand gav¹ en Pige et Æble. Jeg har et Hus med et Værelse og et stort Vindue. Har De et godt Værelse? Nej, men min Ven har et godt Værelse, og et godt Hus også. En Dreng gav min Kone en Kniv og en Bog med en Snor. Har min Kone et Brev? Nej, hun har ikke et Brev, men hun har en Bog. Mit

¹ Gav, gave; from give, to give.

Hus har et Værelse med et Vindue, et Bord og en Stol. Har Deres Ven et Skib? Ja, min Ven har et Skib og også en Skov, men nu har han ikke et Hus eller et Værelse. Har De min Stol eller mit Bord? Nej, jeg har ikke Deres Stol eller Deres Bord. Hun gav et Barn et Æble, og jeg gav en Pige et Lys og et Glas. Har De mit Glas eller mit Lys? Nej, jeg har ikke Deres Lys eller Deres Glas. Hun har en god Skov, men ikke et godt Hus. Har Deres Mand ikke en god Skov? Nej, han har ikke en god Skov, men han har et godt Hus.

SECOND LESSON.

ON THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

Det bestemte Kendeord (= Artikel).

The definite article in Danish is used under two forms:—

- I. The *substantive form*, which is expressed by an affix.
- II. The *adjective form*, which is used as an independent word.

In either case the definite article (*den bestemte Artikel*) must agree in gender and number with the noun which it defines.

I.—THE SUBSTANTIVE FORM (*Substantivernes Artikel*).

This is used to designate the noun, but only in cases where the latter is *not* preceded by an adjective, pronoun, or other qualifying part of speech.

This form of the article is expressed by the following affixes:—

<i>Singular.</i>	
COMMON GENDER.	NEUTER GENDER.
<i>en</i> or <i>n.</i>	<i>et</i> or <i>t.</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	
BOTH GENDERS.— <i>ene</i> or <i>ne</i> .	

The following examples will show how these affixes are incorporated with the noun, forming when thus appended one sole word, which expresses the noun and its corresponding article:—

<i>en Mand</i> , a man	<i>Manden</i> , the man
<i>en Kone</i> , a woman	<i>Konen</i> , the woman
<i>et Barn</i> , a child	<i>Barnet</i> , the child
<i>et Værelse</i> , a room	<i>Værelset</i> , the room
<i>Mænd</i> , plural of <i>Mand</i> , man	<i>Mændene</i> , the men
<i>Koner</i> „ <i>Kone</i> , woman	<i>Konerne</i> , the women
<i>Børn</i> „ <i>Barn</i> , child	<i>Børnene</i> , the children
<i>Værelser</i> „ <i>Værelse</i> , room	<i>Værelserne</i> , the rooms.

It will be observed that where the noun ends in *e*, as *Kone*, it only takes an *n*, instead of *en*, as in *Mand*, to designate the common gender of the definite article. Similarly in neuter nouns, ending in *e*, as *Værelse*, the definite article is expressed by the addition of *t* only, as *Værelset*, and not of *et*, as in *Barn*, *Barnet*.

By the above examples it will be seen that the definite article, in its simple indicative character, combines with the noun, and forms one word with it.

In this peculiarity of the Danish article (which will be more fully considered in Part II.) we have a remnant of an old northern mode of construction, which is still common to all the Scandinavian dialects.

N.B.—As the use of this article-affix presents special difficulties to foreigners, it is desirable that the student should thoroughly familiarise himself with it before he passes on to the consideration of the other parts of speech.

<i>en Pære</i> , a pear,	pl. <i>Pærer</i> , pears	<i>grå</i> , gray
<i>en Blomme</i> , a plum	„ <i>Blommer</i> , plums	<i>hvid</i> , white
<i>en Kåbe</i> , a cloak	„ <i>Kåber</i> , cloaks	<i>rød</i> , red
<i>en Hat</i> , a hat	„ <i>Hatte</i> , hats ¹	<i>grøn</i> , green
<i>en Stok</i> , a stick	„ <i>Stokke</i> , sticks	<i>blå</i> , blue
<i>en Pen</i> , a pen	„ <i>Penne</i> , pens	<i>gul</i> , yellow
<i>en Ryg</i> , a back	„ <i>Rygge</i> , backs.	<i>sort</i> , black.

Kan jeg få ? can I obtain (get) ?

COMMON. NEUTER.

<i>smuk</i> , pretty	<i>smukt</i> , pretty	<i>hans</i> , his	<i>fra</i> , from
<i>lille</i> , little	<i>lille</i> , little	<i>hendes</i> , her, hers	<i>til</i> , to (prep.)
<i>bred</i> , broad	<i>bredt</i> , broad	<i>inde i</i> , within	<i>at</i> , to (conj.)
<i>smal</i> , narrow	<i>smålt</i> , narrow	<i>ude i</i> , without	<i>af</i> , of (prep.)
<i>kær</i> , dear	<i>kært</i> , dear	<i>oppe i</i> , up in	<i>ud af</i> , out of

¹ Words of one syllable ending in a consonant, as *g*, *k*, *m*, *n*, *s*, *t*, in which the vowel is short and unaccented, as *Ryg*, *Hat*, *Ven*, *Stok*, *Glas*, double the final consonant, when modified by the definite article *en*, *et*, as *Ryggen*, *Hatten*, *Vennen*, *Stokken*, *Glasset*.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

To illustrate the use of the words given in this, and the preceding Lesson.

Hvor er Manden, og hvor er Dren- gen?	Where is the man, and where is the boy.
Pigen er her, men ikke Konen.	The girl is here, but not the woman.
Vennen har et lille Barn.	The friend has a little child.
Barnet er inde i Huset.	The child is inside the house.
Værelset har et smukt Vindue.	The room has a pretty window.
Her er Pigen med Stolen.	Here is the girl with the chair.
Der er Bordet med Lyset.	There is the table with the light.
Jeg har et Lys, min Ven, men Lyset er ikke paa Bordet.	I have a light, my friend, but the light is not on the table.
Hvor er Pennen og hvor er Brevet?	Where is the pen, and where is the letter?
Han har Hatten på.	He has his (the) hat on.
Hun har Stokken med.	She has the stick (with her).
Konen har Æbler, Blommer og Pærer.	The woman has apples, plums, and pears.
Manden har Børn.	The man has children.
Barnet er ude i Skovene.	The child is out in the woods.
Her er Brevet fra Vennen.	Here is the letter from the friend.
Hans Kone gav Kåben til Pigen.	His wife gave the cloak to the girl.
Kan jeg få hendes sorte Stok?	Can I get her black stick?
Stokken er på Stolen inde i Værelset.	The stick is on the chair in the room.
Nej, hendes Kåbe kan De ikke få.	No, you cannot have her cloak.
Barnet har en smal Ryg.	The child has a narrow back.
Ryggen på Stolen er ikke smal.	The back of the chair is not narrow.

SECOND EXERCISE.

I have the knife and the string. Have you a husband? Yes, I have a husband. Has the woman a child? Yes, she has a boy. Has the friend a ship? No, he has the house. The wife has the wood, but the husband has the house. The letters, the tables, the

ships, the knives, and the strings. The boy has a letter, a pear, and an apple. The room has a table. The house has a room. Has the boy the table and the knife? No, but he has the ship and the string. Have you a boy? Yes, I have a boy. Has the friend a wife? No, but he has a house. The child has the knife, but the woman has the table. The man, the woman, and the child. The friend and the boy. The house, the room, and a ship. The woman has the letter, and the boy has the apples, the pears, and the plums. The child has the apple, the knife, and the string; but the man has the ship, a house, and the woods. She has the letter and the table. I have the stick, the hat, and the cloak. Can you get a white chair? Can I obtain a green, yellow, blue, or red string?

Translate into English.

Han har Skibet, men hun har Huset. Mændene og Manden. Jeg har en Dreng. Drengen har Skibe, Æbler, Pærer og Borde. Konen har Breve. De har Husene og Skovene, men Vennen har Skibene. Barnet har Æblet. Brevet har en grøn Snor. Værelset har et Bord. Manden har Knivene, og Drengen har Snoren og Stokken. Konen har Værelserne. Drengen har Knivene og Snorene. Har De Skibet? Nej, min Mand har Skibet. Har Drengen Hatten, Stokken, Snoren, Kåben og Brevet? Drengen har en sort Hat, en god Stok, en grå Kåbe, en grøn og rød Snor, en hvid Hat og en sort Kniv. Kan jeg få et rødt Æble? Jeg har ikke et rødt Æble eller en gul Blomme. Hatten har en blå og rød Snor. Stokken har en gul og hvid Snor. Kniven har Snoren. Min Pige har Kåben, Hatten, Stokken, Lyset, Æblet, Blommen, Pæren og Kniven. Hatten har Snoren. En Hat har en Snor. Jeg har et Hus. Huset har et Værelse. Værelset har et Lys. Lyset har et Glas. Glasset har en Snor.

THIRD LESSON.

ON THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

(Continued.)

II.—THE ADJECTIVE FORM (= *Adjectivernes Artikkel*).

The definite article, when standing before an adjective, as “*the good man*,” is used in Danish in its separate and independent form, as “*den gode Mand*,” and is then designated the “adjective article.”

This form of the article is expressed as follows :—

<i>Singular.</i>	
COMMON GENDER.	NEUTER GENDER.
<i>den</i> , the.	<i>det</i> , the.
<i>Plural.</i>	
BOTH GENDERS.— <i>de</i> , the.	

Examples of its mode of application :—

<i>SINGULAR.</i>	<i>PLURAL.</i>
<i>den gode Mand</i> , the good man	<i>de gode Mænd</i> , the good men
<i>den lange Kniv</i> , the long knife	<i>de lange Knive</i> , the long knives
<i>det smukke Barn</i> , the pretty child	<i>de smukke Børn</i> , the pretty children
<i>det sorte Skib</i> , the black ship	<i>de sorte Skibe</i> , the black ships.

A. The adjective, as will be seen by the above examples, ends in *e* in both genders and numbers, when following the definite article.

B. The adjective, when qualifying a noun of common gender, as *Mand*, man, *Kone*, woman, *Skov*, wood, etc., and when preceded by the indefinite article *en*, does not take an *e*, as in the above case; but remains unchanged from its primary abstract form, as for example: “*en god Mand*, *en god Kone*, *en god Skov* ;” *god*, good, being the abstract form of the adjective.

C. An adjective qualifying a noun of neuter gender, as *Barn*, child, *Værelse*, room, *Skib*, ship, etc., and preceded by the indefinite article *et*, takes a final *t*, except in cases to which attention will be drawn in subsequent lessons, as for example: *et godt Barn*, *et stort Værelse*, *et langt Skib*, etc.

D. Adjectives, when preceded by possessive pronouns, take an *e* for both genders and numbers, in the same manner as

when they are preceded by the definite independent article, *den, det, de*, as for example : *min gode Mand*, my good husband ; *hans kære Kone*, his dear wife ; *Dit smukke Barn*, your handsome child ; *hendes store Værelse*, her large room, etc.

E. In expressions such as *den Gode, det Store, de Smukke*, the adjective is used to express a noun, which is understood as in *den Gode*, the good (the word *man* is understood), in *det Store*, the great (*thing* is understood), in *de Smukke*, the handsome (the word *persons* is understood). Where the adjective is thus used with the definite independent article it is written with a capital initial letter, to indicate that it represents a noun ; nouns or their representatives being thus distinguished in Danish from other parts of speech.

min, c., *mit*, n. ; pl. *mine*, my
vor, c., *vort*, n. ; pl. *vore*, our
Din, c., *Dit*, n. ; pl. *Dine*, thy
deres, c., n., and pl. *their*
det er, it is
vi, we ; *vi have*, we have
I, ye ; *I have*, ye have
de, they ; *de have*, they have
*jeg*¹ *ønsker*, I wish
Du kommer, thou comest
han, hun kan, he, she can
idag, to-day, *igår*, yesterday
Farvel, farewell, good-bye
en Fader, a father
en Moder, a mother

en Bedstefader, a grandfather
en Bedstemoder, a grandmother
en Søn, a son
en Datter, a daughter
min Herre,² Sir ; *Hr.*, Mr.
min Frue,² Madam ; *Fru*, Mrs.
min Frøken,² Miss
en Dag, a day
God Dag, good day
en Morgen, a morning
God Morgen, good morning
en Aften, an evening
God Aften, good evening
en Nat, a night
God Nat, good night.

¹ *Jeg*, I, is usually written with a small *j*, when it does not begin a sentence. *De*, you, is always written with a capital initial to distinguish it from *de*, they, while *Du*, thou, and *I*, ye, are occasionally printed and written with small initial letters. *De*, you, is used in ordinary conversation ; *I*, ye, only where numbers are addressed, and *Du*, thou, as in German, between parents and children, or intimate friends, in prayer, special appeals, etc.

² These titular forms of address are not often used by Danes or Norwegians in ordinary conversation ; but in speaking to strangers, or where a deferential tone is adopted, the third person may be employed, as for example : *Kan Herren sige mig ?* will you tell me, *literally* : can the gentleman tell me ? *Kommer Fruen ?* Are you coming ? *literally* : is the lady coming ? Oldfashioned politeness exacted the use of the titular *Herr* (*Hr.*), *Fru*, *Frøken*, in referring to the relatives of the person addressed, as for example : *Hvor er Deres Fru Moder ?* where is your mother ? *Her er Deres Herr Fader*, here is your father.

PHRASES.

To illustrate the use of the words given in this and the preceding Lessons.

Nej, idag kan jeg ikke få min smukke, lange hvide Kåbe.	No, I cannot get my handsome, long, white cloak to-day.
Hvor er Deres kære Bedstemoder?	Where is your dear grandmother?
Hun er i Skoven med Deres Datter, Fru Hansen.	She is in the wood with your daughter, Mrs. Hansen.
Kan hun få et Brev i Aften?	Can she get a letter this evening?
God Dag, kære Moder.	Good day, my dear mother.
Farvel, min Kære.	Good-bye, my dear.
Hvor er den lille Stol idag?	Where is the little chair to-day?
Her er det store Bord, min Dreng.	Here is the large table, my boy.
Deres smukke Bog er på det sorte Bord.	Your pretty book is on the black table.
Vi have den lange Kniv.	We have the long knife.
Idag har Manden den gode Bog.	The man has the good book to-day.
God Nat, min Fader.	Good night, father.
Kommer Herren til Moder idag?	Are you coming to (my) mother to-day, Sir?
Nej, min Dreng; idag kommer jeg ikke.	No, my boy; I shall not come to-day.
Det er en smuk Kone.	That is a pretty woman.
Ja, det er hun.	Yes, she is.
Nu kommer den kære Ven med den smukke Lille.	Now the dear friend is coming with the pretty little one.
God Aften, min Fröken.	Good evening (Miss, Madam).
Har Frökenen den hvide Kåbe?	Have you the white cloak? (Miss, Madam).

THIRD EXERCISE.

Where is thy mother? My good mother is not here. The woman has thy table. She has the black table. The large house has not a large room. The pretty boy has a black cord. Where has the knife a black string? My wife has a large table. His son has the ship, but not the knife. The green woods and the large houses.

Where have I his white knife? Have you her black knife? No, I have not her knife or her strings. Have you the good apples here to-day? No, but my child has good apples, pears, and plums to-day. My good friend has your black table and the book. This child has a black chair. The woman has a good husband, and a good father also. Where have you a house? Have you not houses and woods there, Sir? My husband has beautiful (*smukke*) woods here, and her father has a large ship. The child has large apples. She has a good room to-day. The man has good boys there. The woman has my large hats there. This large house has not large rooms. Has the girl a letter to-day? Yes, to-day she has a letter. Has the knife a white string? The knife is not here. Where is your husband to-day, Madam? My husband is not here. Where is thy child? Good evening my son.

Translate into English.

Her har min Fader vort smukke Bord, Stolen, Glasset og de hvide Knive. Har Du mit Brev min Datter? Nej, kære Moder, men jeg har Din smukke, store Bog, og Hr. Jansen har Brevet. Hvor er Bordet og den sorte Stol? Bordet er i det hvide Værelse, men Stolen er ikke der idag. Min kære Mand har en stor Skov og et Hus, men Huset er ikke stort. Deres Hr. Fader er i Skoven med min kære Datter. Kommer Fruen og den gode Kone med Barnet i Skoven idag? Nej, idag kommer jeg ikke i Skoven med Konen og det kære Barn. Det er godt; kan jeg få Æbler, Blommer, Pærer og en Kniv. Nej, her i Huset har jeg ikke Æblerne eller Blommerne, men Pærerne har jeg i det gule Værelse. Önsker Frökenen at få en blå Hat idag? Nej, idag önsker jeg at få Kåben og Stokken. Hvor er min grå Kåbe? Kan jeg få et smukt Værelse med et stort Bord og en god Stol. Nej, her i Huset kan De ikke få et smukt Værelse.

FOURTH LESSON.

ON NOUNS (= *Navneord*).

All nouns in Danish belong either to the common gender, *Fælleskøn*, including masculines and feminines, or to the neuter gender, *Intetkøn*.

GENERAL RULES.

I. To the *common gender* belong nouns which express a masculine or a feminine being, as for example: *en Fader*, a father; *en Moder*, a mother; *en Tjænestepige*, a servant-girl; *en Tjæner*, a man-servant; *en Hane*, a cock; *en Høne*, a hen; *en Sanger* (fem. *Sangerinde*), a singer; *en Slægtning*, a relation; *en Laps*, a dandy; *en Tolk*, an interpreter.

II. To the *neuter gender* belong the names of countries, cities, metals, letters, etc., as for example: *det lille Danmark*, little Denmark; *det folkerige London* (*et Folk*, people; *rige*, rich), the populous London; *det gule Guld*, the yellow gold; *det hvide Søl*, the white silver; *det store A*, the big A, etc.

To the *neuter gender* also belong—with many exceptions—nouns in which the precise sex is not specified, and which are taken to indicate a class, as well as an individual, as for example: *et Barn*, a child; *et Væsen*, a being; *et Menneſke*, a person (human being); *et Dyr*, an animal; *et Lam*, a lamb; *et Får*, a sheep; *Kvæget*, cattle; *et Bæſt*, a beast, brute; *et Æſel*, a donkey; *et Svin*, a pig.

As exceptions to this general rule we may instance *en Fugl*, a bird; *en Fiſk*, a fiſh; *en Heſt*, a horſe; *en Hund*, a dog.

ſtyg, ugly, disagreeable
sød, ſweet
ſur, ſour
glat, ſmooth
rå, raw
tro, trofaſt, faithful
utro, unfaithful
fuld, full
tom empty.

kun, blot, only
for, for
uden, without
fra, from
endnu, yet, ſtill
med, with
om, about
nok, yet, enough
dog, though, yet

meget, much, very
ganske, quite
temmelig, tolerably
vi ere, we are
I ere, ye are
de ere, they are
at komme, to come
at give, to give
at ønske, to wiſh.

<i>et Land</i> , a country,	<i>Landsmand</i> , compatriot
<i>England</i> , England, <i>engelsk</i> , English,	<i>en Engländer</i> , an Englishman
	<i>en Engländerinde</i> , an English- woman
<i>Tyskland</i> , Germany, <i>tyisk</i> , German,	<i>en Tysker</i> , a German
<i>Finland</i> , Finland, <i>finisk</i> , Finish,	<i>en Fin</i> , <i>Finlap</i> , a Finlander
<i>Holland</i> , Holland, <i>hollandsk</i> , Dutch,	<i>en Hollænder</i> , a Dutchman
<i>Rusland</i> , Russia, <i>russisk</i> , Russian,	<i>en Russer</i> , a Russian
<i>Preussen</i> , Prussia, <i>preussisk</i> , Prussian,	<i>en Preusser</i> , a Prussian
<i>Danmark</i> , Denmark, <i>dansk</i> , Danish,	<i>en Dansk</i> , a Dane
<i>Sverrig</i> , Sweden, <i>svensk</i> , Swedish,	<i>en Svensker</i> (pl. <i>Svenske</i>), a Swede
<i>Norge</i> , Norway, <i>norsk</i> , Norwegian,	<i>en Normand</i> , a Norwegian.

PHRASES.

To illustrate the use of some of the words given in this and the preceding Lessons.

Er Deres Datter i Tyskland eller i Rusland?	Is your daughter in Germany or in Russia?
Hun er med min Fader i Holland.	She is with my father in Holland.
Hvor er den preussiske Frøken?	Where is the Prussian young lady?
Hun er endnu i Sverrig.	She is still in Sweden.
Min Ven, Engländeren, har en meget trofast norsk Tjæner.	My friend, the Englishman, has a very faithful Norwegian servant.
Hvor er det stygge Menneske?	Where is that disagreeable person?
Han er endnu i Norge.	He is still in Norway.
I ere Svenske.	Ye (you) are Swedes.
Nej, min Herre, vi ere fra det kære Danmark.	No, Sir, we are from (belong to our) dear Denmark.
Hunden og Fåret ere med min lille Pige og min Vens Søn.	The dog and the sheep are with my little girl and with my friend's son.
Det er godt.	That is well.
Nu har De det godt her i Norge.	Now you are well off (you have it well) here in Norway.
Huset er fuldt af Mennesker.	The house is full of people.
Hendes Hat er ganske glat.	Her hat is quite smooth.
Hun gav Barnet et temmelig ¹ stort Æble.	She gave the child a tolerable large apple.
Hvor kan jeg få en lille Hund?	Where can I get a little dog?

¹ Adjectives expressing nationality are written with a small initial letter, as :—*den engelske Pige*, *det svenske Barn*.

Det er blot et lille Vindue, men Vinduet i dit Værelse har meget godt Glas. Lyset er stygt her i Huset. Er Pigen med Barnet i Skoven? Nej, Deres trofaste Tjæner har den lille Dreng i det gule Værelse. Norge, Sverrig og Danmark ere ikke folkerige Lande, men England er et meget folkerigt Land. Guldet er et gult Metal. Der er godt Sölv i Norge og i Sverrig, men ikke i Danmark. Engländerinden har et tomt Hus. Detsvenske Skib er kort, smalt og stygt. Min danske Tjænestepige er ikke trofast. Er Tjæneren her i Huset? Nej, den engelske Tjæner er ikke her, men den danske Tjænestepige er her med min Kone. Kvæget er i Skovene, men Svinet er ikke der. Min Mand har en hvid Hest, et gråt Æsel og et hvidt Lam. Lammene og Fårene ere i Skoven. Hvor er Fisken? Fisken er på det sorte Bord inde i Huset. Min kære Moder gav min Mand en stor Hest. Hvor er Hesten? Hesten er i det tomme Hus. Pigen har en Hane og en Høne og den store sorte Fugl. Min norske Tolk er en stor Laps. Tolken er her. Han gav Æblet, Blommen og Pæren til min Moder, og Fisken og Fuglen til det lille Barn.

FIFTH LESSON.

ON THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

To the *common gender* belong generally :—

I. Words ending in *dom*, *hed*, *skab*, which indicate a quality or character, as for example: *Barndom*, childhood; *Stolthed*, pride; *Troskab*, fidelity.

II. Words ending in *de* and *e*, as for example: *Længde*, length; *Brede*, breadth.

III. Words derived from verbs, as for example: *Læsning*, reading, from *at læse*, to read; *Vækst*, growth, from *at vokse*, to grow.

The feminine of titles or personal designations is formed by

adding *inde* to the masculine, as for example : *en Danser*, fem., *en Danserinde*, a dancer ; or, in a few cases, by adding *ske* or *ning*, as : *en Løgner*, fem., *en Løgnerske*, a liar ; *en Dronning*, a queen (from the disused old word *Drot*, a ruler).

In designations of nationality the masculine and feminine forms are either identical, as : *en Dansk*, a Dane ; or the feminine is formed by adding *inde* to the masculine, as : *en Engländer*, an Englishman, *en Engländerinde*, an English-woman.

Distinctions of sex are sometimes expressed by the help of another noun or pronoun, having a special sexual character, as for example : *Bonde*, a peasant, fem., *Bondekone*, a peasant woman ; *Enke*, a widow, masc., *Enkemand*, a widower ; *Barn*, child ; *Pigebarn*, a girl-child ; *en Kat*, a cat ; *Hankat*, Tom-cat, *Hunkat*, she-cat ; *Kanariehan*, canary-cock, *Kanariehun*, canary-hen.

Many names of animals differ, as in English, in the masculine and feminine, as for example : *en Tyr*, a bull ; *en Ko*, a cow ; *en Vædder*, a ram ; *en Får*, a ewe.

Feminine proper names are variously formed, by adding to the masculine *a*, *e*, *ine*, etc., as for example : *Theodor*, fem. *Theodora* ; *Frederik*, fem. *Frederikke* ; *Hans*, fem. *Hansine*.

To the *neuter gender* belong :—

I. Words ending in *at*, *et*, *eri*, *ti*, as : *Kvadrat*, a square ; *Kabinet*, a closet ; *Krammeri*, trumpery ; *Politi*, police.

II. Some words of one syllable formed from verbs, as : *et Skrig*, a scream, from *at skrige*, to cry out ; *et Digt*, a poem, from *at digte*, to compose verses.

udmærket, remarkable,
excellently
døjlig, beautiful
stolt, proud
venlig, friendly
hæstlig, plain, ugly
lykkelig, happy
farlig, dangerous
fittig, industrious
sand, true
betydelig, considerable

en Kirke, a church
en Stemme, a voice
en Vogn, a carriage
en Stald, a stall, stable
en Farve, a colour
en Saks, scissors
en Kage, a cake
en Flid, industry
et Stykke, a piece
(*et*) *Kød*, flesh, meat
(*et*) *Brød*, bread

snart, soon
straks, directly
næsten, nearly
hende, her
ham, him
mig, me
os, us
Dem, you (obj. case)
dem, them
sin, his, her own
alt, all, quite

at *elske*, to love
at *bringe*, to bring
at *tage*, to take
at *få*, to get, procure
at *se*, to see
jeg ser, I see
at *gå*, to go
han går, he goes

at *købe*, to buy
jeg kan købe, I can buy
(*en*) *Dejlighed*, beauty
et Stykke, a piece
en Familie, a family
et Bur, a cage
et Skur, a shed, outhouse
at *tage på Landet*, to go into the country.

alle (pl.), all
slet ikke, not at all.
ofte, often
efter, after
før, before
sig (refl. pron.), him-
self, herself

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Min sorte Ko er i min store Kostald.

My black cow is in my large cowshed.

Hvor er Deres kære Bedstemoder?
Hun er i Kirke med Bedstefader.

Where is your dear grandmother?
She is in church with (my) grandfather.

Hendes Venskab for Danserinden
er mig meget kært.

Her friendship for the dancer
pleases me greatly (is very dear to me).

Min Veninde Leopoldine er i Vognen med den lykkelige Englænderinde.

My friend, Leopoldine, is in the carriage with the fortunate Englishwoman.

Det er Længden af Skibet.

That is the length of the ship.

Er det Farven af Din Hat og Din Kåbe?

Is it the colour of thy hat and thy cloak?

Er den dejlige Dronning stolt?

Is the lovely queen proud?

Ja, hendes Stolthed er mærkværdig.
Bondekonen bringer mig en Fugl
og et Fuglebur.

Yes, her pride is remarkable.

The peasant-woman is bringing me a bird and a bird-cage.

Jeg giver Dem mit Ur og min Saks.

I give you my watch and my scissors.

Kan Pigebarnet få Kagen og Brødet?

Can the little girl have the cake and the loaf?

En Dansk gav os den hæslige Hankat.

A Dane gave us the ugly Tom-cat.

Min Søn køber sig snart en stor Vogn.

My son will soon buy (himself) a large carriage.

Kan min Mand ikke straks få Hesten?

Cannot my husband have the horse directly?

Snart er Hesten her; den er i Stalden og kommer straks.

The horse will soon be here; it is in the stable, and will come immediately.

FIFTH EXERCISE.

I do not love pride, but I love fidelity. The length and breadth of the church. The singer has a remarkably fine voice. The Englishman is in the carriage with the queen. Here is a closet in the room. The bull is in the wood, but the cow is in the shed, and the horse, the ewe, the cock, and the hen are also in the wood. The cat is in the large room, where the cock and hen-canary are in the cage. The peasant and the pretty peasant-woman are in the church. A Dane is in the house. The widow is remarkably handsome and friendly. I see the horse and the boy in the stable. The police are (is) not here to-day. The dancer (*fem.*) is very proud, and remarkably beautiful. Where is her friendship? The breadth is considerable. I have a long poem. She goes immediately to her mother. I love my friend, the singer, but I do not see him (see him not). Now the young girl is in the house. The carriage has a window, with a square of glass. A liar is an ugly creature. She sees the man. I love my father. He is going into the country. His friendship is not very great. I see a beautiful church. My watch does not go. Where is the child's cake?

Translate into English.

Der er kun Krammeri i Kabinettet. Hun er en udmærket god Sangerinde; hendes Stemme er dejlig; og er hun ikke et venligt Menneske. Min Datter elsker hans lille Pige. Jeg ser Koen i Stalden, Fisker på Bordet, Fåren (*or* Fåret) med Tyren og Kvæget i Skoven, og Bondepigen i Huset med Hanen og Hønen. Hvor er mit smukke Fuglebur? Deres Bur er på den lille Stol. Går De i Kirke idag? Nej, jeg tager på Landet med min Bedstefader og Bedstemoder. Nu er det dejligt på Landet. Hun går straks. Min Datter elsker den smukke Veninde. Han gav mig en stor Hund. Deres Søn er meget stolt. Nej, det er han ikke; han er venlig nok.

Hvor er Deres flittige Veninde, Enken? Hun er på Skibet med min lille Pige. Hvor er Politiet idag? Jeg ser Mændene i en Vogn. Jeg elsker min Bedstefader, men ikke min Bedstemoder. Han gav mig et Digt at læse. Der er et Skrig ude i Skovene. Ser De det hæslige Dyr.

SIXTH LESSON.

ON THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS (= Navneord), etc.

The plural of Danish nouns is formed as follows :—

I. In **e**.—In words of one syllable, as *Hus*, house, pl. *Huse*; *Lov*, leave, law, pl. *Love*; in words ending in unaccented *er* and *om*, as *Rytter*, knight, cavalry-man, pl. *Ryttere*; *Sygdom*, illness, pl. *Sygdomme*.

II. In **er**.—In words ending in a *y*, as *By*, town, pl. *Byer*; and in words of foreign origin, ending in *al*, *in*, *ent*, *ar*, *er*, *et*, *ir*, *or*, etc; as, for example, *en General*, a general, pl. *Generaler*; *et Gardin*, a curtain, pl. *Gardiner*; *en Husar*, a hussar, pl. *Husarer*; *en Karakter*, a character, pl. *Karakterer*; *en Student*, a student, pl. *Studenter*.

III. Some plurals are formed irregularly, and must be learned by a simple effort of memory :—

Examples :—

<i>en Mand</i> , a man,	pl. <i>Mænd</i>	<i>en Hånd</i> , a hand,	pl. <i>Hænder</i>
<i>en Fader</i> , a father,	„ <i>Fædre</i>	<i>en And</i> , a duck,	„ <i>Ænder</i>
<i>en Moder</i> , a mother,	„ <i>Mødre</i>	<i>et Barn</i> , a child,	„ <i>Børn</i>
<i>en Datter</i> , a daughter,	„ <i>Døttre</i>	<i>en Himmel</i> , heaven, sky,	„ <i>Himle</i>
<i>en Søster</i> , a sister,	„ <i>Søstre</i>	<i>en Engel</i> , an angel,	„ <i>Engle</i>
<i>en Broder</i> , a brother,	„ <i>Brødre</i>	<i>en Frøken</i> , unmarried lady,	„ <i>Frøkener</i>
<i>en Gås</i> , a goose,	„ <i>Gæs</i>	<i>et Øre</i> , an ear,	„ <i>Øren</i>
<i>en Fod</i> , a foot,	„ <i>Fødder</i>	<i>et Øje</i> , an eye,	„ <i>Øjne</i> .

Some nouns are used only in the plural, as *Forældre*, parents; *Søskende*, brothers and sisters; *Penge*, money; *Klader*, clothes;

Sæder, custom, usage. Some are used only in the singular, as *Brød*, bread; *Hår*, hair; *Får*, sheep; *Dyr*, animal; *Ære*, honour; *Håb*, hope; *Uld*, wool; *Fruentimmer*, woman.

As in English, nouns are not modified by any case, except the genitive, which is formed by the addition of *s*, or *es*, according to the termination of the word; as, for example :—

SINGULAR.—Nom., Dat., Obj.

<i>et Skib</i> , a ship,	<i>Skibet</i> , the ship,	<i>det store Skib</i> , the large ship.
<i>en Ko</i> , a cow,	<i>Koen</i> , the cow,	<i>den store Ko</i> , the large cow.

Genitive.

<i>et Skibs</i> , of a ship,	<i>Skibets</i> , of the ship,	<i>det store Skibs</i> , of the large ship.
<i>en Koes</i> , of a cow,	<i>Koens</i> , of the cow,	<i>den store Koes</i> , of the large cow.

PLURAL.—Nom., Dat., Obj.

<i>Skibe</i> , ships,	<i>Skibene</i> , the ships,	<i>de store Skibe</i> , the large ships.
<i>Køer</i> , cows,	<i>Kørne</i> , the cows,	<i>de store Køer</i> , the large cows.

Genitive.

<i>Skibes</i> , of ships,	<i>Skibenes</i> , of the ships,	<i>de store Skibes</i> , of the large ships.
<i>Kørs</i> , of cows,	<i>Kørnes</i> , of the cows,	<i>de store Kørs</i> , of the large cows.

The genitive *es* occurs as a rule in words ending in the vowels *a*, *i*, *u*, *y*, *æ*, *o*, and in *s* or *sk*; as, for example: *en By*, a town, gen. *Byes*; *en Tjavs*, a rag, gen. *Tjaveses*; *en Saks*, scissors, gen. *Sakses*.

As in English, the genitive case may be indicated by the use of the preposition *of* (Danish *af*); as, for example: *Mælken af Koen*, the milk of the cow; *en Ven af mig*, a friend of mine.

<i>at leve</i> , to live	<i>et Øjeblik</i> , a moment
<i>at takke</i> , to thank	(en) <i>Tak</i> , thanks
<i>at hilse</i> , to greet	<i>et Hjerte</i> , a heart
<i>at tale</i> , to talk	<i>et Ord</i> , a word
<i>at bevare</i> , to preserve	(en) <i>Gud</i> , God
<i>at velsigne</i> , to bless	(en) <i>Skuld</i> , fault, guilt
<i>at vente</i> , to wait	<i>et Hjem</i> , a home
<i>at finde</i> , to find	(en) <i>Klokke</i> , clock
<i>at blive</i> , to remain, become	<i>hos</i> , ¹ at, at the house of
<i>at håbe</i> , to hope	<i>velkommen</i> ! welcome
<i>at forlade</i> , to remit, to forgive	(en) <i>Forladelse</i> , forgiveness.

¹ *Hos* corresponds to the French *chez*, but it does not admit of being used in a reflective sense, unless in some cases where *hjemme* is associated with it; thus, for instance, such sentences as: "Madame est chez elle," "Monsieur, est-il chez lui?" &c., are inadmissible in Danish, and must be

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Hvorledes lever De ?

Mange Tak !

Tak skal De have.

Tak !

Det går mig godt.

Hils Deres Moder.

Hjærtelig Velkommen.

Gud velsigne Dem !

Gud bevare os !

Vænt et Øjeblik.

Kun et Ord.

Tak for Sidst.

Nu straks ! på Øjeblikket

Om Forladelse !

Vær så god.

Det er min Skyld.

Hvis Skyld var det ?

Alt forladt !

Hvorlænge bliver De her ?

Jeg véd det ikke.

Er De færdig ?

Jeg bliver hjemme til efter Klokken fire.

De vil ikke finde ham hjemme før Klokken fem.

Jeg tror det.

Jeg véd det.

How are you ? *lit* : How live you ?

Many thanks.

Thank you. *lit* : Thanks shall you have.

Thank you. *lit* : Thanks.

I am well. *lit* : It goes well with me.

Remember me to your mother. *lit* : Greet your mother.

You are heartily welcome.

God bless you.

God preserve us.

Wait a moment.

Only one word.

Thanks for the last time (of entertainment).

Now immediately. In a moment.

Forgive me (excuse me). *lit* : for forgiveness.

Please (I beg). *lit* : Be so good.

It is my fault.

Whose fault was it ?

Pray, do not mention it. *lit* : all forgiven.

How long do you remain here ?

I do not know.

Are you ready ?

I shall remain at home till after four o'clock.

You will not find him at home before five o'clock.

I believe so. *lit* : I believe it.

I know it.

expressed as follows : either, *Fruen er hjemme hos sig*, or better thus : *Fruen er hjemme* ; or *Herren hjemme hos sig* ? or better, *er Herren hjemme* ? The distinctive applicability of *hos* and *hjemme* corresponds, therefore, very closely with the sense conveyed by the expressions "at," "at the house of," and "at home" in English, as for example : I was at Jansen's, *Jeg var hos Jansens*. Is Mr. Turner at home to-day ? *Er Herr Turner hjemme idag* ? No, he is not at home, he is at the house of his brother. *Nej, han er ikke hjemme, han er hos sin Broder*.

Jeg håber det.	I hope so (it).
Kommer De hos mig idag?	Are you coming to me to-day? (my house).
Nej, jeg skal hos dem idag.	No, I am going to them to-day. (their house).
Han var hos os igår.	He was with us (at our house). yesterday.

SIXTH EXERCISE.

The peasant-woman has ducks and geese, and her daughter, the pretty peasant-girl, has a cock and a hen. The angels in heaven. The heavens. The father has money, and the mother has clothes. My children, my parents, and my brothers and sisters are in the country. The Danish laws. The law of Sweden. The woman's sickness. The window has curtains. I see the cavalrman, the hussar, and a general. The child's hands, ears, and eyes. The young lady has very pretty hands. Here is my hand. My daughters have the wool. The ducks are in the wood. I have bread and milk. Is the general here to-day? No, he is with the hussars in the town. A man's honour. My grandfather's character. The houses of the town. England is a charming country. The Swede is a general. The English lady has brothers and sisters in Denmark. The book is in your hands. The young lady is in the house. She has houses in the town. My husband's sickness. Where is your husband now? He is in the country with my parents. The student is my relation.

Translate into English.

Er Fru Generalinden i Huset, min lille Pige? Nej, Fruen er i Byen med Frökenen. Forældrene have Pengene. Börnene ere på Landet med Bedstefaderen. Har jeg den Ære at se Herr Generalen? Sygdommen er slet ikke farlig. Skibsmanden er ikke på Skibet. Hvor ere Ænderne, Gæssene, Hanerne og Hönerne? De ere med Bondekonen i Skovene. Bondepigerne ere i

Værelset. Har Husaren Lov til at tage paa Landet? Nej, det har han ikke; han er endnu i Faderens Hus i Byen. Frøkenen har dejlige Hænder og Øjne, men Ørene ere ikke udmærket smukke. Hans Hår er sort. Hvor ere Deres Söskende? De ere endnu i Sverrig, men mine Forældre ere i Norge. Hun har blå Øjne, men hendes Söskendes Øjne ere sorte. Det er Lov i Danmark, men ikke i Norge. Mit Håb er at Fru Nielsen får ikke den Sygdom. Er Sygdommen i hendes Broders Hus? Hvor er Deres Datter? Hun er på Landet med min Sön, Studenten. Er Deres Broder General? Nej, endnu er han kun Major, men snart bliver han General. En af mine Söskende bringer mig Gæs, Ænder og Mælk fra Landet, og Broderen gav mig igår Uld og Klæder for Bondebörnene.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *at have* (=to have).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

(*I have.*)

jeg har
du har
han har
vi have
I have
de have.

PAST.

(*I had.*)

jeg havde
du havde
han havde
vi havde
I havde
de havde.

PERFECT.

(*I have had.*)

jeg har haft
du har haft
han har haft
vi have haft
I have haft
de have haft.

PLUPERFECT.

(*I had had.*)

jeg havde haft
du havde haft
han havde haft
vi havde haft
I havde haft
de havde haft.

FUTURE.

(*I shall have.*)

jeg skal have
du skal have
han skal have
vi skulle have
I skulle have
de skulle have.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

(*I should have had.*)

jeg får haft
du får haft
han får haft
vi få haft
I få haft
de få haft.

POTENTIAL.

PRESENT.	PAST.
(<i>I may have.</i>)	(<i>I may have had.</i>)
jeg have!	jeg have haft!
du have!	du have haft!
han have!	han have haft!
vi have!	vi have haft!
I have!	I have haft!
de have!	de have haft!

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	
hav du (<i>have thou</i>)	haver I (<i>have, have ye</i>)
han have (<i>let him have</i>).	de have (<i>let them have</i>).

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
at have (<i>to have</i>).	at have haft (<i>to have had</i>).
FUTURE.	
at skulle have (<i>to be obliged to have</i>).	

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
havende (<i>having</i>).	haft (<i>had</i>).

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *at være* (=to be).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST.
(<i>I am</i>).	(<i>I was</i>).
jeg er	jeg var
du er	du var
han er	han var
vi ere	vi vare
I ere	I vare
de ere.	de vare.
PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
(<i>I have been</i>).	(<i>I had been</i>).
jeg har været	jeg havde været
du har været	du havde været
han har været	han havde været
vi have været	vi havde været
I have været	I havde været
de have været.	de havde været.

POTENTIAL.

PRESENT.
(*I may be.*)
jeg være
du være
han være
vi være
I være
de være.

PAST.
(*I may have been.*)
jeg have været
du have været
han have været
vi have været
I have været
de have været.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.
vær du (*be thou*)
han være (*let him be*).

vær I (*be, be ye*)
de være (*let them be*).

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.
at være (*to be*).

PAST.
at have været (*to have been*).

FUTURE.
at skulle være (*to be obliged to be*).

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.
værende (*being*).

PAST.
været (*been*).

SEVENTH LESSON.

ON ADJECTIVES, etc.

(= *Tillægsord, o.s.v.*¹)

I. Adjectives retain their abstract form when they stand between the indefinite article *en*, a (common gender), and the nouns which they qualify, as for example:—

<i>en god Dreng,</i>	a good boy
<i>en sort Hat,</i>	a black hat.

But when an adjective stands between the indefinite article *et*, a (neuter gender), and the noun which it qualifies, it cannot, (except in cases to which reference will be made), be left

¹ *o.s.v.*: the abbreviation of *og* (and), *så* (so), *videre* (further) = *etcetera*.

unchanged in its abstract form, but must have *t* added to the word, as for example :—

<i>et langt Skib,</i>	a long ship
<i>et godt Barn,</i>	a good child.

EXCEPTIONS.—This rule is not followed where the adjective ends in *e, o, es, s, sk, t, u, y*, as for example :—

<i>et bange Dyr,</i>	a timid animal
<i>et tro Hjærte,</i>	a true (faithful) heart
<i>et stakkels Fruentimmer,</i>	a poor (miserable) woman
<i>et norsk Ord,</i>	a Norwegian word
<i>et let Arbejde,</i>	a light labour
<i>et ædru Menneske,</i>	a sober person
<i>et bly Barn,</i>	a shy child.

II. Adjectives are made to end in *e* :—

1. When they stand between the definite, independent article, *den, det, de*, and the noun which they qualify, as for example: *den gode Broder*, the good brother; *det store Træ*, the large tree; *de gode Marker*, the good fields.

2. When they are used as representative nouns, and are preceded by the definite, independent article, *den, det, de*, as for example: *den Gode*, the good (person understood); *de Gode*, the good (persons understood); *det Slette*, the bad (thing understood).

3. When they are used as plural representative nouns, without being preceded by an article, as for example: *Rige*, rich (people); *Kære*, dear (ones).

slem, bad
sund, healthy
syg, sick, ill
sydlig, southern
nordlig, northern
passende, becoming
død, dead
rask, sound, well
net, pretty, nice
ret, right
barnlig, childish
lydig, obedient
lykkelig, happy
hyggelig, comfortable
vanskelig, difficult

vranten, cross, peevish
vred, angry
heldig, fortunate
uheldigvis, unfortunately
prægtig, excellent
vindig, windy
hel, whole, all
mange, many
hvor mange, how many
imorgen, to-morrow
idag, to-day
igår, yesterday
iår, this year
ifjor, last year

tilhest, on horseback
tilføds, on foot
tilsøs, by sea
tillands, by land
til højre, to the right
til venstre, to the left
i Stand, in order
Syd, south
Nord, north
i Syd, in the south
i Nord, in the north
(en) Fare, danger
i Fare, in danger
en Lykke, luck, happiness

<i>til Lykke</i> , luckily	(<i>en</i>) <i>Vrantsnød</i> , peevishness	<i>en Syg</i> , a sick person
(<i>en</i>) <i>Død</i> , death	(<i>en</i>) <i>Vred</i> , anger	<i>en Prægtighed</i> , an excellence
<i>en Død</i> , a corpse	<i>at blive vred</i> , to become angry	<i>en Vind</i> , a wind
<i>en Vanskelighed</i> , a difficulty	(<i>et</i>) <i>Kavaleri</i> , cavalry	<i>en Helhed</i> , a wholeness
<i>et Venskab</i> , a friendship		<i>en Helbred</i> , a health.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Er De kommen tilfods idag ?	Have (are) you come on foot to-day ?
Nej, kære Veninde, jeg er kommen tilhest med min Datter.	No, my dear friend, I came on horseback with my daughter.
Hvor er Deres nettede Datter ?	Where is your pretty daughter ?
Jeg ser hende ikke.	I do not see her.
Hun kommer straks, men i Øjeblikket taler hun til et stakkels Fruentimmer i Bondehuset.	She will be here directly, but just now she is talking to a poor woman in the peasant's house.
Er det stakkels Menneske farlig syg ?	Is the poor creature dangerously ill ?
Ja, hun er farlig syg.	Yes, she is dangerous ill.
Hvor det er hyggeligt her hos Dem !	How comfortable it is here in your room !
Jeg bliver vred, når mit Værelse ikke er i Stand.	I am vexed when my room is not in order.
Kan jeg få Deres Søn at se ; han er dog rask ?	May I not see your son ; he is well, (I hope).
Ja, Tak ! han er sund og rask ; men idag får De ham ikke at se, han er i Byen med den gode Søster.	Yes, thank you, he is well, (all right), but you will not see him to-day : he is in town with his sister.
Har han Penge nok til at købe hende noget smukt ?	Has he money enough to buy some pretty thing or other for her.
Heldigvis har han Penge med.	He fortunately has money with him.
Barnet er bly og vranteu, og bange for Hunden.	The child is timid and cross, and is afraid of the dog.
Men det er dog et tro, lydigt og godt Dyr.	But is it not a faithful, obedient, and good animal ?
Ja, det er det ; Hunden er slet ikke farlig, men Drengen er uheldigvis meget syg.	Yes, it is ; the dog is not at all dangerous, but the boy is unfortunately very ill.

SEVENTH EXERCISE.

That is a good and faithful animal. My dear mother was very healthy and well, but my poor father is very ill, and he is also very peevish. My parents were rich, and I could wish that my dear husband was also rich. The cow's milk is very sweet, but the peasant-woman's bread is sour. The poor woman has a dangerous illness. He is quite sober to-day. I wish to have good fields. I was in the white house yesterday. My good wife is coming on foot to-morrow. We had sour apples and sweet pears. The southern fields and the northern woods. I see my dear little daughter and my rich sister's son. We were in a beautiful country this year. The good general comes by sea. I (shall) come by sea, but my rich son is coming on foot. It was unfortunate (bad) that she had clothes, but not money. My parents were not rich people. The child is obedient, and has a good heart. I wish to procure a comfortable Norwegian house. The nice Swedish lady has an English horse. The man had a light task, but he was ill. That is a very shy and childish young lady. My dear sister is timid and cross. Thy good mother is ill in my house in town. The illness is fortunately not dangerous. It is difficult. He was cross and angry.

Translate into English.

Jeg ser, at hun ønsker at få rige Venner. Generalen og Generalinden komme med Börnene tilsøs på min Faders store, sorte Skib. Jeg kommer til Byen imorgen; igår var min kære Broder også der, men idag er han hos Deres Søster. Lev vel, min kære, gode Frue. Mit Hjærte var ikke let. Det stakkels Fruentimmer er meget flittig; hun ønsker at få et let Arbejde. Iår ere Husarerne i Norge med den svenske General og det norske Kavalleri. Et godt Ord er kært. Imorgen kan jeg ikke få Breve fra min Familie i Sverrig. Min gode

Ven, Herr Sørensen, ønsker at få en engelsk Tjæner. Skibet kommer fra Syden og går til Norden. Er Vinden sydlig eller nordlig? Min gode Moder har en udmærket god Helbred, men min stakkels Søster er i Fare for at få en hæsleg Sygdom. Er det norske Barn vranten, eller kun bly? Hun er slet ikke vranten, men igår var hun ikke rask. Vrantenhed er hæsleg. Heldigvis er Faren ikke stor.

EIGHTH LESSON.

ON ADJECTIVES (= Tillægsord).

(Continued.)

Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, or *er* lose the *e* before *l*, *n*, *r* when they are preceded by the definite, independent article *den*, *det*, *de*, or when they are used as nouns; thus for example:—

<i>ædel</i> , noble,	changes to <i>ædle</i> ,	<i>den ædle Mand</i> , the noble man
<i>moden</i> , ripe,	„ <i>modne</i> ,	<i>den modne Pære</i> , the ripe pear
<i>mager</i> , meagre, thin,	„ <i>magre</i> ,	<i>den magre Hest</i> , the thin horse
<i>gammel</i> , old,	„ <i>gamle</i> ,	<i>det gamle Hus</i> , the old house
<i>vågen</i> , wakeful,	„ <i>vågne</i> ,	<i>det vågne Barn</i> , the wakeful child
<i>vakker</i> , pretty, nice	„ <i>vakre</i> ,	<i>de vakre Piger</i> , the pretty girls
<i>bunden</i> , bound,	„ <i>bundne</i> ,	<i>de bundne Dyr</i> , the chained animals
<i>doven</i> , idle,	„ <i>dovne</i> ,	<i>de dovre Børn</i> , the idle children.

Adjectives of one syllable, or those in which the last syllable is short, double the final consonant; as for example:—

<i>slem</i> } bad { <i>slemme</i>	<i>fornem</i> , distinguished, <i>fornemme</i>
<i>slet</i> } { <i>slette</i> .	<i>let</i> , light, easy, <i>lette</i> .
<i>en slem Sag</i> , a bad case,	<i>den slemme Sag</i> , the bad case.

Adjectives follow the same rules, in regard to cases, as nouns, undergoing no change except in the genitive, where they take *es* or *s*, according to the terminal letter of the word.

Examples:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.— <i>en Rig</i> , a rich man	Nom.— <i>Rige</i> , rich men
Gen.— <i>en Rigs</i> , of a rich man.	Gen.— <i>Riges</i> , of rich men.
Nom.— <i>den Gode</i> , the good man	Nom.— <i>de Gode</i> , the good men
Gen.— <i>den Godes</i> , of the good man.	Gen.— <i>de Godes</i> , of the good men.

The Danish Cardinal Numbers are :—

<i>én</i>	1	<i>elleve</i>	11	<i>tredive</i>	30
<i>to</i>	2	<i>tolv</i>	12	<i>fyrretyve</i>	40
<i>tre</i>	3	<i>tretten</i>	13	<i>halvtreds, or halvtredsindstyve</i>	50
<i>fire</i>	4	<i>fjorten</i>	14	<i>tredsindstyve</i>	60
<i>fem</i>	5	<i>femten</i>	15	<i>halvfjerds, or halvfjerdsindstyve</i>	70
<i>seks</i>	6	<i>seksten</i> ¹	16	<i>firsindstyve</i>	80
<i>syv</i>	7	<i>sytten</i>	17	<i>halvfems, or halvfemsindstyve</i>	90
<i>åtte (otte)</i>	8	<i>atten</i>	18	<i>hundrede (et Hundrede)</i>	100
<i>ni</i>	9	<i>nitten</i>	19	<i>tusinde (et Tusinde)</i>	1000
<i>ti</i>	10	<i>tyve</i>	20	<i>en Million</i>	1,000,000

Up to one hundred the lesser numeral precedes the greater; after one hundred it goes after it, as for example: *én og tyve, to og tredive, tre og fyrretyve*, etc., 21, 32, 43; *hundrede og én, tusinde og to*, etc., 101, 1002. When the numeral is not followed by a noun or adjective, the termination *sindstyve* may be omitted, as for example: *Har han firsindstyve Kavalerister?* has he 80 horsemen? *Nej, han har kun halvtreds*, no, he has only 50.

at sælge, to sell
at tro, to believe
at koste, to cost
jeg véd, I know
at binde, to bind
bunden, bound
omtrent, about

ti, fordi, because
hvor meget, how much
engang, once
ikke engang, not even
et Pund, a pound
et Bind, a volume
et Værk, a work

en Bogbinder, a book-binder
en Boghandler, a book-seller
mere end, more than
allerede, already
aldrig, never.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Hvor mange Bind har dette Værk?

How many volumes has this book?

Det har fem Bind, men jeg har dem ikke alle.

It has five volumes, but I have not got all of them.

Ser De de fire Skibe?

Do you see the four ships?

Jeg ser kun tre.

I only see three.

Min Fader har mer end tolv Heste, men Englænderen har kun syv.

My father has more than twelve horses, but the Englishman has only seven.

Har den franske Herre mer end én Tjener?

Has the French gentleman more than one servant?

Ja, han har mer end én, men jeg véd ikke hvormange.

Yes, he has more than one, but I do not know how many.

Kan Bondekonen sælge mig to hundrede Æbler?

Can the peasant-woman sell me 200 apples?

¹ Pronounced *seisten*.

Hun har kun omtrent tredsindstyve, fordi Fru Generalinde Holk har købt dem næsten alle.	She has only about sixty, because Mrs. (General) Holk has bought almost all.
Hvor gammel er Deres Mands Bedstefader?	How old is your husband's grand- father?
Han er næsten halvfems.	He is nearly ninety.
Hvor meget koster dette Ur?	How much does this watch cost?
Det koster, tror jeg, omtrent atten Pund Sterling.	It costs, I think, about £18.
Hvor mange Værelser har De i Huset?	How many rooms have you in the house?
To og tyve.	Two-and-twenty.
Det er et stort Hus; jeg har kun femten Værelser i mit.	That is a large house; I have only fifteen rooms in mine.

EIGHTH EXERCISE.

The old man is awake. The pretty girl is very idle. Rich people are not always noble. My dear mother is forty-seven years old. The black horse is tied up in the large stable. She has ten children, six sons and four daughters. My rich brother has four menservants in the house. The noble Englishwoman is very rich. The boy has thirteen pears, seventeen apples, and thirty-three plums. Now we are in eighteen hundred and seventy-eight. She has a million of money. The general has five hundred and ninety-nine cavalry. The rich man's wife is fifty-three. How old is your pretty daughter? She is seventeen years old, but my son is twenty-one. My friend's house has sixty-eight windows. His cow-house, where the white cow is, has only one window. The peasant woman has forty geese, sixty ducks, nineteen cocks, and thirty-six hens. The young lady has seven cloaks, and four hats. It is not easy to be rich. The noble general is in town to-day. Where is my old friend? He is with the rich girl in the large house. That is a very bad child.

Translate into English.

Er den rige Mand en af Deres Slægtninge? Nej; men han er en Ven af mine kære Forældre og af min gamle Bedstemoder. Hans nette lille Pige er med den norske Veninde i Sverrig. Generalindens smukke Døttre have mange Penge og dejlige Klæder. Min Broder, Kavalleristen, har åtte Børn, fem Sønner og tre Døttre. Han er halvtreds, og hans Kone er kun fyrretyve År gammel. Er Deres Bedstefader halvfems? Nej, den kære Gamle er kun firsindstyve År. Farvel, du Gode. Hvor hun er doven idag! Der er kun tretten Höner og fem Haner i Skoven. Det gode Fruentimmer har to Køer, en Får og fjorten Får. Hvor gammel er Deres Broder? Han er kun ni og tyve, men min Søster, Sangerinden, er allerede syv og tredive År gammel. Han er fem og halvfjærds. Bonden har ikke et halvt hundrede Gæs iår, men ifjor var der fem hundrede Gæs og Ænder på hans gode Marker. Hvor mange Heste ere idag i Stalden? Næsten fyrretyve, tror jeg. Det er slemt at være vågen om (*English: at*) Natten. Hvormange Penne har De på Bordet? Jeg har omtrent tyve eller fem og tyve. Har hendes Broder mange Børn? Han har fem, men Börnene ere alle i England med deres Moders Søster, Fru Bell. De to Franskmænd have mange Skibe.

NINTH LESSON.

ON NUMERALS (=Talord), etc.*(Continued).*

The ordinal numbers (*de ordnende Talord*) are formed by adding *te, nde, ende*, or *er* to the cardinal number, excepting *förste*, first; *anden*, second; *tredje*, third; *fjärde*, fourth; *sjätte*, sixth.

<i>den første</i>	1st	<i>den ellevte</i>	11th	<i>den tredivte</i>	80th
„ <i>anden</i>	2nd	„ <i>tolvte</i>	12th	„ <i>fyrretyvende</i>	40th
„ <i>tredje</i>	3rd	„ <i>trættende</i>	13th	„ <i>halvtredsindstyvende</i>	50th
„ <i>fjerde</i>	4th	„ <i>fortende</i>	14th	„ <i>tredeindstyvende</i>	60th
„ <i>femte</i>	5th	„ <i>femtende</i>	15th	„ <i>halvfjerdsindstyvende</i>	70th
„ <i>sjette</i>	6th	„ <i>seksende</i>	16th	„ <i>firsindstyvende</i>	80th
„ <i>syvende</i>	7th	„ <i>syttende</i>	17th	„ <i>halvfemsindstyvende</i>	90th
„ <i>åttende</i>	8th	„ <i>attende</i>	18th	„ <i>hundrede</i>	100th
„ <i>niende</i>	9th	„ <i>nittende</i>	19th	„ <i>tusinde</i>	1000th
„ <i>tiende</i>	10th	„ <i>tyvende</i>	20th		

The only ordinal number which is modified by gender, is *anden*, which makes *andet* in the neuter.

As in English, it is only the second of two composite numbers that is declined, as for example: *den én og tyvende*, the one and twentieth; *den syv og tredivte*, the seven and thirtieth.

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK.

(Dagene af Ugen.)

<i>Søndag,</i>	Sunday
<i>Mandag,</i>	Monday
<i>Tirsdag,</i>	Tuesday
<i>Onsdag,</i>	Wednesday
<i>Torsdag,</i>	Thursday
<i>Fredag,</i>	Friday
<i>Lørdag,</i>	Saturday.

THE MONTHS OF THE YEAR.

(Månederne af Året.)

<i>Januar</i>	<i>Juli</i>
<i>Februar</i>	<i>August</i>
<i>Marts</i>	<i>September</i>
<i>April</i>	<i>Oktober</i>
<i>Maj</i>	<i>November</i>
<i>Juni</i>	<i>December.¹</i>

en Dag, a day
en Uge, a week

en Måned, a month
et År, a year

et Halvår, a half-year
et Skudår, a leap year.

at skrive, to write
jeg skriver, I write
at komme, to come
at sige, to say
at kalde, to call
han kalder, he calls
at mangle, to want,
 need [needs]
han mangler, he wants,
at rejse, to travel
De rejser, you travel
en Bro, a bridge

stor, large
større, larger
hvad, what
når, when
hjem, at home
måske, perhaps
hvilken, which
hver, each
silde, late
tidlig, early
altid, always
halvfem, half-past four

et Minut, a minute
et Sekund, a second
en Time, an hour
en Halvtime, half an
 hour [an hour
et Kvarter, a quarter of
et Datum, a date
et Selskab, a company
en Klokke, a clock
en Indbydelse, an invi-
 tation
en Gade, a street.

¹The Danes frequently say *Majmåned*, *Julimåned*, etc., where we should simply say "May," "July," etc.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Klokken er fire.	It is four o'clock.
Når kommer Deres lille Broder hjem?	When does your little brother come home?
Han kommer altid hjem Klokken halv fem.	He always comes home at half-past four.
Klokken er et Kvarter til fem.	It is a quarter past four.
Klokken er tre Kvarter til syv.	It is a quarter to seven.
Klokken mangler tyve Minutter i ti.	It is twenty minutes to ten.
Klokken er ti Minutter over ti.	It is ten minutes past ten.
Han kalder på mig Klokken seks.	He calls me at six o'clock.
Hvad er Klokken?	What time is it?
Hvert fjerde År kaldes et Skudår.	Every fourth year is called a leap-year.
Hvor meget er én, og tre, og fem, og ni, og elleve?	How much is 1, 3, 5, 9, and 11?
Ni og tyve.	Nine-and-twenty.
Jeg kommer den første Februar.	I will come on the first of February.
De ser ham måske Torsdagen den syvende August.	You will (or shall) see him perhaps on Thursday, the seventh of August.
Nu ere vi snart i atten hundrede og ni og halvfjærds.	Now we shall soon be in 1879.
Hvad skriver man idag?	What date is it? <i>Lit</i> : what writes one to-day.
Idag skrive vi den tolvte Juni.	It is the twelfth of June to-day.
Jeg rejser den niende April.	I shall start (travel) the ninth of April.
Hun har en Indbydelse til den tredje Juli.	She has an invitation for the third of July.
Han skal i Aftenselskab Mandagen den femte Marts.	He is going to an evening entertainment on Monday, the fifth of March.
Højgade Nummer fire, Torsdag Eftermiddag.	No. 4, High street, Thursday afternoon.
Igår skrev vi den trettende Maj.	Yesterday was (we wrote) the thirteenth of May.
Hvad Dato er det imorgen?	What date will it be to-morrow?



NINTH EXERCISE.

Will he come on the eighteenth of January? My dear wife was in England in May, 1867. Is it the thirteenth to-day? Will you be so good as to tell me what date it was yesterday? Yesterday, my dear boy, was the sixteenth of March. I was in Norway with my children in 1870. My grandfather and my son were in Sweden with Mr. Paulsen's brother and sister in 1869. You will perhaps see him on the thirteenth of July. The beautiful singer will come into town on the nineteenth of April. To-day is the second of May, and yesterday was the first of the month. A week has seven days: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday. A month has four weeks. A year has twelve months: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December. A half-year has six months. The first month of the year has thirty-one days. The third month has also thirty-one days, but the fourth month has only thirty days. Sunday is the first, and Saturday the seventh day of the week. He will come on Friday, the eleventh of November. Tuesday is the third day of the week. His friend was in Denmark in the month of May, 1839. My son was there in 1868. Good-bye till the twelfth.

Translate into English.

Herr og Fru Hansen komme til Byen den trettede Juli atten hundrede og ni og halvfjærds. Imorgen er det den sekstende Juli atten hundrede og åtte og halvfjærds. I Junimåned kommer jeg til Norge. Vil De være så god, min kære Fru Martensen, at sige mig hvad Dato det er idag? Han kommer måske om et halvt År. Ser De Deres Mand og Deres prægtige Börn imorgen eller idag? Jeg ser dem snart på Landet. Det er mit første År i Byen. Hvad skrive vi idag? Hvad Dato var det i Torsdags? Hvormange Minutter er der i 'n Time? Tredsindstve. Hvormange Sekunder er der i

et Minut? Også tredsindstyve. Hvilken Måned har åtte og tyve Dage? Den anden, (2den) Februar. Er Klokken allerede fem? Den er endnu ikke fem; den er tre Kvarter til fem. Kommer hun hjem den nittende (19de)? Nej, hun kommer først den to og tyvende (22de). Han er aldrig i Byen i Julimåned. Han kommer hjem hver Aften Klokken syv. Min kære Mand kommer til Danmark den syttende (17de) April. Torsdag den femte (5te) kommer jeg til Byen. Klokken elleve er meget sildig. Er Klokken ni tidlig nok? Ja, det er tidlig nok. Søndag kommer jeg ikke med Börnene.

TENTH LESSON.

ON CERTAIN TERMS OF QUANTITY, etc.

The ancient practice of counting quantities, and selling small articles (as fruits, vegetables, eggs, etc.) by the score, is still prevalent in Denmark and the other Scandinavian lands.

en Snés (pl. *Snese*), a score
en halv Snés, half a score

snesevis, scorewise, by the score
i Snesetal, scorewise, in twenties.

En Snés is sometimes used to express a number generally and approximately, as for example: *jeg så en Snés Mennesker i Stuen*, I saw a number of people (about a score) in the room; *Bondepigen havde måske en halv Snés Kyllinger i Kurven*, the peasant-girl had perhaps half a score (ten or a dozen) chickens in her basket.

et Dusin (pl. *Dusiner*), a dozen.

dusinvis, by dozens.

This form of enumeration is rapidly superseding the score in all the larger towns of Scandinavia.

en Ske, a spoon
en Kop, a cup
et Par, a pair, a couple
en Flaske, a bottle

et halvt Pund, half a pound
et Lod, an ounce
et halvt Lod, half an ounce
en halv Flaske, a small bottle.

The above words are all used without the intervention of a preposition between them and the noun to which they refer, as for example:—

<i>et Pund Kød,</i>	N.G.,	a pound (of) meat
<i>et Stykke Ost,</i>	C.G.,	a piece (of) cheese
<i>et Par Æg,</i>	N.G.,	a couple (of) eggs
<i>en Flaske Öl,</i>	N.G.,	a bottle (of) ale
<i>et halvt Pund Flæsk,</i>	N.G.,	half a pound (of) salt pork
<i>et Lød Kaffe,</i>	C.G.,	an ounce (of) coffee
<i>et halvt Lød Te</i>	C.G.,	half an ounce (of) tea
<i>en halv Flaske Vin,</i>	C.G.,	half a bottle (of) wine
<i>et Glas Vand,</i>	N.G.,	a glass (of) water
<i>en Kop Chokolade,</i>	C.G.,	a cup (of) chocolate
<i>en Skjfuld Brændevin,</i>	C.G.,	a spoonful (of) brandy
<i>fem Pund Smør,</i>	N.G.,	five pounds (of) butter.

<i>at betale, to pay</i>	<i>billig, billigt, cheap</i>	<i>så, so</i> [do it
<i>at sælge, to sell</i>	<i>en Krone, a crown</i>	<i>han vil ikke, he will not</i>
<i>solgt, sold</i>	<i>en Alen, an ell</i>	<i>dette, this</i>
<i>at ske, to happen</i>	<i>Hundreder, hundreds</i>	<i>igen, again</i>
<i>noget, something</i>	<i>Tusinder, thousands</i>	<i>kan være, it may be</i>
<i>intet, nothing</i>	<i>dobbelt, double</i>	<i>en Mil, a mile</i>
<i>en Forretning, a</i>	<i>en Fjærding, a quarter</i>	<i>en Del, a part</i>
<i>business</i>	<i>en Fjærdingsmil, $\frac{1}{4}$ of</i>	<i>en Vej, a way, road</i>
<i>en Pris, a price</i>	<i>a mile [half</i>	<i>et Fjærdingår, quarter</i>
<i>dyr, dyrt, dear</i>	<i>halvanden, one and a</i>	<i>of a year.</i>

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Hvormeget betaler De for et Hundrede af deres Cigarer?	What do you pay a hundred for your cigars?
Jeg køber dem ikke i Hundreder, men kun i Dusiner.	I do not buy them by the hundred, but only by the dozen.
Hvad betaler Herr Thomsen for det store Hus i Byen?	How much is Mr. Thomson to pay for the large house in town?
Han betaler ti tusind Kroner.	He is to pay 10,000 crowns.
Hvor meget er det i engelske Penge?	How much is that in English money?
En dansk Krone er omtrent en engelsk Shilling og halvanden Penny.	A Danish crown is about 1s. and $\frac{1}{2}$ d.
Han har en stor Forretning, men han er ikke meget rig.	He has a large business, but he is not very rich.
Har De ikke noget at betale Bonden?	Have you nothing to pay the peasant?
Nej, jeg har intet at betale.	No, I have nothing to pay.
Hun har solgt Smørret for halvtredsindstyve Kroner pr. Centner.	She has sold the butter for fifty crowns the cwt.

Jeg Ønsker at købe halvandet Dusin Flasker fransk Vin.	I want to buy a dozen and a half bottles of French wine.
Hvormange Pund Köd har Deres Mand at sælge idag?	How many pounds of meat has your husband to sell to-day?
Han har måske et Par Centner.	He may perhaps have two cwt.
Prisen er ikke billig nok for mig.	The price is not low enough for me.

TENTH EXERCISE.

I wish to buy a bottle of wine, half a bottle of brandy, and seven bottles of ale. Where is my glass, and the water? The peasant-girl has four score of eggs to sell, and half a score of ducks and geese. What does an ounce of tea cost? The servant-maid is coming immediately with a cup of tea, a couple of eggs, bread, butter, and cheese. What do you wish (to have)? I wish to buy three pounds of meat, half a pound of salt pork, and a piece of old Norwegian cheese. We have not got that. What have you? We have Swedish cheese, Danish butter, and eight small bottles of English ale. Give me a piece of bread with half a score of apples, or sweet pears, or yellow plums. How much does an ounce of coffee cost? It does not cost much. Where is my spoon? It is in the cup. The boy will soon bring a couple of chickens. Is the butter not good? The peasant wishes to buy half a pound of meat, but he never has money. How much does half an ounce of chocolate cost? Give me a spoonful of wine. Is the meat always so dear? No, it is often very cheap.

Translate into English.

Vil De sælge mig en halv Snés Kyllinger. Idag er Torsdag, og på den Dag af Ugen har jeg næsten aldrig Kyllinger at sælge. Mandagmorgen kommer jeg igen med Æg, Brød, Smör og Ost, og måske bringer jeg også Kyllinger, eller et Par Ænder og en Gås. Hvormeget koster en Flaske svensk Brændevin? Den koster måske næsten fire Kroner. Hvad har Pigen i

Kurven? Hun har et stort Stykke Flæsk og tre eller fire Snese Æg. Jeg ønsker at sælge mine Æbler, Pærer og Æg snesevis. Jeg har Brændevin, Öl, Kaffe og Te i Huset. Hans Ven har et Par Køer og næsten et halvt hundrede Får at sælge. Bring mig en Kop Te og et Stykke Brød med Smør og Ost. Hvormeget koster det? Hvad er Prisen på denne Hat? Han er en rig Mand og sælger sine Hatte hundredevis. Bondekonen sælger sine Æbler, ikke i Hundreder, men i Tusinder. Jeg køber mit Hus meget billigt. Jeg ønsker at få halvandet Dusin Pærer og omtrent et Par Snese Blommer.

ELEVENTH LESSON.

ON THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(= *Tillægsordenes Gradforhøjelse.*)

In Dano-Norwegian the comparative of the adjective is formed by adding *ere* to the positive, except when the word ends in *e*, in which case it takes only *re*; while the superlative is formed by adding *est* to the positive, except when the word ends in *e*, *ig*, or *som*, in which cases it takes only *st*, as for example:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>blød</i> , soft	<i>blødere</i>	<i>blødest</i>
<i>grov</i> , coarse	<i>grovere</i>	<i>grovest</i>
<i>bred</i> , broad	<i>breder</i>	<i>bredest</i>
<i>stille</i> , quiet	<i>stillere</i>	<i>stillest</i>
<i>gruelig</i> , horrible	<i>grueligere</i>	<i>grueligst</i>
<i>virksom</i> , active	<i>virksommere</i>	<i>virksomst</i> .

It will be observed that in the last example the *m* is doubled in the comparative; this is done because the last syllable *som* in *virksom* is unaccentuated, and the doubling of the final consonant is required in the comparative and superlative of words consisting of one short, unaccentuated syllable, as for example:—

<i>grøn</i> , green	<i>grønnere</i>	<i>grønnest</i>
<i>tør</i> , dry	<i>tørrere</i>	<i>tørrest</i>
<i>let</i> , light (easy)	<i>lettere</i>	<i>lettest</i>
<i>smuk</i> , pretty	<i>smukkere</i>	<i>smukkest</i> .

Adjectives ending in *el, en, er*, drop the *e* in the Comparative and Superlative; as for example:—

<i>adel</i> , noble	<i>ad_lere</i>	<i>ad_lest</i>
<i>simpel</i> , simple, foolish	<i>simp_lere</i>	<i>simp_lest</i>
<i>doven</i> , idle	<i>dov_nere</i>	<i>dov_nest</i>
<i>sikker</i> , certain	<i>sik_rere</i>	<i>sik_rest</i>
<i>mager</i> , lean, meagre	<i>mag_rere</i>	<i>mag_rest</i> .

As in English, the Comparative and Superlative may be expressed by the adverbs *mér, mere*, more, and *mest*, most; as for example:—

<i>våd</i> , wet	<i>mér våd</i> ,	<i>mest våd</i>
<i>fattig</i> , poor	<i>mér fattig</i>	<i>mest fattig</i> .

The use of *mér* and *mest* is imperative:—

1. For adjectives, derived from the participles of verbs.
2. For adjectives compounded of a noun and another adjective.
3. For adjectives ending in unaccentuated *et, ed, s, sk*; as for example:—

<i>ophidset</i> , excited	<i>mér ophidset</i>	<i>mest ophidset</i>
<i>skævhalsset</i> , wry-necked	<i>mér skævhalsset</i>	<i>mest skævhalsset</i>
<i>broget</i> , variegated	<i>mér broget</i>	<i>mest broget</i>
<i>fremmed</i> , strange	<i>mér fremmed</i>	<i>mest fremmed</i>
<i>fælles</i> , mutual, common	<i>mér fælles</i>	<i>mest fælles</i>
<i>malerisk</i> , picturesque	<i>mér malerisk</i>	<i>mest malerisk</i>

The Comparative and Superlative of the diminutive degree is expressed by *mindre*, less, and *mindst*, least.

The Superlative may be made additionally forcible by the use of the word *aller*, all, most of all, as for example: *det allergrønneste Træ*, the greenest tree of all.

End, than, is used as in English to characterise a Comparative; as for example:—

min Pære er sødere end hendes, my pear is sweeter than hers.
hun er mindre ophidset end min Broder, she is less excited than my brother.

<i>at tro</i> , to believe	<i>så...som</i> , as...as	<i>at</i> , that, (to)
<i>jeg tror</i> , I believe	<i>ligeså...som</i> , just as...as	<i>en Jurist</i> , a lawyer
<i>at skulle</i> , to be obliged	<i>imod</i> , against [edly	<i>en Kurv</i> , a basket
<i>man siger</i> , one says,	<i>vist</i> , certainly, assur-	<i>en Rose</i> , a rose
they say, it is said	<i>vistnok</i> , no doubt	<i>Onkel</i> , uncle
<i>disse</i> , these	<i>hvilken</i> , who, which	<i>Tante</i> , aunt

<i>Fætter</i> (masc.), cousin	<i>en Gang</i> , once, onetime	<i>en Have</i> , a garden
<i>Kousine</i> (fem.), cousin	<i>tre Gange</i> , three times	(<i>en</i>) <i>Vinter</i> , winter
<i>Købmand</i> , merchant	<i>på en Gang</i> , at once	(<i>en</i>) <i>Sommer</i> , summer.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Vor fælles Ven, Juristen, kommer vistnok en Gang igen.	Our mutual friend, the lawyer, will certainly come once again.
Man siger, at den fremmede Herre her i Huset er meget ophidset imod Generalen.	It is said that the foreign gentleman, who lives in this house, is much excited against the general.
Min Bedstefader er den rigeste Købmand i Danmark.	My grandfather is the richest merchant in Denmark.
Vor Have er smukkere end Deres om Sommeren.	Our garden is prettier than yours in the summer.
Hvor mange Gange har De været i min Onkels Have?	How many times have you been in my uncle's garden?
Kun to Gange, og det var om Vinteren.	Only twice, and that was in the winter.
Han er den flittigste af alle mine Børn.	He is the most diligent of all my children.
Er min Stok så lang som Deres?	Is my stick as long as yours?
Er min Datters Kåbe ligeså billig som hendes?	Is my daughters cloak as cheap as hers?
Min Hat er ligeså dyr som Deres.	My hat is just as dear as yours.
Hvor mange Døttre har Deres Tante?	How many daughters has your aunt?
Hun har to Døttre mer end jeg.	She has two daughters more than I have.
Min Onkels Søn er dovnere end Bondedrenge.	My uncle's son is more idle than the peasant-boy.
Er Deres Hest ligeså stor som vor?	Is your horse as large as ours?
Hvilken af de tre Drengene er den dovneste?	Which of the three boys is the most idle?
Deres Fætter Vilhelm.	Your cousin William.
Ere disse Penne gode?	Are these pens good?
De ere de mindst gode jeg har købt i Byen iår.	They are the least good pens I have bought in town this year.

ELEVENTH EXERCISE.

The woman is more active than her husband. The water is calmer to-night. He is the laziest creature in the house. The woods are greener in May. She is prettier than I am. She was more excited than the husband. Our mutual friends, the general and his wife, have more active servants than my parents. The boy's hands were the wettest. My house is more picturesque than my brother's. The chair is softer than the table. The canary-bird is greener and yellower than the cock. Her cloak is prettier than her hat. The peasant-woman's basket is lighter than my servant-maid's. The fields are less wet than they were yesterday. I wish to have twenty sweeter pears. She wants seven broader and redder strings. The woods are green in May, greener in June, and greenest, perhaps, in July. The fields are scarcely ever dry in February. The green room is wetter than the white room. My unhappy friend is poorer than your father. The tree is least green in January.

Translate into English.

Hun var mér ophidset end hun skulde have været. Mit stakkels Barn er mér skævhalsset iår, end hun var i atten hundrede og syv og treds. Den ellevte Gang var grueligere end den første. Hans Hjærte er blødere end mit. Din Stok er vådere end min. Mine Piger ere dovnere end mine Dreng. Den danske Sangerinde er mér fremmed her i Danmark end den svenske Dame. Hun ønsker lettere Arbejde, men hun er gammel og syg. Hvormeget koster den grønne Hat. Hatten er broget og styg. Skovene ere mest maleriske i Junimåned. Tolken er den virksomste Mand i den lille norske By. Pigen er smukkere end Deres Datter. De Rige ere ikke altid lykkeligere end de Fattige. Roserne ere de hvideste og smukkeste jeg har. Her er det største

Værelse i mit lille Hus. Hans Marker ere de grønneste i Landet. Hvor er min bedste Ven? Her er jeg, kæreste Fru Blom. Min Datter er altid god, men rask er hun ikke altid. Det er stort og godt af Manden. Mit Bord er bredere end min Søsters. Mine Drengene ere ikke skævhalsede; det er stygt af Dem at sige det. Pigerne ere ikke lykkelige hjemme. Jeg tror at Bondepigen er endnu lykkeligere.

TWELFTH LESSON.

ON IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

(= Uregelrette Tillægsord).

Numerous adjectives form their Comparatives and Superlatives irregularly. Of this class the following are the most conspicuous examples :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>god</i> , good	<i>bedre</i>	<i>bedst</i>
<i>ond</i> , bad	<i>værre</i>	<i>værst</i>
<i>stor</i> , large	<i>større</i>	<i>størst</i>
<i>liden</i> , <i>lidet</i> , ¹ little	<i>mindre</i>	<i>mindst</i>
<i>megen</i> , <i>meget</i> , ² much	<i>mér</i>	<i>mest</i>
<i>få</i> , few	<i>færre</i>	<i>færrest</i>
<i>lang</i> , long	<i>længere</i>	<i>længst</i>
<i>mange</i> , many	<i>flere</i> , several	<i>flest</i>
<i>gammel</i> , old	<i>ældre</i>	<i>ældst</i>
<i>ung</i> , young	<i>ynge</i>	<i>yngst</i>
<i>nær</i> , near	<i>nærmere</i>	<i>nærmest</i> or <i>næst</i> .

¹ The plural of *lille*, *liden*, *lidt* (neuter) is *små*, as for example : *et lille Barn*, a small child ; *små Børn*, small children. *Små* is used in combination with other words to form singular nouns, as *en Småhed*, a littleness ; *en Småhandler*, a petty trader.

² The plural of *megen*, *meget*, is *mange*. The old forms *mangen*, *mangt* are used in the same manner as the English "many a," as for example : *Mangen en Gang har jeg sét det*, many a time have I seen it ; *mangt et Menneske glæder sig idag*, many a man is rejoicing to-day.

Some adjectives are defective, and do not admit of being used in more than one or two degrees of comparison; as for example:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	Derived from :—
<i>egen, eget, own</i>	<i>egen, own</i>
<i>indre, inner</i>	<i>inderst</i>		<i>inde, within</i>
<i>ydre, without</i>	<i>yderst</i>		<i>ud, ude, out, out of</i>
<i>övre, upper</i>	<i>överst</i>		<i>over, over</i>
<i>nedre, lower</i>	<i>nederst</i>		<i>ned, below, down</i>
<i>nærmere, nearer</i>	<i>nærmest or næst</i>		<i>nær, near</i>
	<i>bagest,</i>		<i>bag, behind</i>
	<i>eneste</i>		<i>ene, alone</i>
	<i>forrest</i>		<i>foran, in front</i>
	<i>först</i>		<i>för, before</i>
	<i>midterst</i> }	mid-	<i>midt, in the middle</i>
	<i>mellemst</i> }	most	<i>mellem, between</i>
	<i>sidst</i>		<i>siden, afterwards, since.</i>

Adjectives of time, which in English end in “ly,” occur, as a rule, in Danish with the termination *lig*, as *årlig*, yearly; *halvårlig*, half-yearly; *månedlig*, monthly; *ugentlig*, weekly; *daglig*, daily; *natlig*, nightly.

<i>at få, to get, obtain</i>	<i>en Læge, a doctor</i>	<i>en Omnibus, an omnibus</i>
<i>jeg får, I get, obtain</i>	<i>en Præst, a clergyman</i>	<i>en Sporvogn, a tramway</i>
<i>at gøre, to make, do</i>	<i>en Officer, an officer</i>	<i>carriage</i>
<i>han gør, he makes, does</i>	<i>en Soldat, a soldier</i>	<i>en Billet, a ticket</i>
<i>at gøre ondt, to hurt</i>	<i>en Professor, a professor</i>	<i>et Tog, a train</i>
<i>at begynde, to begin</i>	<i>et Ønske, a wish</i>	<i>en Sal, a room</i>
<i>det begynder, it begins</i>	<i>en Sø, a lake, sea</i>	<i>næppe, scarcely</i>
<i>at køre, to drive</i>	<i>en Klasse, a class</i>	<i>begge to, both</i>
<i>du kører, thou drivest</i>	<i>en Dør, a door</i>	<i>forbi, past</i>
<i>at koste, to cost</i>	<i>en Godsvogn, a goods</i>	<i>da, when, as</i>
<i>det koster, it costs</i>	<i>van</i>	<i>vel, well, truly</i>
<i>at se, to see</i>	<i>en Jærnbane, a railway</i>	<i>altfor, too</i>
<i>hun ser, she sees</i>	<i>en Plads, a place</i>	<i>precis, precisely</i>
<i>at kunne, to be able</i>	<i>Bagage, luggage</i>	

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Jeg tror det næsten.
 Det gör ondt.
 Det er altfor sildigt.
 Det er næppe tidlig nok.
 Hvor er Juristen?

I almost think so.
 That hurts (does harm).
 It is too late.
 It is scarcely soon enough.
 Where is the lawyer?

Han kører med Lægen.	He is driving with the doctor.
Ser De Præsten i Vognen ?	Do you see the clergyman in the carriage ?
Jeg ser kun Officeren med en Soldat.	I only see the officer with a soldier.
Professoren ønsker at give min Onkel en norsk Bog.	The professor wishes to give my uncle a Norwegian book.
Hvormeget koster en første Klasses Billet ?	How much does a first class ticket cost ?
Det koster slet ikke meget.	It does not cost much.
En anden Klasses Billet til Stockholm er meget billig.	A second class ticket to Stockholm is very moderate.
Når får De Roser i Deres Have ?	When will you have roses in your garden ?
Roserne ere alle forbi i min Have.	The roses are all over in my garden.
Nu begynder det at være smukt på Landet.	Now it begins to be charming in the country.
Er det altfor sildig at få en Billet ?	Is it too late to get a ticket ?
Nej ! her har De Billetten.	No ! here is the ticket.
Når går der en Omnibus ?	When does the omnibus go ?
Den går Klokken ni precis.	It goes exactly at nine.
Hvor er Lægen ?	Where is the doctor ?
Han er i Salen.	He is in the room.
Går De med Toget ?	Are you going by the train ?
Ja ! jeg går med det første Tog.	Yes ! I am going by the first train.

TWELFTH EXERCISE.

The clergyman was ill, but now he is better. My best friend, the Swedish doctor, is older than I am. My youngest daughter is in Norway with her oldest brother, the professor. The nearest town has seven churches. He has the worst carriage in the town. The carriage is very old, but it is the only one. My own child was in the uppermost room of the house. The young man is much older than my son. The little girl has the largest and reddest apples. Her chair is larger, but less good than my mother's. The butter is worse than the cheese. The last time he was here. My very dear little children

are daily in the large woods. That is the worst. I have fewer young chickens to-day. Shall you have more to-morrow? The old doctor is not a bad person. The woman is worse in town than she was out in the country. The outermost ship is English, the innermost one Norwegian. The hindermost horse is very old. The nearest house is the largest. My only child was down in the garden. There were only a few persons there. The officer could not at all see the soldiers when he was in the lowermost room.

Translate into English.

Mit kæreste Önske er at kunne se mine små Börn næste År. Jeg var flere Gange i Norge ifjor. Hvormange Gange var hans yngste Sön ude på Söen? Hun kommer ugentlig til min yngre Söster. De ere begge To ude i Lægens störste Vogn med et Par store sorte Heste. Prästen og hans Kone ere vel fattige Mennesker, men de ere rigere end Lægen og hans Kone. Det midterste Par röde Gardiner ere meget værre end de bageste. Det yderste Kabinet er det nærmeste til det grønne Værelse. Det er bedre at have et godt Hjærte end mange Penge. Kun få gamle Mennesker vare i den mindste Sal med de små Piger og de unge Dreng. Der var næppe en Snés Soldater med Officeren på Landet. Har De ligeså mange Værelser i Deres Hus som vi? Jeg har færre Værelser, men de ere större. Jeg tror ikke at vore Værelser ere mindre end Deres. Disse Penneknive ere de bedste, Köbmanden har at sælge. Giver De Deres Tante de bedste Böger? Nej, jeg giver min Onkel de bedste Böger, men Tanten giver jeg de smukkeste Roser i min Have. Hvilken er den nærmeste Vej til Byen? Den nærmeste Vej er ikke den mest maleriske. Er Deres ældste Broder ældre end min yngste Sön? Nej, han er kun syv År gammel. Deres Dötre ere de smukkeste Piger her i Byen.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS (= *Hjalpeord*)

at få (=to get, to obtain), and

at blive (=to become, to be, to remain).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

(I get.)

jeg får
du får
han får
vi få
I få
de få.

(I become.)

jeg bliver
du bliver
han bliver
vi blive
I blive
de blive.

PAST.

(I did get.)

jeg fik
du fik
han fik
vi fik
I fik
de fik.

(I became.)

jeg blev
du blev
han blev
vi bleve
I bleve
de bleve.

PERFECT.

(I have got.)

jeg har fået
du har fået
han har fået
vi have fået
I have fået
de have fået.

(I have become.)

jeg er bleven or blevet
du er bleven or blevet
han er bleven or blevet
vi ere blevne
I ere blevne
de ere blevne.

PLUPERFECT.

(I had got.)

jeg havde fået
du havde fået
han havde fået
vi havde fået
I havde fået
de havde fået.

(I had become.)

jeg var bleven or blevet
du var bleven or blevet
han var bleven or blevet
vi vare blevne
I vare blevne
de vare blevne.

FUTURE.

(I shall get.)

jeg skal få
du skal få
han skal få
vi skulle få
I skulle få
de skulle få.

(I shall become.)

jeg skal blive
du skal blive
han skal blive
vi skulle blive
I skulle blive
de skulle blive.

POTENTIAL.

PRESENT.

(*I may get.*)

jeg få
 du få
 han få
 vi få
 I få
 de få.

(*I may become.*)

jeg blive
 du blive
 han blive
 vi blive
 I blive
 de blive.

PAST.

(*I may have got.*)

jeg have fået
 du have fået
 han have fået
 vi have fået
 I have fået
 de have fået.

(*I may have become.*)

jeg være bleven or blevet
 du være bleven or blevet
 han være bleven or blevet
 vi være blevne
 I være blevne
 de være blevne.

IMPERATIVE.

få du (*get thou*)
 han få (*let him get*)
 får I (*get ye*)
 de får (*let them get*).

bliv du (*become thou*)
 han blive (*let him become*)
 bliver I (*become*)
 de blive (*let them become*)

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

at få (*to get*).at blive (*to become, etc.*).

PAST.

at have fået (*to have got*).at være bleven (*to have become*).

PARTICIPLES.

fående (*getting*)
 fået (*got*).

blivende (*becoming*)
 bleven, blevet, *sing.*
 blevne, *plur.* } (*become*).

It will be observed that the verb *at få* is conjugated with the auxiliary *at have*, while *at blive* is conjugated with the verb *at være*, to be.

At få, when used as an auxiliary with an active verb, conveys to the latter a sense of compulsion, or necessity, and usually refers to a future period, as for example : *jeg får se*, I must see.

At blive, when used as an auxiliary with an active verb, converts the latter into a passive verb, as for example : *jeg elsker*, I love ; *jeg bliver elsket*, I am (become) beloved.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS (= *Hjælpeord*)
at skulde, to be obliged, ought (= shall, should), and
at ville, to be willing (= will, would).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

(*I shall.*)
 jeg skal
 du skal
 han skal
 vi skulde
 I skulde
 de skulde.

(*I will.*)
 jeg vil
 du vil
 han vil
 vi ville
 I ville
 de ville.

PAST.

(*I should.*)
 jeg skulde
 du skulde
 han skulde
 vi skulde
 I skulde
 de skulde.

(*I would.*)
 jeg vilde
 du vilde
 han vilde
 vi vilde
 I vilde
 de vilde.

PERFECT.

(*I have been obliged.*)
 jeg har skullet
 du har skullet
 han har skullet
 vi have skullet
 I have skullet
 de have skullet.

(*I have been willing.*)
 jeg har villet
 du har villet
 han har villet
 vi have villet
 I have villet
 de have villet.

PLUPERFECT.

(*I had been obliged.*)
 jeg havde skullet
 du havde skullet
 han havde skullet
 vi havde skullet
 I havde skullet
 de havde skullet.

(*I had been willing.*)
 jeg havde villet
 du havde villet
 han havde villet
 vi havde villet
 I havde villet
 de havde villet.

At skulde has no future tense, as the verb itself implies the future; *at ville* can only be used in the future with the auxiliary *at skulde*, as follows:—

FUTURE.

(I shall be willing.)

jeg skal ville
 du skal ville
 han skal ville

vi skulle ville
 I skulle ville
 de skulle ville.

POTENTIAL.¹

PRESENT.

(I should.)

jeg skulle
 du skulle
 han skulle
 vi skulle
 I skulle
 de skulle.

(I would.)

jeg ville
 du ville
 han ville
 vi ville
 I ville
 de ville.

PAST.

(I ought to have.)

jeg have skullet
 du have skullet
 han have skullet
 vi have skullet
 I have skullet
 de have skullet.

(I may have been willing.)

jeg have villet
 du have villet
 han have villet
 vi have villet
 I have villet
 de have villet.

At skulle and *at ville* have no Imperative mood, since both verbs convey a sense of obligation or necessity.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

*at skulle (to be obliged, ought).**at ville (to will, be willing).*

PAST.

*at have skullet (to have been obliged).**at have villet (to have willed).*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

*skullende (being obliged).**villende (being willing).*

PAST.

*skullet (obliged, ought).**villet (willed).*

¹ The potential mood is so little used in Danish, that it may be regarded as nearly obsolete, more especially in the auxiliary verbs.

THIRTEENTH LESSON.

ON PRONOUNS (= *Stedord*).

The Danish personal pronouns (*Personlige Stedord*) are:—

<i>Singular.</i>			
Nominative.	Genetive.	Objective.	Reflective.
<i>jeg</i> , I	. . .	<i>mig</i>	. . .
<i>du</i> , thou	. . .	<i>dig</i>	. . .
<i>han</i> , he	<i>hans</i>	<i>ham</i>	<i>sig</i>
<i>hun</i> , she	<i>hendes</i>	<i>hende</i>	<i>sig</i>
<i>det</i> , it	<i>dets</i>	<i>det</i>	. . .
<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>vi</i> , we	. . .	<i>os</i>	. . .
<i>I</i> , ye	<i>Eders</i> or <i>Jeres</i>	<i>Eder</i> or <i>Jer</i>	. . .
<i>de</i> , they	<i>deres</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>sig</i>

De, when used in the signification of "you," takes a singular verb, as already stated; as for example, *De har*, you have (has).

The possessive pronouns (= *Ejestedord*) are:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
COMMON GENDER.	NEUTER GENDER.	
<i>min</i> , my	<i>mit</i>	<i>mine</i>
<i>din</i> , thy	<i>dit</i>	<i>dine</i>
<i>hans</i> , his	<i>hans</i>	<i>hans</i>
<i>hendes</i> , her	<i>hendes</i>	<i>hendes</i>
<i>sin</i> , his, her (their own)	<i>sit</i>	<i>sine</i>
<i>vor</i> , our	<i>vort</i>	<i>vore</i>
<i>Jeres</i> , ¹ your	<i>Jeres</i>	<i>Jeres</i>
<i>Eders</i> , ² your	<i>Eders</i>	<i>Eders</i>
(referring only to numbers, and used in relation to <i>I</i> , ye.)		
<i>Deres</i> , your	<i>Deres</i>	<i>Deres</i>
(referring to one person, and used in relation to <i>De</i> , you.)		
<i>deres</i> , their	<i>deres</i>	<i>deres</i> .

¹ Used principally by the less well-educated classes.

² Used in composition, in general conversation, etc.

The distinctive differences between the pronouns *sin, sit, sine*, and *hans, hendes, deres*, will be fully considered in Part II., and it will therefore suffice for the present to draw attention to the fact that, *in general*, the use of *sin, sit, sine* is imperative where, in English, the adjective "own" is used or implied. In other words, this pronoun, *sin, sit, sine*, is used in a subjective sense, in opposition to *hans, hendes, dets, deres*, which have an objective meaning. Thus, for example, by the correct use of these pronouns, all ambiguity may be avoided in Danish in a sentence such as the following: "He took his hat and went through his garden," which may be rendered thus:—

Han tog hans Hat, og gik igennem hans Have :

He took his (another man's) hat, and went through his (another man's) garden.

Han tog sin Hat, og gik igennem sin Have :

He took his (own) hat, and went through his (own) garden.

Han tog hans Hat, og gik igennem sin Have :

He took his (another's) hat, and went through his (own) garden.

Han tog sin Hat, og gik igennem hans Have :

He took his (own) hat, and went through his (another's) garden.

en Kjole, a coat, dress
en Skjorte, a shirt
et Ur, a watch
en Lomme, a pocket
Klæder (pl.), clothes
en Smag, a taste
en Mode, a fashion
et Øje, an eye
et Øjeblik, a moment
en Kusk, a coachman
et Skur, a shed
et Vognskur, a coach-house
Aviser (pl.), newspapers
et Fotel, a case
et Hattefotel, a hat-box

at bringe, to bring
jeg bringer, I bring
at hente, to fetch
jeg henter, I fetch
at sende, to send
jeg sender, I send
at holde, to hold
at holde af, to like
jeg holder af, I like
at bryde sig om, to care for
jeg bryder mig ikke om ham, I do not care for him
han bryder sig ikke om det, he does not care about that

kold, cold
(en) Kulde, a cold
en stræng Kulde, excessive cold
varm, warm
(en) Varme, a warmth
hed, hot
ny, new
moderne, fashionable
et Sygehus, a hospital
på Moden, in the fashion
i god Smag, in good taste
efter min Smag, according to my taste.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Fru Jansen bringer sine Børn med i Vognen, men ikke Deres.	Mrs. Jansen will bring her own children in the carriage, but not yours.
Min Mand kommer i et Øjeblik med Hr. Hansen og hans Ven, Juristen.	My husband is coming in a moment, with Mr. Hansen and his friend, the lawyer.
Lægen gav Drengen i Sygehuset sine bedste Æbler.	The doctor gave the boy in the hospital his best apples.
Er det mit Hattefotaler eller Dit ?	Is that my hat-box, or yours ?
Det er ikke mit, men min Faders.	It is not mine, but my father's.
Har De min Broders Aviser ?	Have you my brother's papers ?
Nej, han har dem i sin Vogn.	No, he has them in his carriage.
Har hun sit Ur i Lommen ?	Has she her watch in her pocket ?
Nu kommer Tjenestepigen med hendes Ur.	Now the maid is coming with her watch.
Min Tjæner henter min Kåbe og min Hat.	My servant is bringing me my cloak and hat.
Deres Hattefotaler er i Vognen i Vognskuret.	Your hat-box is in the carriage in the coach-house.
Jeg vil bringe Dem det i et Øjeblik.	I will bring it to you in a minute.
Er denne Kjole ganske på Moden ?	Is this dress quite in the fashion ?
Ja, den er ganske ny og moderne.	Yes, it is quite new and stylish.
Holder De af hendes Mands Ven, Lægen ?	Do you like her husband's friend, the doctor ?
Nej, jeg bryder mig ikke om ham.	No, I do not care for him.
Hendes Kjole var grå og rød.	Her dress was grey and red.
En hvid og blå Kjole er mer efter min Smag.	A white and blue dress is more to my taste.
Har hun sin varme Kåbe på ?	Has she her warm cloak on ?
Hvor er Deres Kusk ?	Where is your coachman ?
Han er på Sygehuset med min Onkel, den gamle Læge.	He is at the hospital with my uncle, the old doctor.
Min Moder sender mig tre hvide Skjorter.	My mother sends me three white shirts.
Der er ingen Lomme i min Kjole.	There is no pocket in my coat.
Hendes Klæder ere meget smukke.	Her clothes are very pretty.

THIRTEENTH EXERCISE.

Where is my little girl and her friend ? They are in your room with Mrs. Bang and her daughter. Should you not give me my son's coat ? He has his coat with him. Can you send us a pair of ducks and two or three score of eggs ? How old are you (ye) ? We are both almost ten years old. Our eldest son has his sweet little wife with him in Sweden. A good man loves his little children very dearly (highly). My garden has higher trees than yours. Will he bring me a good pair of chickens the next time he comes to town ? She had her children with her (reflective *sig*). Will your child fetch me a glass of cold water with a tea-spoonful of red wine ? I wish you to give her eldest daughter a large cup of hot milk with a piece of bread, and a little butter and cheese. She ought to send him a long letter soon. I am coming (come) immediately with her red cloak and his black hat. Our old houses are the most picturesque. Will you come with me and my son through the doctor's garden ? Where are our daughters ? Your daughters are in the wood with their husbands. It is my own carriage, but the horse is not mine. Is the garden yours ? No, the garden is not mine, but the house is mine. Has your daughter's husband a better coach-house than his brother ?

Translate into English.

Han giver sin Søn en deilig Bog. Deres egne Kåber ere våde. Det er gruelig koldt her i vort Hus. De to Mænd ville ikke se hinanden. Kan Du sige hende, om den hvide Hat er Din eller hendes ? Den er min, men Hatten på Bordet er hendes. Undertiden elsker en Kone sine Börnebörn bedre end sine egne Börn. Er Dyret dit eller mit ? Er det vor Fugl eller deres ? Er det Deres Vogn, eller er det Deres Faders ? Vognen er

min Faders, men det er vort Vognskur. Lægen er endnu i Sygehuset med sin Søn. Sønneren er meget syg, og hans Søster Anna er med ham. Han holder så meget af de Börn. Det er meget koldt i Deres Have idag; jeg vil hente Dem Deres Kåbe. Tak skal De have; jeg bryder mig ikke om Kulden. Min Ven, Præsten, kommer imorgen med sine gamle Forældre og med sin Kones Fætter, Husar-Officer Langberg. Jeg bryder mig slet ikke om Husar-Officeren, men jeg holder meget af de Gamle. Har De Deres Søsters Börn med Dem? Nej, Börnene ere ikke her i Landet; de ere endnu hos deres Slægtninge i Spanien. Når kommer Søsteren til Danmark med sine Börn? Måske kommer hun næste År med sin Veninde, Englænderinden. Er hendes Mand en Englænder? Nej, han er ikke engelsk, men tysk.

FOURTEENTH LESSON.

ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, &c.

(=Påpegende Stedord, o. s. v.)

The demonstrative pronouns are:—

Singular.		Plural.	Singular.		Plural.
COMMON G.	NEUTER G.		COMMON G.	NEUTER G.	
<i>den</i> , that	<i>det</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>slig</i> , such	<i>sligt</i>	<i>slige</i>
<i>denne</i> , this	<i>dette</i>	<i>disse</i>	<i>sådan</i> , such	<i>sådant</i>	<i>sådanne</i>
<i>hin</i> , that	<i>hint</i>	<i>hine</i>	<i>samme</i> , same	<i>samme</i>	<i>samme</i>

Selv, pl. *selve*, self, admits, as in English, of being added to pronouns for the sake of emphasis or opposition; as for example, *jeg selv*, I myself; *den selvsamme Mand*, the self-same man; *begge*, both, is used directly before nouns, and before the numeral *to*, two, as *begge Brødre*, both brothers; *begge to*, both of them.

A. The demonstrative pronouns, *den, det, de*, are, in point of fact, the component parts of the independent definite (adjective) article used as pronouns, and distinguished, when thus employed, by a special intonation of the *e*, as *det Bord*, that table; *den Stol er min*, that chair is mine; *den Mand kalder jeg den sande Vise*, that man I call the true Solon!

B. *Hin, hint, hine*, that, those, used in opposition to *denne, dette, disse*, this, those, are similarly mere adaptations of the Old Northern independent definite article. (See Part II.)

C. *Slig, slige*, such, are used very much the same in Danish as in English. In the singular, *slig* may precede the indefinite article, as *slig en Mand*, such a man; in the plural, *slige* precedes the substantive directly; as for example, *slige Koner*, such women.

D. *Sådan, sådant, sådanne*, such, may be used both before and after the indefinite article; as for example, *en sådan Mand, sådan en Mand*, such a man.

E. *Samme*, same, is the defective form of an Old Northern demonstrative pronoun, and is used very much as its English equivalent; as for example, *den selv samme Mand*, the self-same man; *den samme Aften*, the same evening.

The RELATIVE PRONOUNS (= *Henvisende Stedord*) are:—

Singular.		Plural.
COMMON GENDER.	NEUTER GENDER.	
<i>hvilken</i> , which	<i>hvilket</i>	<i>hvilke</i>
<i>som</i> , which, that	<i>som</i>	<i>som</i>
<i>der</i> , which, that	<i>der</i>	<i>der</i> .

Hvem, objective of *hvo*, who, is used instead of *hvilken*, when the relative applies to a person.

Hvad, hvad for en, what, is used instead of *hvilket*, where the relative is taken in a general sense, and refers exclusively to a neuter singular.

Hvis, whose, which, is used as the genitive of all the above given relative pronouns.

A. *Der* is used only as a nominative ; the old objective *den*, c.c., and *det*, n.c., and the dative, *dem*, have been superseded in modern Danish by *som*, and are wholly dispensed with ; as for example, *Nöden, som Gud sender*, the trial that God sends ; *Manden, som jeg har at takke for mit Liv*, the man to whom I owe (whom I have to thank for) my life.

at ligge, to lie
at have på, to have on
at klæde sig på, to dress oneself
at høre til } to belong to
at tilhøre }
at bestille, to order
at købe, to buy
at agte, to esteem
at bringe, to bring

at sige, to say
at se, to see
en Støvle, a boot
et Par Støvler, a pair of boots
et Par Benklæder, a pair of trousers
et Par Strømper, a pair of stockings
en Sko, a shoe

en Krave, a collar
en Vest, a waistcoat
en Handske, a glove
en Frakke, a coat
en Skrædder, a tailor
en Handskemager, a glover
en Krone, a crown (coin = to about 1s. 1½d.).

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Kan Skrædderen ikke sende mig min Frakke idag ?

Han siger, at han kan ikke bringe den sorte Frakke, som Herren ønsker, förend i Morgen.

Der ligger den sorte Vest, som jeg havde på igår ; giv mig den.

Jeg ønsker at bestille et Par sorte Benklæder, en hvid Vest og en sort Frakke.

Hvad er det for en Krave ?

Det er den selv samme Krave, som De havde på igår.

Hvor ere mine Støvler ?

Her har De dem begge to.

Hine ere ikke mine ; dette Par tilhører min Fader.

Disse ere de selv samme Handsker, som jeg gav min Broder.

Jeg vil købe mig tre Par hvide Handsker og et Par sorte Silkestrømper.

Cannot the tailor send me my coat to-day ?

He says that he cannot bring the black coat which you want till to-morrow.

There is the black waistcoat that I wore yesterday ; give me that one.

I wish to order a pair of black trousers, a white waistcoat, and a black coat.

What collar is this ?

It is the same collar you had on yesterday.

Where are my boots ?

Here are both of them.

Those are not mine ; this pair belongs to my father.

These are the same gloves that I gave to my brother.

I want to buy myself three pairs of white gloves, and one pair of black silk stockings.

Barnet kan ikke klæde sig selv på.	The child cannot dress himself.
Hvis Barn er dette?	Whose child is this?
Det er min Søsters lille Barn, som ønsker så meget at se Deres små Drange.	It is my sister's little child; he wishes so very much to see your little boys.
Denne Kåbe har kun én Lomme; hvor er Urlommen?	This cloak has only one pocket; where is the watch-pocket?
Skrædderen siger at en Urlomme hører ikke til en Kåbe.	The tailor says a watch-pocket is not needed in (does not belong to) a cloak.
Slig en Kåbeer ikke efter min Smag.	Such a cloak is not to my taste.
Sådan et Par Handsker ser man ikke her i Byen.	One does not see such a pair of gloves as these in this town.

FOURTEENTH EXERCISE.

I do not at all care for that girl, but I like her sister very much. Who was here yesterday? It is my sister who gave me a horse. The doctor who was here yesterday is coming again to-morrow to my youngest sister. Both soldiers were quite sober on that evening. It was not that lawyer, but his elder brother. It was that one who sends me money every month (monthly). Which cows are yours? Those in the little cow-house, and those which are in the fields to-day. This white house is higher than that gray one. Which house is theirs? Whose daughter is she? I send you the same large black basket again. Which basket is yours? I have not (got) his ugly basket. Is her sister not in the house? No, but the master (*Herre*) is at home with his three little sons. Is the same person in the kitchen? Yes, the boy who brings the bread daily, is there with my mother's maid-servant. My daughter can bring the newspapers at (upon) the same time. This year the cold is dreadful in Norway. There are only about a score of persons in that room, but in this one there is nearly a hundred. It is the self same man who was here with

my uncle, the clergyman, yesterday. Whose letter is that? I ought to send this letter. He has not a single crown. I can only say these few Danish words.

Translate into English.

Denne stolte Mand er ikke den jeg ønsker at se. De samme små Piger vare med hine Fruentimre, og begge to havde høje Hatte. Han kalder sig Jurist, og hin Dame, som De ser i denne Sal, er hans Kone. Hans første Kone var udmærket smuk, meget smukkere end hans anden. Jeg har mine gamle Forældre at takke for mine Penge og mine Klæder. Jeg agter disse gode Bøndepiger meget højere end hine fornemme Frøkener. Denne Mand's Stolthed er større end hans Højhed. Begges Nød er skrækkelig. Hvor ere disse Folks Heste? Jeg ser dem ikke i denne Skov. Hvis Have ønsker De at se? Jeg ønsker at se Juristens Have, som har de høje Træer. Er hans Får i disse eller i hine Marker? Hvor er Deres Herskab? Er dette Deres eller vort? Har De flere Penge end disse to Kroner? Hvilken Stol bringer De ind i dette Værelse? Den sorte, men den hyde hører til hint Værelse. Har Tjæneren mine Benklæder? Nej, de ligge på hin Stol i det gule Værelse. Det er Manden, som var hos mig. Hine Piger ere ikke så smukke som disse. Hvor ere mine Knive? Jeg har dem begge to. Hvad er det som jeg ser? Det er ikke noget. Jeg selv var i Huset med denne Mand, som nu ligger syg i Sygehuset. Ønsker De at tage rene Støvler på? Ja, vil De være så god at sige til Tjæneren, at han skal bringe mig et Par rene Støvler. Hvad skal De give for Deres Ur? Jeg skal give hundrede og tyve Kroner; men sig ikke til min Fader, at det koster så meget.

FIFTEENTH LESSON.

ON PRONOUNS (=Stedord).

(Continued.)

The following are used as INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS (=Spørgende Stedord) as well as in the sense of RELATIVE PRONOUNS (=Henvisende Stedord).

	Singular.		Plural.
	COMMON GENDER.	NEUTER GENDER.	
Nom.:—	<i>hvo</i> , who	<i>hvad</i> ,	{ <i>hvilke</i> , who, which.
Gen.:—	<i>hvis</i> , whose	<i>hvad for</i>	
Obj., etc.:—	<i>hvem</i> , whom		

Hvo is seldom used, except in poetry, impressive appeals, &c.; *hvem* being employed both as a nominative and an objective; as for example, *hvem er det?* who is that?

The following rank in Dano-Norwegian as indefinite pronouns (*Ubestemte Stedord*):—

Man, one, they. This pronoun can only be used as a nominative singular, as, for example, *man ved det meget godt*, one knows that very well; where the objective or genitive case is required, the pronoun *en* must be substituted for *man*, as, *man søger hvad der behager en*, one seeks for what pleases one.

Det (pronounced *dê*), it; is used impersonally, as for example, *det regner*, *det blæser*, *det snør*, *det fryser*, it rains, it blows, it snows, it freezes; *der er*, there is, answers to the French *il y a*, as for example, *der er fremmede Folk i Stuen*, there are strange people in the room. *Der*, there, is used with a passive verb in the following manner: *der læses og skrives i Salen*, people are reading and writing in the drawing-room, *lit.*, there is being read and written in the drawing-room.

Somme (pl.), some, is used only under certain limited conditions, but it may, in special cases, be employed as in English, as for example, *somme Tider røger jeg i Salen*, I sometimes smoke in the drawing-room.

The following indefinite pronouns are modified by gender and number :—

Singular.		Singular.		Plural.
COMMON G.	NEUTER.	COMMON G.	NEUTER.	
<i>en</i> , a, one	<i>et</i>	<i>ingen</i> , no one	<i>intet</i>	<i>ingen</i>
<i>en anden</i> , another	<i>et andet</i>	<i>nogen</i> , some,	<i>noget</i>	<i>nogle</i> , some
<i>hver en</i> } each	<i>hvert et</i>	some one		few
<i>enhver</i> }	<i>ethvert</i>	<i>mangen</i> , many,	<i>mangt</i>	<i>mange</i>
		<i>al</i> , all	<i>alt</i>	<i>alle</i> .

A. When *en* and *et* are used as pronouns, the words are pronounced with a deepened intonation of the *e*, as, for example, *én gör ét*, *en anden gör et andet*, one person does one thing, another does another thing.

B. *Hver en*, and *enhver*, may be used in one and the same sense; as for example, *enhver Mand*, *hver en Mand*, every man; *ethvert Hus*, *hvert et Hus*, every house.

Hver, *hvert*, admit of being combined with certain ordinal numbers; as for example, *hveranden*, every second; *hver tredje Gang*, every third time.

Hverandre, one another, and *hinanden*, each other, are used in the same reciprocal sense as in English.

C. *Ingen*, no one, *nogen*, some one, and *mangen*, many, are used in Dano-Norwegian in the same manner as their English equivalents, as for example, *er der Ingen hjemme?* is there no one at home? *Jo, der er Nogen hjemme*, yes, there is some one at home; *mangen en Købmand bliver rig*, many a merchant becomes rich; *er der mange i Køkkenet?* are there many in the kitchen?

D. *Nogle*, some, occurs only in the plural, and is frequently followed by *få*, few; as for example, *jeg har kun nogle få Bøger med mig*, I have only a few books with me.

at *bo*, to dwell, live in
 at *gå hen*, to go towards
jeg må, I may
 at *lade*, to let (allow)
 at *synes*, to think
 et *Blad*, a leaf
 et *Dagblad*, a daily
 paper

en *Flokke*, a flake
 (en) *Sne*, snow
 (et) *Vejr*, weather
 et *Løfte*, a promise
 en *Skorsten*, a chimney
 en *Skomager*, a shoe-
 maker

en *Broche*, a brooch
 en *Knap*, a button
 et *Tørkløde*, a handker-
 chief
 en *Manchette*, a cuff
 en *Dame*, a lady
 en *Herre*, a gentleman.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Sommetider kommer Fru Nielsen
 hos mine Forældre.

Har De mange Par Manchetter?

Jeg har nogle få Par med Søl-
 knapper på.

Der siges så meget usandt i Byen.

Vær så god at sige mig, hvor Dame-
 skomager Holm bor.

Han bor ikke i denne Gade.

Hvem har mine Manchetknapper?

Hvis Knapper ere disse?

Sådan en Kjole köber jeg ikke.

Enhver Dame har en Silkekjole
 som denne.

Du må ikke gå ud, min Datter, det
 sner og fryser.

I sligt et Vejr går man ikke på
 Gaden; Vejen er glat, og hvert et
 Hus er hvidt, Sneflokkene ligge
 overalt.

Det kan nok være, men jeg klæder
 mig varmt på; og Kulden er
 måske ikke så stræng som De
 synes.

Jeg tror at Skorstenen ryger.

Er der Ingen her i Huset, som har
 Aviserne for idag?

Jo, der er Nogle som have dem.

Vil De lade mig gå hen til Köb-
 manden i Vestergade for at læse
 Dagbladene.

Mrs. Nielsen sometimes comes to
 my parents' house.

Have you many pairs of cuffs?

I have a few pairs with silver but-
 tons on them.

So many false things are said in
 town.

Will you please tell me where the
 ladies' shoemaker Holm lives?

He does not live in this street.

Who has my cuff-studs?

Whose buttons are these?

I will not buy such a dress (as that).

Every lady has a silk dress like
 this.

Thou must not go out, my daughter,
 it is snowing and freezing.

In such weather as this you cannot
 go into the streets; the road is
 slippery, and every house is
 white, the snow-flakes are cover-
 ing everything.

That may be, but I am warmly
 dressed; and the cold is perhaps
 not so severe as you may think.

I think the chimney smokes.

Is there any one here, who has
 the day's papers?

Yes, there are some persons who
 have them.

Will you let me go to the merchant
 in Vestergade (West Street) to
 read the daily papers?



FIFTEENTH EXERCISE.

One man has one thing, and another man something else (another thing). Every ship has such a table. Every good man is a good man's friend. Whom do I see? You see the doctor, whose youngest daughter is ill. What have you in your basket? I have many pretty canary birds. Every house has a room, but every room has not many windows. Is there no one at home to-day, my dear boy? Yes, there are some of the children at home. There are only some few children in the sitting-room. The cold is sometimes very great in February. Will you give me this promise? Such a promise I cannot give (can I not give) you. My sister has such a beautiful picture. Whose picture is it? A psalm is being sung in the old church. There is reading and writing going on in that large hall with the black curtains. It rains and snows in the country to-day. Yesterday it was very bad weather in town. To whom do you give (give you) a crown every week? I give five crowns monthly to my sister's Swedish servant; he is such a faithful creature. They wish it in Norway, and also perhaps in Sweden, but not in Denmark. That rich merchant has many newspapers. Every kitchen does not smoke.

Translate into English.

Gud giver Mennesket mangt godt. Hun var meget ulykkelig hin Dag. Sådant en Pige kan jeg ikke elske. De høje Træer, som De ser på denne Mark, ere ældre end min egen gamle Bedstefader. Hin Præst er ingen Vismænd. Den Mand holder jeg mer af end af hans Ven, Lægen, som var her igår. Enhver Dreng har sin Bog. Er Herr Jurist Thomsen hjemme idag? Nej, der er Ingen hjemme idag; en af disse Dage kommer Herren

hjem med nogle Venner, som ere med ham på Landet; men jeg kan ikke sige hvilken Dag det bliver. Måske kommer han eller Fruen på Tirsdag eller Onsdag. Soldaten bringer ingen Aviser; men nogle få Bøger har han. Sligt et Dyr er grueligt. Officeren, hvis Kone er syg i hendes Forældres Hus, sender en af Soldaterne for at hente den fremmede Læge, som har været nogle Uger i Byen. Ens eget er dog det bedste. Hvad er det for en Dreng? De må ikke lade sådan en Dreng blive hos Dem

SIXTEENTH LESSON.

ON THE REGULAR VERBS

(= *Regelrette Udsagnsord*).

Danish regular verbs admit of being grouped under two heads:—

I. Those which take *ede* in the past tense of the indicative, and *et* in the past participle.

II. Those which take *te* in the past tense of the indicative, and *t* in the past participle.

The following paradigms will show the simple mode of inflexion followed in both systems of declination.

Active Form.

INFINITIVE.

(I.) at elske (*to love*).

(II.) at tænke (*to think*).¹

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

elskende (*loving*)
tænkende (*thinking*).

PAST.

elsket (*loved*)
tænkt (*thought*).

¹ The use of the verb *at tænke* is generally limited to the expression of some definite mental process; as, for example: *jeg har tænkt over alt hvad De sagde mig*, I have been thinking over all that you said to me.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.¹

(I love.)

jeg elsker
du elsker
han elsker
vi elske
I elske
de elske.

(I think.)

jeg tænker
du tænker
han tænker
vi tænke
I tænke
de tænke.

PAST.

(I loved.)

jeg elskede
du elskede
han elskede
vi elskede
I elskede
de elskede.

(I thought.)

jeg tænkte
du tænkte
han tænkte
vi tænkte
I tænkte
de tænkte.

PERFECT.

(I have loved.)

jeg har elsket
du har elsket
han har elsket
vi have elsket
I have elsket
de have elsket.

(I have thought.)

jeg har tænkt
du har tænkt
han har tænkt
vi have tænkt
I have tænkt
de have tænkt.

PLUPERFECT.

(I had loved.)

jeg havde elsket
du havde elsket
han havde elsket
vi havde elsket
I havde elsket
de havde elsket.

(I had thought.)

jeg havde tænkt
du havde tænkt
han havde tænkt
vi havde tænkt
I havde tænkt
de havde tænkt.

Where the English "think" might be rendered by "suppose," "believe," etc., the Danes use the verbs *at tro*, to believe (*tror, trode, trót*), and *at synes* (defective), to seem, to think; as for example: *jeg tror at min Søn kommer idag*, I think that my son will come to-day; *det Maleri syntes mig så dårligt*, I thought that picture so wretchedly bad.

¹The present indicative is used in Danish not merely to convey the full meaning of the same tense in English with its auxiliaries "do," "be," as: *jeg ser*, I see, I do see, I am seeing; but it is also very commonly employed in the place of the simple future, as for example: *jeg kommer en eller anden Dag*, I shall come some day or other; *hun begynder straks*, she will begin immediately.

FUTURE.

(I shall or will love.)

jeg skal elske
 du skal elske
 han skal elske
 vi skulle elske
 I skulle elske
 de skulle elske.

(I shall or will think.)

jeg skal tænke
 du skal tænke
 han skal tænke
 vi skulle tænke
 I skulle tænke
 de skulle tænke.

POTENTIAL.

PRESENT.

(I may love.)

jeg elske
 du elske
 han elske
 vi elske
 I elske
 de elske.

(I may think.)

jeg tænke
 du tænke
 han tænke
 vi tænke
 I tænke
 de tænke.

PAST.

(I may have loved.)

jeg have elsket
 du have elsket
 han have elsket
 vi have elsket
 I have elsket
 de have elsket.

(I may have thought.)

jeg have tænkt
 du have tænkt
 han have tænkt
 vi have tænkt
 I have tænkt
 de have tænkt.

IMPERATIVE.

elsk du! (love thou!)
 han elske! (let him love!)
 elsker I! (love ye!)
 de elske! (let them love!)

tænk du! (think thou!)
 han tænke! (let him think!)
 tænker I! (think ye!)
 de tænke! (let them think!)

VERBS belonging to CONJUGATION I.

at arbejde, to work (jeg arbejder,
 I work, jeg arbejdede, I worked,
 jeg har arbejdet, I have worked)
 at more, to amuse
 at nægte, to deny
 at sne (defective), to snow
 at takke, to thank.

VERBS belonging to CONJUGATION II.

at begynde, to begin (jeg begynder,
 I begin, jeg begyndte, I began,
 jeg har begyndt, I have begun)
 at købe, to buy
 at køre, to drive
 at lære, to learn
 at stræbe, to strive, to try.

med Tilladelse, with permission,
 permit me
en Tur, a tour, journey
en Spadseretur, a walking tour
en Lyst, a pleasure
(en) Ret, right, law
at have Ret, to be right
en Uret, a wrong
at have Uret, to be wrong.

om Forladelse, for forgiveness,
 pardon me !
behagelig, pleasant
ubehagelig, unpleasant
ren, clean
smudsig, dirty
en Dal, a valley
en Bygning, a building
en Stad, a city.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Det er ikke meget behageligt at
 være på Landet i dårligt Vejr.

Man kan ikke nægte at somme
 Tider er det ubehageligt nok ;
 men dog synes jeg, at det er
 altid mere behageligt at være på
 Landet, end at bo i en stor Stad.

Jeg ønsker at gå en Tur i Byen for
 at se Bygningerne.

Ønsker De at tage nye Handsker
 på ?

Ja, og vær så god at sige til Tjeneren
 at han skal bringe mig et Par
 rene Støvler ; mine ere smudsige.

Han har ikke Lyst til at tage ud på
 Landet idag.

Det er ikke behageligt at gå på
 Gaden når det sner.

Jeg synes at det er bedre at være i
 Byen end på Landet i dårligt
 Vejr.

Hvem ønsker De at tale med ?

Med Deres Søn, som skulde køre
 omkring i Staden med mig og
 min Tante.

Hun nægtede ikke at hun elskede
 sin ældste Søn mer end den
 yngste.

It is not very pleasant to be in the
 the country in bad weather.

One cannot deny that it is at times
 unpleasant enough ; but yet I
 think that it is always pleasanter
 to be in the country than to live
 in a large city.

I want to take a walk in the town
 to see the buildings.

Do you wish to put on a pair of
 new gloves ?

Yes, and please tell the servant to
 bring (that he must bring) me a
 clean pair of boots ; mine are
 dirty.

He does not want to go into the
 country to-day ?

It is not pleasant to walk in the
 street when it snows.

I think it is better to be in town
 than in the country in bad wea-
 ther.

Whom do you wish to speak to ?

With your son, who was to drive
 about the town with me and my
 aunt.

She did not deny that she loved her
 eldest son more than the younger
 one.

Har jeg ikke Ret?
 Jeg nægter ikke at De har Ret.
 Hvorledes morede De Dem igår?

Am I not right?
 I do not deny that you are right.
 How did you amuse yourself yesterday?

Tak ! jeg morede mig ret godt.

Thanks (thank you), I amused myself pretty well.

SIXTEENTH EXERCISE.

My brother is beginning to learn Swedish, but he has no great pleasure in learning the language. To-day it rains and blows, and yesterday it snowed out in the country, but not in town. My husband and my brother love one another. I thought she was in the house with your little children. No, that she is not; but she was there yesterday, I think. We shall always love that pretty young Swede, but her relations have never loved her. Her mother thinks that the Norwegian lawyer loves her eldest son more than his own brother. Brothers and sisters should love one another. He began to read a Danish book to his father. I amused myself greatly (much) at my doctor's. I heard my niece say that she amused herself yesterday, but she denies it to-day. They drive in the carriage with a pair of black horses every day. Do you think that (Danish, *at*) she is reading with his wife? Yes, I think so (*it*). She always strove to be a loving mother. Where does my dear child wish to drive to-day? To-day, dear mother, I wish (*wish I*) to drive out into the country with my friend (*fem.*) the Englishwoman. Her brother has (*is*) already driven into town, where he is amusing himself. She never thinks of her old home now that she lives in a great city.

Translate into English.

Nogle af mine Venner ønske at køre i Skovene på Torsdag Aften, men måske regner eller sner det på den

Dag. Ingen kan nægte at hun har endnu en udmærket dejlig Stemme. Hvor tænker De at gå næste År? De må stræbe at læse danske Böger. Jeg begynder allerede at læse nogle få danske Ord. De skulde købe Dem nogle lette danske Böger. Hvad tænker De på, min Ven! Om Forladelse, kære Frue, jeg ønsker kun at sige et eneste Ord. Nu, min Ven, hvad kan det være, som De har at sige mig? Vænt et Øjeblik, Herr Læge, så kommer jeg straks med Vognen og Hestene. Jeg nægter slet ikke at min gamle Ven, Juristen, må være et ondt Menneske. Mine små Piger morede sig så udmærket hin Aften hos Fru Generalinde Rothe. Generalen körte dem hjem meget sildigt, og Klokken var næsten elleve förend de kom til Sengs. Var det Dem ikke behageligt? Har De nogle engelske Böger? Jeg har nogle, som min Onkel har givet mig.

SEVENTEENTH LESSON.

ON ADVERBS (= *Börd.*)

The following groups indicate the principal sources from which the Danish adverbs are derived:—

I. Some adverbs are identical with adjectives, especially where the latter end in *s*, *ig*, etc., as for example: *fælles*, mutual, mutually; *indvortes*, internal, internally; *evig*, or *evigt*, eternal, eternally; *rigtig*, right, rightly.

II. Some are identical with the neuter singular of the adjective, as for example: *smukt*, prettily (c.g. *smuk*); *vildt*, wildly (c.g. *vild*); *tyndt*, thinly (c.g. *tynd*); *godt*, well (c.g. *god*); *klogt*, cleverly (c.g. *klog*).

III. Some adverbs of time are formed by adding *lig* (identical with English "ly") to the noun from which they are derived, as for example: *årlig*, yearly; *daglig*, daily; *ugentlig*, weekly.

IV. Some adverbs of time and place are formed by prefixing a preposition to the noun which they indicate, as for example: *i år*, this year; *til års*, in years; *ifjor*, last year; *imorgen*, to-morrow, etc.; *undervejs*, on the way, underway; *tilsøs*, by sea; *tilfreds*, satisfied.

V. Adverbs are formed from nouns, or adjectives, by the addition of certain affixes, viz., *vis* (Engl. "wise"), *ledes*, etc., as for example: *stykkevis*, piecewise; *lykkeligvis*, happily; *sandsynligvis*, probably; *anderledes*, otherwise; *ligeledes*, likewise; *således*, suchwise.

The following list contains a number of irregularly formed adverbs, and various groups of words used adverbially.

<i>hen</i> , away, off	<i>itu</i> , in two, torn, broken	<i>uden Tvivl</i> , undoubt-
<i>op</i> , <i>oppe</i> , up	<i>udenfra</i> , from outside	edly
<i>netop</i> , precisely	<i>indefra</i> , from within	<i>af og til</i> , off and on
<i>bort</i> , <i>borte</i> , away	<i>tilbage</i> , back	<i>nu og da</i> , now and then
<i>nogenlunde</i> , in any way	<i>overhoved</i> , over and	<i>vist</i> , certainly
<i>særdeles</i> , especially	above	<i>allerbedst</i> , best of all
<i>sjældn</i> , seldom	<i>i lige Måde</i> , in the	<i>ilde</i> , badly
<i>måske</i> } may be,	same way	<i>vel</i> , well, surely
<i>kanske</i> } perhaps		

A. The word *til*, to, which may be used adverbially as well as prepositionally, forms in combination with other words a very large number of adverbial groups, which, until recently, have always been written as conjoint words, as for example: *tilsøs*, by sea; *tillands*, by land; but which modern writers now generally write in the originally separate forms, as: *til Sengs*, in bed; *til Fods*, on foot, etc.

<i>at pynte</i> (I.), to smarten	<i>en Snedker</i> , a carpenter	<i>et Torv</i> , a market
<i>at spise</i> (II.), to eat	<i>en Modehandler</i> , a haberdasher, milliner	(en) <i>Frokost</i> , breakfast
<i>at foretrække</i> , to prefer	<i>en Nabo</i> , a neighbour	(en) <i>Middag</i> , dinner
<i>at møblere</i> , to furnish	<i>en Maler</i> , a painter	(en) <i>Spisetime</i> , dinner-hour
<i>at fordærve</i> , to spoil	<i>en Butik</i> , a shop	<i>virkelig</i> , truly, indeed.
<i>bestemt</i> , decidedly		

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Idag må jeg blive hjemme til Klokken syv.	I must stay at home to-day till seven o'clock.
Min Mand er taget på Landet; men kommer han tidlig nok tilbage, spise vi til Middag Klokken seks eller halv syv.	My husband has gone into the country; if he comes home early enough, we shall dine at six or half-past six.
Hvad synes De om min nye Kjole? Jeg synes særdeles godt om den.	How do you like my new dress? I like it very much indeed.
Det Værelse er særdeles smukt möbleret.	This room is remarkably well fur- nished.
Jeg finder at hun har pyntet sit Hus altfor meget.	I think she has decorated her house too much.
Mine Værelser ere bedre möblerede end hendes.	My rooms are better furnished than hers.
Ja, det ere de ganske bestemt.	Yes, that they certainly are.
Har De en god Modehandlerinde?	Have you a good milliner?
Madame Blaue, som bor i den næste Gade, har altid særdeles smukke Klæder at sælge.	Madame Blaue, who lives in the next street, has always remark- ably pretty dresses to sell.
Arbejder Maleren nogenlunde billigt?	Does the painter work tolerably cheaply?
Han arbejder betydeligt billigere end hans Nabo, Snedkeren.	He works for considerably less than his neighbour, the carpenter.
Han bor i Bredgade Nr. 23.	He lives at No. 23, Bredgade.
Hvad hedder Gaden?	What is the name of the street?
Jeg spiser Frokost Klokken ni.	I (eat) breakfast at nine o'clock.
Når spiser man til Middag?	At what time is dinner? (<i>lit</i> : when eats one at midday.)
Hvor er Læseværelset?	Where is the reading room?
Jeg går hen til Posthuset.	I am going to the post-office.
Her er Butikken.	Here is the shop.
Bonden er på Torvet.	The peasant is in the market place.

SEVENTEENTH EXERCISE.

I see very well. He was there likewise. The ship is going (goes) seawards. He sells meat piecewise. The doctor goes yearly to Sweden. My parents are both in years. The singer (*masc.*) comes daily to (into) town. I love my little children dearly. You think quite rightly. I think (believe) that (Danish, *at*) she is on the way. He is seldom away. She comes off and on to the clergyman's, and now and then she is (is she) at my grandfathers. My best hat is spoilt and my cloak is in pieces. They were, without doubt, in one of the rooms of the house. That is a lazy woman ; she goes to bed at seven nearly every evening. She will probably come late to church to-day. She does not at all love her grandmother. That I can well believe (think). The poor lady is aged (in years), and she is probably somewhat cross. The old often love the young more than the young love the old. Now you must (must you) get up, and not lie in bed till ten o'clock. I wish to get up daily at seven. The officer will travel (travels) by sea, but his mother and his younger children, whom he loves so dearly, think of coming (to come) by land.

Translate into English.

Jeg ønsker at rejse bort så snart som jeg får mine Penge fra Professoren. Min ældste Datter foretrækker at blive hjemme i Norge, men ifjor blev hun kun sjælden hos mig. Hendes ældste Søn har i Sinde at rejse til London, hvor han altid morer sig så udmærket godt. Når han er en Gang borte, kommer han ganske bestemt ikke så snart tilbage. Måske ikke, og det er en stor Ulykke for hans Moder, at han ikke nogenlunde kan være tilfreds her i Landet. Har De nylig set vor

Veninde, Fru Horneman ? Jeg ser hende kun sjælden, men nu og da går jeg op hos hende. Kommer hun ikke ofte her ned i Dalen til Dem ? Jo, af og til kommer hun med sin Mand, og uden Tvivl ser jeg hende tidlig i Morgen. Tjænestepigen siger at alle Kopperne ere itu, og at hun ikke er i Stand til at give os Te i Aften. Måske kan hun give os noget at spise til Middag ? Jo vist kan hun det ; her i Huset spiser man hver Dag godt til Middag. Hvor ere alle de dovne Börn ; de ligge da vel ikke endnu i Sengen ? Dovne kan jeg ikke kalde dem ; för Klokken syv havde de alle klædet sig på, og nu spise de allerede Frokost.

EIGHTEENTH LESSON.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS, etc.

Danish adverbs admit, like adjectives, of various modes of comparison :—

I. By dropping the final *t*, and taking *ere* or *re* in the comparative, and *est* or *st* in the superlative, precisely the same as the corresponding adjectives, as for example :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>klogt</i> , cleverly	<i>klogere</i>	<i>klogest</i>
<i>slæmt</i> , badly	<i>slæmmere</i> , worse	<i>slæmmest</i>
<i>morsomt</i> , amusingly	<i>morsommere</i>	<i>morsomst</i>
<i>nydeligt</i> , charmingly	<i>nydeligere</i>	<i>nydeligst</i>
<i>ofte</i> , often	<i>oftere</i>	<i>oftest</i> .

The comparative and superlative are the same, it will be observed, in the adverb and adjective, where the former has been derived from the latter ; as for instance: *klogt* from *klog*, *slæmt* from *slæm*, etc.

II. Some adverbs form their comparative and superlative irregularly, both when they are derived from adjectives, and when they are of independent origin ; as for example :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>ilde</i> , badly	<i>værre</i> , worse	<i>værst</i>
<i>vel</i> , well	<i>bedre</i> , better	<i>bedst</i>
<i>tit</i> (or <i>tidt</i>), frequently	<i>tiere</i>	<i>tiest</i>
<i>gærne</i> , rather, readily	<i>hellere</i>	<i>helst</i> .

III. Some adverbs are defective, and admit of being used only in one or two forms, as for example :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>nede</i> , below	<i>nederst</i> , lowest
.....	<i>för</i> , before, earlier	<i>först</i> , first
<i>oven</i> , above	<i>överst</i> , uppermost
<i>ude</i> , outward	<i>yderst</i> , excessively
<i>inde</i> , inmost	<i>inderst</i> , inmost.

The superlative of an adverb may often be expressed by a superlative adjective in the neuter gender, with a preposition ; as for example :—

<i>i det Mindste</i> ,	at the least ; at all events
<i>på det Bedste</i> ,	for the best ; in the best way
<i>på det Behageligste</i> ,	in the most pleasant manner.

Some adverbs of place indicate motion towards a spot, or repose at a spot, by the absence or the presence of a terminal *e* ; as for example :—

<i>at gå ud</i> , to go out	<i>at være ude</i> , to be out
<i>at gå hjem</i> , to go home	<i>at være hjemme</i> , to be at home
<i>at gå op ad Trappen</i> , to go up the stairs	
<i>at være oppe på Bjerget</i> , to be up on the mountain.	

Thus it will be observed that a condition of rest is expressed by the addition of *e*.

Some adverbs are formed by the addition of an *s* to the adjective, and sometimes to a noun, and are in such cases generally used in combination with a preposition ; as for example :—

<i>tværs, på tværs</i> , across,	from <i>tvær</i> , cross
<i>skrås over for</i> , nearly opposite	} „ <i>skrå</i> , sloping, oblique
<i>på skrå</i> , aslant	
<i>langs med</i> , alongside with	„ <i>lang</i> , long
<i>til Sengs</i> , to bed	„ <i>en Seng</i> , a bed
<i>til Fods</i> , on foot	„ <i>en Fod</i> , a foot
<i>til Steds</i> , on the spot	„ <i>et Sted</i> , a spot
<i>hjærtens</i> , heartily	„ <i>et Hjærte</i> , a heart.
<i>at betale</i> , to pay	<i>en Øre</i> , Dan. coin, a 100th part of a crown
<i>at forlange</i> , to demand	<i>et Kontor</i> , a counting house, office
<i>at standse</i> , to stop	<i>et Tog</i> , a railway train
<i>at behage</i> , to please	<i>et Navn</i> , a name
<i>at leje</i> , to hire	<i>en Båd</i> , a boat
<i>at kalde på</i> , to call	<i>Bådsmand</i> , boatmen
<i>at hedde</i> , to be called, named	<i>en Rorskarl</i> , a rower
<i>at hilse</i> , to greet, salute	<i>en Bro</i> , a bridge
<i>hyggeligt</i> , comfortably	<i>til Leje</i> , for hire
<i>Landsmænd</i> , compatriots	<i>en Kyst</i> , a coast.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Det er altfor slemt at man ikke kan leje en Båd her idag; jeg vilde så gerne sejle langs med Kysten.	It is too bad that one cannot hire a boat here to-day; I should so much like to sail along the coast.
Og jeg vilde hellere gå til Lands.	And I would much rather go by land.
Går De altid til Hest eller til Vogns?	Do you always go on horseback or in a carriage.
Jeg rejser allerhelst på Jernbanen; men om det behager Dem bedst at gå til Søs, kommer jeg med.	I prefer travelling by railway; but if you like best to go by water, I will accompany you.
Er der en Båd her til Leje?	Is there a boat here for hire?
Der nede, langs med Broen, finde vi vist Bådsmandene.	We shall most likely find the boatmen down by the bridge.
Vil De kalde på Bådsmand Hansen; han kommer netop ud af sit Hus.	Will you call the boatman Hansen; he is just coming out of his house.
De forlanger vel ikke mer end fem Kroner?	I suppose you do not ask more than five crowns?
Jo, jeg forlanger i det mindste seks Kroner.	Yes, indeed, I require at the least six crowns.

Undertiden betaler man mig syv Kroner, men tiere får jeg seks Kroner og halvtredsindstyve Öre. Nu, da! bring en sikker Båd, og kom ikke for silde; vi betale Dem, hvad De forlanger.

Her er Jernbanestationen, Kontoret og Væntesalen.

Det er yderst morsomt at se så mange Fremmede; jeg ser kun få af vore egne Landsmænd.

Nu standser Toget! har De Deres Billetter og Penge hos Dem?

Hvad hedder Herren, som hilste Dem?

Han hedder Thomsen; i sit danske Hjem kalde de ham Hans Thomsen, men på Engelsk er hans Navn "John."

Sometimes I am paid seven crowns, but I oftener get six crowns and 50 öre.

Very well! bring us a safe boat, and come in good time. We will give you the money you ask.

Here is the station, the booking office and the waiting room.

It is extremely amusing to see so many foreigners; I see hardly any of our own countrymen.

Now the train is stopping! have you your tickets and money with you?

What is the name of the gentleman who bowed to you?

His name is Thomsen; in his Danish home he is called Hans Thomsen, but in English his Christian name is John.

EIGHTEENTH EXERCISE.

It would have been better, if (Danish, *om*) they had thought more frequently of (upon) their little children. I will readily go there, but I (should more readily) should prefer to go to the doctor's. She comes more frequently (oftener) to my brother, the lawyer's. The table is aslant. The professor is going alongside with (even with) the water. She dresses herself charmingly, but no one can dress themselves worse than her younger sisters. At all events, he loves his eldest sister better than that sister who is at home with her parents. He wishes me to go out this evening, but I would rather remain at home. My husband is out, and my younger son is gone up on the mountain. The old peasant woman is going up the stairs. I would rather have a long than a short bed. Is there no one about (on the spot) on the farm?

All the men are up on the mountains. I feel worse (it goes worse with me) to-day than yesterday. I am oftener ill than well. That is unfortunate, but it would be worse if you had not so many heartily-loved friends. Now my little boys are going home and to bed. Is the master on the spot? No; he is seldom here before eleven o'clock.

Translate into English.

Jeg er så ofte syg, at jeg næsten ikke kan gå op ad Trappen. Kan man ikke få noget morsommere at læse her i Huset? Lægens smukke Kone, Englænderinden, er næsten klogere end sin Mand. Hvorledes befinder Deres Broder sig i den store engelske By? Tak skal De have, det går ham godt der, men han vilde hellere være hjemme hos os end så langt borte blandt Fremmede. Nu, det kan man let forstå; hils ham fra mig og sig ham, at jeg ønsker så tit at se ham igen. Han har det ikke ilde der i Udlandet, og her i Hjemmet kunde det gå værre for ham. Hvorledes går det hjemme? Mange Tak, kære Frue, det går fortræffeligt; det kunde ikke gå bedre. Om Forladelse! Hendes Barn er næsten altid vranten. Hans Hænder ere endnu vådere end hendes. Hvor gerne vilde jeg ikke gå til Fods med Dem op på Bjærget! Min Broder går også gerne med til Fods, men hans Kone körer helst i sin Vogn med sine små Börn. Hvorledes går det Deres Broders Börn? Tak, det går dem på det allerbedste. Ere de tit hos Dem? De komme i det mindste engang hver Uge hos mig; men endnu tiere ere de hos min yngste Søster, som bor der nede skrås över Vandet. Hvor det er morsomt her i Vinduet at se ud på Folk, som morer sig der nede på Torvet. Det er dog hyggeligere her inde i Stuen end der nede på Gaden. Jeg forlanger intet bedre, men jeg ser dog så gerne at Andre ere i Stand til at more sig som de synes bedst.

Examples of Verbs, belonging to Class I., which are conjugated like *at elske*, to love.

INDICATIVE.		PAST PARTICIPLE.		PRESENT INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.		PAST.			
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg, du, han, De	vi, I, de	jeg, du, han, vi, I, de			
agter	agte	agtede	agtet	at agte	<i>to intend, esteem.</i>
erfarer	erfare	erfarede	erfaret	at erfare	<i>to learn, experience.</i>
handler	handle	handlede	handlet	at handle	<i>to act, handle.</i>
henter	hente	hentede	hentet	at hente	<i>to fetch.</i>
lever	leve	levede	levet	at leve	<i>to live.</i>
samler	samle	samlede	samlet	at samle	<i>to collect.</i>
trøster	trøste	trøstede	trøstet	at trøste	<i>to comfort.</i>
vander	vande	vandede	vandet	at vande	<i>to water.</i>
vænter	vænte	væntede	væntet	at vænte	<i>to wait, expect.</i>

Examples of Verbs, belonging to Class II., which are conjugated like *at tænke*, to think.

bruger	bruge	brugte	brugt	at bruge	<i>to use, employ</i>
forlanger	forlange	forlangte	forlangt	at forlange	<i>to require.</i>
føler	føle	følte	følt	at føle	<i>to feel.</i>
fører	føre	førte	ført	at føre	<i>to lead, guide</i>
hører	høre	hørte	hørt	at høre	<i>to hear.</i>
kalder	kalde	kaldte	kaldt	at kalde	<i>to call.</i>
kender	kende	kendte	kendt	at kende	<i>to know.</i>
klæder	klæde	klædte	klædt	at klæde	<i>to dress.</i>
køber	købe	købte	købt	at købe	<i>to buy.</i>
kører	køre	kørte	kørt	at køre	<i>to drive.</i>
låner	låne	lånte	lånt	at låne	<i>to lend.</i>
låner af	låne af	lånte af	lånt af	at låne af	<i>to borrow.</i>
læser	læse	læste	læst	at læse	<i>to read.</i>
løser	løse	løste	løst	at løse	<i>to loosen.</i>
møder	møde	mødte	mødt	at møde	<i>to meet.</i>
rejser	rejse	rejste	rejst	at rejse	<i>to travel.</i>
sender	sende	sendte	sendt	at sende	<i>to send.</i>
spiser	spise	spiste	spist	at spise	<i>to eat.</i>
stræber	stræbe	stræbte	stræbt	at stræbe	<i>to strive.</i>
vender	vende	vendte	vendt	at vende	<i>to turn.</i>
viser	vise	viste	vist	at vise	<i>to show.</i>

Some verbs admit of being conjugated both in accordance with Conjugations I. and II., as for example :—

INDICATIVE.		PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.		PAST.		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>		
jeg, du, han, De	vi, I, de	jeg, du, han, vi, I, de		
taler	tale	taledede or talte	talet or talt	at tale <i>to speak.</i>
praler	prale	praledede or pralte	pralet or pralt	at prale <i>to boast.</i>
nævner	nævne	nævnedede or nævnte	nævnet or nævnt	at nævne <i>to name.</i>

NINETEENTH LESSON.

PREPOSITIONS (= Forholdsord).

Prepositions in Danish admit of being grouped under two heads:—

I. As primary and simple.

ad, to, at
af, of, from
bag, behind
blandt, among (implying surroundings of the same kind)
after, after
for, for, before (space)
fra, from
før, before (time)
gennem, through
hos, at the house of, with
i, inde i, inden i, in
med, with

mellem, between, in the midst (implying different surroundings)
mod, against
om, about
over, over
på, on
samt, together with
siden, beside, since
til, to
trods, in spite of
uden, without
under, under
ved, by, at, near.

II. As compound.

bagefter, after
bagved, behind
foran, before, beyond
formedelst, by means of
iblandt, amongst
igennem, through

imellem, between
imod, against
istedetfor, instead of
omkring, round about
ovenpå, on the top of
udenfor, outside of.

A. The difference between *blandt* and *mellem* will be seen in the following example: *Klinten vokser mellem Stene blandt Hveden*, the corn-cockle grows in the midst of stones among the wheat.

B. Differences in respect to periods of time admit of being indicated by the use of *i*, *på*, and *om*; the first implying the past, the second the future, and the third some recurring interval; as for example: *jeg var der i Tirsdags*; *jeg skal dér igen på Torsdag*, *men jeg er dér ellers altid om Søndagen*, I was there on Tuesday, I shall be there again on Thursday, but I am otherwise always there on Sundays.

Onkel, uncle
Tante, aunt
Fætter, cousin
Kousine, fem. cousin
Neveu, nephew
Niece, niece
Svigerfader, father-in-law
Svigermoder, mother-in-law
Svoger, brother-in-law

Svigerinde, sister-in-law
Stedfader, step-father
Stedmoder, step-mother
Kone, *Hustru*, wife
Mand, *Ægtemand*, husband
Ægtefælle, spouse
Farbroder, *Morbroder*, uncle
Faster, father's sister
Moster, mother's sister.

Spanien, Spain, *spansk*, Spanish,
Italien, Italy, *italiensk*, Italian,

en Spanier, a Spaniard
en Italiener (fem. *Italienerinde*),
 an Italian

Frankrig, France, *fransk*, French,
Østerrige, Austria, *østerrigsk*, Austrian,
Tyrkiet, Turkey, *tyrkisk*, Turkish,

en Franskmand, a Frenchman
en Østerriger, an Austrian
en Tyrk, a Turk.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

*Showing the manner in which various prepositions
are used in Danish.*

Det var af ham jeg købte mit Ur.	It was of him I bought my watch.
Jeg gav Börnene et af hans Malerier til Eksempel.	I gave the children one of his pictures as an example.
Hun vilde jo ikke tale om sig selv, men om sin Steddatter.	She was not intending to speak of herself, but of her step-daughter.
Han er ikke en Ven af mig.	He is not a friend of mine.
Soldaten tillader ikke at mere end tre ad Gangen gå over Broen.	The soldier will not allow more than three at a time to go over the bridge.
Hvad er der bleven af Spanieren?	What has become of the Spaniard?
Hvad fik De til Middag?	What did you have (get) for dinner?
Hvad holder De mest af?	What do you like best?
Jeg holder mest af at spadserere før Frokosten.	I like best to go out walking before breakfast.
Hun holder mest af ham, tror jeg.	She likes him best, I think.
Tag den De synes bedst om.	Take the one you like the best.
Jeg synes godt om Huset.	I am pleased with (like) the house.
Hold op! lad mig være!	Have done! let me be!
Se efter min Hat.	Look for (after) my hat.
Jeg er ikke vred på ham.	I am not angry with him.
Hvad er der i Vejen med ham?	What is the matter (in the way) with him?
For fjorten Dage siden.	A fortnight ago (since).
De har ikke Ret til at gå der.	You have no right to go there.
Jeg har ikke Lyst til at spadserere.	I have no inclination for walking.
Han var vred over at hun ikke skrev til ham.	He was angry because she did not write to him.
Hvorledes kommer De på det?	How did that occur to you?
Hun tvivlede på at få Hjælp.	She was doubtful of getting help.
Han arbejder på at erhverve sig en god Plads.	He is striving to secure himself a good situation.
Jeg forlader mig på Dem.	I depend upon you.
Jeg var overrasket ved at se ham.	I was astonished at seeing him.
Hun har aldrig brudt sig om sin Onkel.	She has never cared for her uncle.

De har godt ved at le.

Hun fölte Barnet ved Hånden.

Hun går med Briller på.

Han gik med en tyk Frakke.

Jeg beder om Forladelse.

Har De set Dem om i Byen?

You may laugh if you will.

She led the child by the hand.

She wears spectacles.

He wore (went with) a thick coat.

I beg pardon.

Have you looked about you in the town.

NINETEENTH EXERCISE.

The Norwegian child gets up too late. My nephews and nieces get up at six in the summer, and at half-past seven in the winter. My Italian cousin and her eldest son read German, French, English, and Dutch. He heard yesterday that his Russian uncle was in Copenhagen on Thursday, the 15th of March. What do you call him in (on) Danish? We call him Carl in (on) Danish, but his parents, brothers and sisters, and relations call him Charles in English. Will you fetch me my Spanish hat and my Russian cloak. Her aunt and uncle expect her and her stepson on Monday. Your brother and sister-in-law have bought my step-father's large carriage and the white horses. I always meet the doctor on Thursdays at our good old clergyman's. My mother-in-law cares nothing at all for her German cousins; she thinks them (that they are) proud, and wishes that they had remained in Germany. My nephew, Mr. Larsen, is a Dane, but his relations are nearly all Dutch, or Spanish, and his young wife is a Russian. I was in London on Wednesday, and I expect to be in France on Friday. My dear wife is not at all well to-day; she has heard that her brother-in-law, the English lawyer, is dead, and now her sister will not be able to come to Denmark to see her.

Translate into English.

Hun forlanger af Svigerfaderen, at han skal købe hende et Hus. Den norske Tolk førte min gamle engelske Ven op på Bjærgene, og lige på samme Tid begyndte det at sne og blæse; begge to tabte deres Hat og Stok; om Aftenen mødte de en Bondemand, som viste dem Vejen, og sildig om Natten körte de hjem igen i en Vogn, som var lånt dem af den gode Gamle. Vil De spise hos mig idag? jeg venter kun nogle få Venner, som agte at rejse imorgen, eller måske ikke før iovermorgen. Hun har mistet sin Mand, og nu forlanger hun, at hendes ældste Søn, som er hos en Købmand i Rusland, skal komme tilbage til Danmark. Den stakkels Kone, hvor hun er ung til at være Enke! hvor jeg vilde ønske at kunne få hende at se! Hvad kalder man den røde Vin, som De købte af Hollænderen i Foråret? den smager meget bedre end den spanske Vin, min Svoger sendte mig fra Madrid. Penge forlanger jeg ikke; jeg ønsker kun at få Ret.

TWENTIETH LESSON.

CONJUNCTIONS (= *Bindeord*).—**INTERJECTIONS** (= *Udråbsord*).

I.—COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, etc.

at, that, to
både...og, both...and
da, as, since (past time)
dels...dels, in part
der næst, in the next place
dersom, in case that, if
fordi, because
fremdeles, moreover, besides
først, first
hvis, if, in case that

ifald, in case
når, when, if (present and fut. time)
nemlig, for instance
om, if, whether, about, for
og, også, and, also
samt, together with
siden, since
som, as
såvel...som, as well...as.

II.—DISJUNCTIVE, COMPOUND CONJUNCTIONS, etc.

<i>allerede</i> , already	<i>ligeså</i> , just as
<i>alligevel</i> , all the same	<i>medens</i> , whilst
<i>derimod</i> , against, on the contrary	<i>men, såmen</i> , but, indeed
<i>efter</i> , after, according	<i>nok så mange</i> , ever so many
<i>efterdi</i> , whereas	<i>nok så snart</i> , ever so soon
<i>eftersom</i> , in accordance with	<i>om ikke</i> , if not
<i>eller, ellers</i> , or, otherwise	<i>skøndt (endskøndt)</i> notwithstanding,
<i>enådog</i> , although	<i>så</i> , so, then
<i>for at</i> , in order that	<i>så godt som</i> , as good as, as well as
<i>følgelig</i> , consequently	<i>uagtet</i> , notwithstanding.
<i>hverken...eller</i> , neither...nor	

A. *At*, to, is used to indicate the infinitive of the verb, as in English.

B. *Om*, if, about, admits of being used as in English in the following manner: *At se sig om*, to look (see oneself) about one. *Han ser sig om efter en Plads*, he is looking about for a place.—*Om* is used in the sense of “if,” in the following manner: *Jeg må se, om han arbejder*, I must see if he is working.

C. *Ligeså...som*, as...as, are used to express a comparative degree, as for example: *Min Broder er ligeså stor som jeg*, my brother is just as tall as I am.

D. *Jo...jo, jo...desto* express a relative proportion, as for example: *Jo længere jo værre*, the longer the worse; *jo større Besværlighed, desto større Fortjeneste*, the greater the difficulty, the greater the merit.

The Danish Interjections are derived from the imperative of verbs (I.), or are merely imitative sounds (II.), as for instance:—

- (I.) *Tak!* thanks! from *at takke*, to thank
Tys! silence! „ *at tysse*, to be silent
Bi! wait! „ *at bte*, to wait
Hør! listen! „ *at høre*, to hear.

(II.) *Knak! Puf! Plump! Hej! Vips! Visvas!*

Surprise is expressed by such ejaculations as: *Hm! Haha! O-nej-da!*

Sorrow „ „ „ *Ak! Ve! Ve!*

Joy „ „ „ *Hej Hej! Hejsa-hopsa! O!*

at forbyde (I.), to forbid
at pibe (I.), to whistle
at beholde (II.), to keep
at indskrive, to book, to write down
at leve (II.), to live
at rose (II.), to praise
(en) Ros, praise

(en) Fødsel, birth
(st) Fødested, place of birth
et Røb, a cry, call
en Klasse, a class
en Port, a gate
et Lokomotiv, an engine.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Siden jeg kom til London har jeg
set Dronningen flere Gange.

Since I came to London I have
seen the Queen a great number
of times.

Er London Deres Fødested ?

Is London your native place ?

Nej, jeg er Dansk ligesåvel som min
Mand; men vi have været så
længe her i Landet, at vi ere
begge To næsten så godt som
Englændere.

No! I am a Dane as well as my
husband; but we have been here
so long, that we are both of us
nearly English ?

Han ønsker at se sig lidt om i
Byen.

He wishes to see a little of the
town.

Han vil snart se at denne By er
ligeså stor og smuk som hans
Fødeby.

He will soon see that this town is
quite as large and handsome as
his native town.

Når rejser De til England ?

When are you going to England ?

Dersom min Mand ønsker det,
rejser jeg med ham efter Jul.

If my husband should wish it, I
shall go with him after Christ-
mas.

Jeg takker Dem for Deres Brev,
samt Bogen.

I am obliged to you both for your
letter and the book.

Idag kommer jeg ikke til Køben-
havn, fordi det sidste Tog er
gået.

I shall not get to Copenhagen to-
day because the last train is gone.

Det Tog, som afgår Kl. 8, går helt
igennem uden at standse.

The train which leaves at 8 o'clock
goes right through without stop-
ping.

Det ringer jo allerede tredje Gang.

They have already rung the third
time.

Vi have jo ingen Billetter.

Why! we have no tickets!

Hvor er Billetkontoret? hvis jeg
bare vidste, om vi ere i Tide.

Where is the booking-office?
I only knew if we were still
time.

Skynd Dem! Lokomotivet piber allerede.	Make haste! the engine is whistling already.
Betjenten lukker Dørene i.	The guard is locking the doors.
De må ikke lukke Døren op.	You must not open the door.
Det er forbudt at røge i første Klasses Vogne.	It is forbidden to smoke in first-class carriages.
Foretrækker De at sidde med Ryggen mod Lokomotivet?	Do you prefer to sit with your back to the engine?
Jeg vil beholde min Plads, for at se ud af Vinduet.	I will keep my place that I may look out of the window.

TWENTIETH EXERCISE.

She comes to me when she wishes to see my daughters. If she comes home soon, then I shall go together with my sister to France. She talked about something else last evening. In case you wish it I will fetch my children to-morrow. He is coming from Holland together with his sisters-in-law. I paid the peasant-boy partly in crowns, and partly in Dutch money. My aunt is looking out for a house in the country. Although my French cousin is so ill that she cannot stand on (upon) her feet, she goes to church all the same every day. His eldest daughter is nearly as tall as my step-son. When is she going (to travel)? In case her mother should be (is) better, she will go (travel) next week. According to what I hear from her doctor she will soon be better. The Italian maid-servant is coming as well as the French man-servant. Whilst the peasant-woman was here, she fetched water to water my garden. Both my wife and I wish it. Be silent my child! thy sister is still in bed, because she is ill.

Translate into English.

Ifald min Fætter rejser til Rusland i År, går jeg med, fordi jeg ønsker så meget at se hvorledes Russerne leve i deres eget Land. Mine Forældre ere ligeså rige som Deres Slægtninge, men alligevel ere de ikke så fornemme. Hör, min Dreng! ifald min Mand kommer hjem förend jeg har været hos Lægen, må Du sige ham, at jeg vänter at kunne köre tilbage med min Svoger, som skal være med Lægen, eller hans Sön, i Sygehuset. Den tyske Tjæner önsker at höre om hans Broder har fået en Plads her i Byen. Det er et meget dygtigt Menneske. Ja! det kan nok være. Er min Broder hjemme? Om De vil være så god at vänte et lille Öjeblik, skal jeg straks hente Deres Herr Broder. Hvis han ikke er hjemme endnu, kommer han vist snart tilbage. Hör engang hvor det blæser ude i Skovene og oppe på Bjærgene inat! Vil De ikke köre med mig imorgen tidlig? Jeg har intet derimod, men medens min Hustru er på Landet, går jeg ikke gärne ind til Byen. Min Svigermoder, samt mine Söstre, rejse i År til Italien med vor Slægtning, Italieneren. Tys! jeg hörte et Råb fra Skoven. Bi lidt! nu kommer Kusken.

TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.

PASSIVE VERBS, etc. (= *Udsagnsord; den lidende Form.*)

The Danish language possesses a characteristic feature in its mode of forming the passive by the simple addition to the active voice of the letter *s*.¹ Thus, for example, the passive of *at elske*, past indicative *elskede*, is *at elskes*, *elskedes*, and of *at tænke*, *tænkte*, *at tænkes*, *tænktes*.

¹ See Part II.

The passive may also be expressed by the help of the auxiliaries *at være, at blive*, to be, to become (remain); as for example: *at være* or *at blive elsket*, to be loved; *jeg var* or *jeg blev elsket*, I was beloved; *at være* or *at blive tænkt*, to be thought; *jeg var* or *jeg blev tænkt*, I was thought.

When the auxiliary *at få*, to get, must be, is used either with the passive or the active, it implies future necessity or an unavoidable contingency, as for example: *jeg får elskes*, I must be loved; *det får tænkes*, it must be thought; *jeg får elske*, I must love; *han får tænke*, he must think.

PASSIVE IMPERSONALS may be formed from active personal verbs, as for example: *det bruges*, it is used, it is customary, from *at bruge*, to use, wear; *det siges*, it is said (corresponding to the French *on dit*), from *at sige*, to say; *der køres*, there drives, or there is being driven, from *at køre*, to drive; *der tales*, *der læses*, *der gøres*, there is being spoken; read; is going; from *at tale*, to speak; *at læse*, to read; *at gå*, to go. *Der synes*, it seems, is derived from the defective deponent *at synes*, to appear, to think; *der tales*, *der læses*, etc., may be best rendered by paraphrases, such as: it is being said, there is a talk of, reading is going on, one reads, etc.

Some *passive impersonals* belong to defective verbs, having generally only a passive form, as for example: *det dages*, it dawns, from *at dages*, defective passive, to become day; *det lykkes*, it succeeds, from *at lykkes*, defect. passive, to be lucky. This verb admits, however, of being used in an active as well as a passive impersonal sense, as for example: *det lykkede ham at løbe bort*, he succeeded (or: it fell out luckily for him) in running away; *det lykkede hende denne Gang*, it proved successful for her (she has succeeded) this time.

By the use of the passive form in Danish a reciprocal action may be expressed, as for example:—

<i>at mødes</i> , to meet one another,	active: <i>at møde</i> , to meet
<i>at slås</i> , to fight together	„ <i>at slå</i> , to strike
<i>at kysse</i> , to kiss one another	„ <i>at kysse</i> , to kiss
<i>at ses</i> , to see one another (to meet)	„ <i>at se</i> , to see
<i>at gifte</i> , to marry each other	„ <i>at gifte</i> , to marry
<i>at mundhugges</i> , to bicker (no active form),	
derived from <i>et Mundhuggeri</i> , a scolding	
<i>at kappes</i> , to vie with (no active form).	

The following paradigms show the manner in which regular verbs belonging to Class I. (as *at elske*, to love), and Class II. (as *at tænke*, to think) are conjugated in the passive voice (= *Lideformen*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I am loved.)

jeg elskes
du elskes
han elskes
vi elskes
I elskes
de elskes.

(I am thought).

jeg tænkes
du tænkes
han tænkes
vi tænkes
I tænkes
de tænkes.

PAST.

(I was loved.)

jeg elskedes
du elskedes
han elskedes
vi elskedes
I elskedes
de elskedes.

(I was thought.)

jeg tænktes
du tænktes
han tænktes
vi tænktes
I tænktes
de tænktes.

There is no true potential or imperative mood in the simple passive form of the verb.

INFINITIVE.

*at elskes (to be loved).**at tænkes (to be thought)*

PARTICIPLE PAST.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

*(beloved)**(thought)*

at blive elsket

at blive elskede.

at blive tænkt

at blive tænkte.

at afgå, to depart*at nå*, to reach*at sidde*, to sit*at veje*, to weigh*en Fart*, a tour, journey*et Sæde*, a seat*en Seddel*, a ticket, label*en Side*, a side*i lige Måde*, in the same way*(et) Hastværk*, haste*gift*, married*ugift*, single.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Det glæder mig at vi træffes idag ; men jeg har så stort Hastværk, at jeg må bort om et Øjeblik.	I am very glad that we have met to-day, but I am in such haste that I must be off at once.
Er der noget usædvanligt på Færde ?	Is there anything unusual going on ?
Paa ingen Måde ; men mine to ugifte Søstre vente på mig hos deres Veninde, Fru Larsen.	Not at all ; but my two unmarried sisters are waiting for me at their friend, Mrs. Larsen.
Farvel ! vi ses dog snart igen.	Good-bye ! I daresay we shall soon meet again.
Jeg kommer til Dem om tre Dage.	I will come to you in three days.
Vil De gå med mig til Jernbane- stationen ?	Will you go with me to the station ?
Det lykkes os vel ikke at nå Stationen, förend Toget går.	We shall scarcely succeed in reach- ing the station before the train starts.
Her gives dog Sedler for Bagagen ?	One can get receipts for the luggage here (I suppose) ?
Lad den först blive vejjet.	Let it first be weighed.
Alle disse Småting tages ikke med ind i Vognen.	All these small things cannot be taken into the carriage.
Der lægges intet her under Sædet.	Nothing must be laid here under the seat.
Det lykkedes mig den sidste Gang jeg rejste at få Plads i Koupéen ; men idag siges det, at der ingen Koupéer er at finde.	The last time I was travelling I was fortunate enough to get a place in the coupée ; but to-day they say that there is no coupée to be found.
Hvor langt rejse vi sammen ?	How far shall we travel together ?
Kun til næste Station på Sidebanen.	Only as far as the next station at the branch line.
Farvel ! jeg ønsker Dem Lykke på Rejsen.	Good-bye ! I wish you a prosperous (pleasant) journey.
I lige Måde !	The same to you !
Konduktör ! vil De lukke Døren op ?	Guard ! will you open the door ?
Hvad hedder denne Station ?	What is the name of this station ?
Den hedder det Hvide Hus.	It is called the White House.

TWENTY-FIRST EXERCISE.

It is said that the French dancer (*fem.*) is going to Russia next year. She is to be married to (with) her German cousin, the professor, who is travelling in France. It is seldom that we meet (see one another). They vie with one another for the honour. He was so lucky as to get a great deal of (many *pl.*) money. There is reading and talking going on every day in that house. I am compelled to think of (on) what is said in the town. It is not customary (the custom) now in the country. I am dearly loved by (of) my brother, but we seldom meet. How she is beloved by her old parents! It seems (to me to be) very cold to-day. Meat is not to be bought this week. It grows light (dawns) early up on the mountains. I think I never could be happy if I were not beloved by (of) my parents and my brothers and sisters. She succeeded in getting the letter to read. The general is not named, but it is said that he will be (*bliver*) sent to Russia in June. I was fetched by (of) the Swedish clergyman. What is he to be called? He is to be called Henry; he is called John in English, and Hans in Danish. One may dine here on Thursday.

Translate into English.

Man siger, at her i Huset holdes ikke længere Restauration. Det er sandt, her holdes ikke Restauration efter September, men om De ønsker det, skal jeg give Dem en Kop Te og lidt Smør, Brød og Ost. Tak skal De have; men jeg synes det vilde være bedre, om jeg gik til den næste Landsby, hvor, som det siges, man altid kan få noget at spise. De må gøre hvad De synes bedst; det kan vel lykkes Dem at møde Bondevognen, som køres af en god gammel Soldat, der ifjor rejste i Rusland med Generalen. Jeg er nødt til at gå på Øjeblikket, men

jeg venter ikke at vi mødes. Kan sådant et Menneske elskes af sine Slægtninge? Der sendtes et langt Brev hver Morgen til Broderen. Vær så god at sige mig hvad der forlanges. Herren forlanger Intet; men han synes at Vognen skulde sendes lidt tidligere, fordi han ønsker at Frøkenen skal hentes fra Stationen. Klokken fem precis. Det kan nok være, men her i Byen siges det at Toget går ikke om Søndagen. Jeg ønsker at vi kunne rejse sammen lige til København.

TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.

ON IRREGULAR VERBS (= Uregelrette Udsagnsord).

The irregularities of the Danish verbs admit of being classed under distinct heads, as will be seen in the following groups, which give the first person of the present indicative, the past of the indicative, the past participle, and the present of the infinitive.

As in regular verbs, the singular of the present indicative ends in *r* in all persons, while the plural has the termination *e* in all its persons, as for example in the present indicative of the verb *at falde*, to fall :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>jeg falder</i> , I fall	<i>vi falde</i> , we fall
<i>du falder</i> , thou fallest	<i>I falde</i> , ye fall
<i>han, hun falder</i> , he, she falls	<i>de falde</i> , they fall
<i>De falder</i> , you fall.	

In the past tense of the indicative, as *faldt*, *græd*, etc., no change is made in the plural.

I. Verbs in which the past of the indicative undergoes no change in its radical vowel, and is of one syllable only :—

INDICATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.	PAST.		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi			
falder	faldt	c.g., falden N.G., faldet pl., faldne	at falde	to fall
græder	græd	grædt	at græde	to cry
hedder	hed	hedt	at hedde	to be named
holder	holdt	holdt	at holde	to hold
kommer	kam	c.g., kommen N.G., kommet pl., komne	at komme	to come
løber	løb	c.g., løben N.G., løbet pl., løbne	at løbe	to run
sover	sov	sovet	at sove	to sleep.

II. Verbs which change the radical vowel in the past indicative tense and the past participle; the alteration being generally from *i* to *e*, as for example:—

INDICATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.	PAST.		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi			
driver	drev	drevet	at drive	to drive on, urge
glider	gled	c.g., gleden N.G., gledet pl., gledne	at glide	to glide, slide
griber	greb	grebet	at gribe	to seize, grip
kniber	kneb	knebet	at knibe	to pinch
skriver	skrev	skrevet	at skrive	to write
stiger	steg	c.g., stegen N.G., steget pl., stegne	at stige	to mount
vrider	vred	vredet	at vride	to wring, twist.

III. Verbs which change the radical vowel in the past tense only, as for example :—

INDICATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.	PAST.		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi			
bider	bed	bidt	at bide	to bite
lider	led	lidt	at lide	to suffer
strider	stred	stridt	at stride	to struggle.

IV. Verbs which not only change the radical vowel, but which take a different vowel in the past tense and the past participle, as for example :—

binder	bandt	bundet	at binde	to bind
drikker	drak	drukket	at drikke	to drink
finder	fandt	fundet	at finde	to find
slipper	slap	c.g., sluppen n.g., sluppet pl., slupne	at slippe	to slip
springer	sprang	c.g., sprungen n.g., sprunget pl., sprungne	at springe	to spring, leap
synger	sang	sunget	at synge	to sing
tvinger	tvang	tvunget	at tvinge	to force
vinder	vandt	vundet	at vinde	to wind, also to win.

Some grammarians have attempted to establish a very great number of groups for the irregular verbs, but the above examples will suffice, for the present, to show the leading characteristics of the changes which such verbs undergo in Danish. For further information the student is directed to the lists of irregular verbs.

at besøge (II.), to visit
at tage, to take
at modtage, to receive
at bevæge (II.), to move
at gå, to go, walk
at spørge, to ask
Tøj, stuff, luggage

en Sag, a cause, thing
en Bevægelse, a movement
en Lærke, a lark
en Nattergal, a nightingale
en Droske, a cab
(en) Damp, steam
en Fuglerede, a bird's nest.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Min Svoger skrev mig igår, at han
kom iforgårs tilbage til Byen;
måske besøger han Dem idag
eller imorgen.

Det vil glæde mig at komme
sammen med ham nok en Gang.
Vi spiste til Middag i Torsdags hos
Grev Brandt, og vi sad til Bords
fra Klokken seks til Klokken ni.

Bondedrengen har fundet en
Fuglerede med flere Lærkæg i.
Det var næsten Midnat förend jeg
tog ud på Landet.

Hvorfor gik De ud af Byen så sildig
på Natten ?

Fordi jeg skulde besøge en Syg.

Han tog Bogen fra mig og gav den
til min Søster.

Jeg modtog to Breve fra min
Kusine.

Min Onkel blev syg på Rejsen.

Da jeg kom til Stationen, var Toget
allerede i Bevægelse.

Idag kom Toget noget for sent.

Jeg tror at de lade Dampen gå ud.
Hvor skal jeg få mit Tøj ?

Spørg denne Mand.

Vil De ikke have en Droske ?

Jeg vil gå; jeg gik igår, og jeg fandt
at Hotellet er ikke langt fra
Stationen.

Bring mig nu Alt ordentlig til mit
Hotel iaften.

My brother-in-law wrote to me yes-
terday, that he had come back to
town the day before; perhaps he
will come to call on you to-day
or to-morrow.

It will give me great pleasure to
meet him once more.

We dined on Thursday at Count
Brandt's, and we sat at table from
6 till 9 o'clock.

The peasant-boy has found a nest
with several larks' eggs in it.

It was almost midnight before I
went out into the country.

Why did you go out of town so late
at night ?

Because I was to visit a patient.

He took the book from me and gave
it to my sister.

I received two letters from my
cousin.

My uncle fell (became) ill on the
journey.

When I came to the station the train
was already in motion (moving).

To-day the train was a little after
time (too late).

I believe they are letting off steam.

Where must I go to get my lug-
gage ?

Ask that man.

Will you have a cab ?

I will walk; I walked yesterday and
I found that the hotel is not far
from the station.

Be sure to bring me everything
quite right to my hotel this
evening.

TWENTY-SECOND EXERCISE.

I wrote five long letters this morning to my children in Holland. Why does the child cry. He has run too fast, and he fell down. Are all my children come from the wood with their little friends? No; they are still running (about) in the woods, where they are singing with loud voices. That is a remarkably bad boy; he punishes his pretty little sister, and twists her hands. Where is that ugly animal? It slipped from my hands, bit me, and sprang up the tree. The next time the animal comes into the garden, you must (must you) bind it better. I forced it yesterday to drink a little water, and after that I seized (gripped) my stick, and drove it into the empty cow-stall. She wrote a long letter yesterday to her brother-in-law. What is his name (he named)? He is named Charles John William Henry. The general found his wife very ill; she has not slept for (in) three nights. The doctor came very late last night to see several patients.

Translate into English.

Bondedrengen kunde hverken holde eller binde den sorte Hest; den slap fra hans Hænder og løb bort. Det er slemt med de Mennesker; de stride med hinanden fra Morgen til Aften. Bondepigen sang så smukt igår, medens hun arbejdede i Markerne. Det onde Menneske kom lige ind i Køkkenet, hvor han så sig om, greb det Første det Bedste, som kom ham i Hænderne, og løb bort. Har De fundet Kurven, hvori jeg lagde mine Æbler og Pærer? Et Æble er faldet ned, men de andre er Barnet løbet bort med. Min stakkels gamle Bedstemoder er gleden i Aften på et Stykke Glas, som er faldet ned fra et højt Vindue, og nu lider hun så meget

i Ryggen. Min Svoger greb Brevet, förend min Svigerinde kunde skrive halvt hvad hun ønskede at sige til sine Söskende i Frankrig. Soldaten er sprungen op i Træet, hvor han fandt en Fuglerede med flere små grønne og hvide Æg. Jeg holder så meget af de små Sangfugle; når det dages tidlig om Sommeren er det så dejligt at höre på deres Stemmer. Vi have så mange Lærker og Nattergale i vor Have.



TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.

ON THE COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Many verbs are formed by the addition of a prefix to a simple verb. The principal prefixes in Danish are : *be, er, for, mis, over, ud, under, ved*, from which such verbs as the following are formed :—

<i>at begribe</i> , to comprehend,	from <i>at gribe</i> , to catch
<i>at erkende</i> , to recognize	„ <i>at kende</i> , to know
<i>at fortjene</i> , to deserve	„ <i>at tjene</i> , to serve
<i>at mishandle</i> , to ill-treat	„ <i>at handle</i> , to act, trade, treat of
<i>at overstå</i> , to overcome	„ <i>at stå</i> , to stand
<i>at udføre</i> , to accomplish, carry out	„ <i>at føre</i> , to carry, lead
<i>at underholde</i> , to maintain	„ <i>at holde</i> , to hold
<i>at vedblive</i> , to persevere	„ <i>at blive</i> , to remain, become.

II. Compound verbs are often formed by the addition of a noun, adjective, preposition, etc., to another verb, as for example :—

<i>at korsfæste</i> , to crucify,	from <i>Kors</i> , a cross, and <i>at fæste</i> , to fasten
<i>at fuldstændiggøre</i> , to complete	„ <i>fuldstændig</i> , perfect, and <i>at gøre</i> , to make
<i>at omtale</i> , to report	„ <i>om</i> , about, and <i>at tale</i> , to speak
<i>at påtage</i> , to assume	} „ <i>på</i> , upon, and <i>at tage</i> , to take
<i>at påtage sig</i> , to take upon oneself	

III. Some compound verbs retain the same meaning after decomposition as before it; thus, for example, we may say:—

<i>at sammenregne</i> , and <i>at regne sammen</i> , to reckon together
<i>at istandsætte</i> „ <i>at sætte istand</i> , to put in order
<i>at ihjelslå</i> „ <i>at slå ihjel</i> , to strike dead, to kill.

IV. Some verbs, as in English, have a different sense in accordance with the position of the preposition associated with them, as for example:—

<i>at blive ude</i> , to remain out	<i>at udeblive</i> , to fail to appear
<i>at drage op</i> , to pull up	<i>at opdrage</i> , to educate
<i>at se over</i> , to look across	<i>at overse</i> , to overlook
<i>at skride over</i> , to step over	<i>at overskride</i> , to overstep
<i>at sætte over</i> , to convey over, across	<i>at oversætte</i> , to translate
<i>at vælde over</i> , to pour over, upset	<i>at overvælde</i> , to overpower.

IV. The prefix *for* (short *o*), and the preposition *for* (long *o*) or *fore*, before, impart widely different meanings to the verbs with which they are associated; as for example:—

<i>at forgå</i> , to perish	<i>at foregå</i> , to precede	
<i>at forholde</i> , to keep	} <i>at foreholde</i> , to remonstrate	[head of.
<i>at forholde sig</i> , to behave		
<i>at forstå</i> , to understand	<i>at forestå</i> , to superintend, to stand at the	

<i>at tilgive</i> , to forgive	<i>en Tilgivelse</i> , a forgiveness	<i>højre</i> , right
<i>at holde for</i> , to wait out-	<i>om Frladelse</i> , pardon me	<i>til højre</i> , on the right
side (as a carriage)	<i>en Tilladelse</i> , a permission	<i>venstre</i> , left
<i>at tillade</i> , to permit	<i>med Tilladelse</i> , allow me	<i>til venstre</i> , on the left

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Vil De tillade mig at tage Plads på denne Stol?	Will you allow me to take this chair?
De fortjener ikke at jeg skulde lade Dem sidde ved Siden af mig; det er så længe siden De var hos os.	You do not deserve that I should let you sit down by me; it is so long since you came to see us!
Tilgiv mig denne Gang.	Forgive me this once!
Hvor bor Deres Tante?	Where is your aunt living?
Hun bor i (bebor) et stort Hus på St. Hans Plads.	She is living in a large house in St. John's Place.

Bliver Englænderen her i Köbenhavn.

Jeg tror at han kun vil opholde sig her nogle få Måneder.

Han holder meget af sine Börnebørn.

Han holdt hende ved Hånden.

Jeg forsikrer Dem, at Barnet er ikke her i Huset.

Det kan man være sikker på.

Giv mig min Söns nye Skjorter.

Om Forladelse! jeg hørte ikke hvad De sagde.

Denne Skjorte tilhører ikke min Søn.

Denne Handske er til den venstre Hånd.

Drosken holder for Døren.

Juristen påstår at han har Ret.

Det gör intet til Sagen.

Hun tilintetgör alle mine Planer for min Datters Velvære.

Hvorledes tilbringer De Tiden?

Jeg oversætter et tysk Værk på Dansk.

Will the Englishman remain in Copenhagen?

I think he will only stay here (for) a few months.

He is very fond of his grandchildren.

He held her by the hand.

I assure you that the child is not in the house.

That one may be sure of.

Give me my son's new shirts.

Pardon me! I did not hear what you said.

This shirt does not belong to my son.

This glove belongs to the left hand.

The cab is standing at the door.

The lawyer insists upon it that he is right.

That is no matter (that does nothing to prove the case).

She frustrates all my plans for my daughter's well-being.

How do you spend your time?

I am translating a German work into Danish.

TWENTY-THIRD EXERCISE.

The English doctor does not educate his younger children as well as the elder ones. That old peasant behaved very badly yesterday. The clergyman takes too much upon himself. The German lawyer wishes to translate a Danish poem into German. My French nephew will complete (*p. t. ind.*) his work on Swedish law this year. That peasant is always so industrious; she deserves to get money. It is said in the town that your sister-in-law ill-uses your pretty little niece. The

Russian soldier is pulling the boat up from the water. I do not at all understand the Dutch singer when she talks Danish. She does not comprehend that there are parents who do not love their children. We do not understand a single Norwegian word. Her father-in-law superintends the work. Be so good as to take us over the lake. My brother does not deserve that from so old a friend. Forgive me if I say that your younger brother behaves very badly.

Translate into English.

Soldaten slog sin Kaptain ihjel oppe på Bjærgene. Min Svigerinde væltede Mælken over Bordet, men nu har hun bragt alting i Orden igen, fordi hun venter sine tyske Venner om et Øjeblik. Jeg begriber ikke, hvorledes hun har kunnet gifte sig med sådan en Laps. Det stakkels Fruentimmer var så ulykkelig hjemme; hendes Söskende mishandlede hende hvert År værre og værre. Vi erkende alle, at han havde Ret i hvad han sagde til den svenske Jurist. Min Neveu, med Konen og Börnene, bliver ude på Landet til September. Soldaterne udeblive ikke denne Gang. Deres Svigermoder ønsker gjerne at fuldstændiggøre Arbejdet förend hun tager til Byen næste Forår. Regner jeg mine Penge sammen, så finder jeg at jeg har tabt hundrede og halvfemsindstyve Kroner på Vejen. Generalen vedbliver at påtage sig alt for meget. Man kan ikke begribe, at han skal kunne få Lov til at mishandle Bönderne her i Landet. Han overskrider vel ikke Landets Lov? Det kan nok være, men dog udförer han alt som det synes ham bedst. Er det ikke alt for slet? Er der en Bådsmand, som kan sætte os over Vandet i Aften?

TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

ON IRREGULAR AND OTHER VERBS.

Some verbs are both etymologically and grammatically irregular; of these the principal are the auxiliaries (= *Hjælpe-ord*), as for example :—

INDICATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.	PAST.		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi			
er	var	været	at være	to be
har	havde	haft	at have	to have
kan	kunde	kunnet	at kunne	to be able, can
må	måtte	måttet	at måtte	to be allowed, may
skal	skulde	skullet	at skulle	to be obliged, shall
vil	vilde	villet	at ville	to be willing, will.

Besides these, the following verbs are similarly irregular :—

bör	burde	burdet	at burde	to be obliged, ought
dör	döde	(er) död	at dö	to die
gör	gjorde	gjort	at göra	to do, make
tör	turde	turdet	at turde	to dare, ought
ved	vidste	vidst	at vide	to know.

Active and transitive verbs may be used reflectively, as for example :—

<i>jeg bader, I bathe</i> <i>vi tillade, we permit</i>	<i>jeg bader mig, I bathe myself</i> <i>vi tillade os, we permit ourselves.</i>
---	--

Some verbs are used only in a reflective sense, as for example :—

at befytte sig, to busy oneself
at forsyne sig, to provide oneself with
at betakke sig, to beg to be excused.

These and similar verbs require that the object referred to shall be preceded by a preposition ; as for example : —

han beftitter sig på så meget, he busies himself with many things
han benytter sig af Leiligheden, he avails himself of the opportunity
han forsyner sig med Bøger, he provides himself with books.

Some transitive and intransitive verbs present, as in English, considerable resemblance to one another in some of their modifications ; thus, for example, we have :—

INDICATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.	PAST.		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi			
lægger	lagde	(har) lagt	at lægge	to lay (trans.)
ligger	lå	ligget	at ligge	to lie (intr.)
sænker	sænkte	(har) sænket	at sænke	to sink (tr.)
synker	sank	sunket	at synke	to sink (intr.)
vækker	vækkede	vækket	at vække	to wake (tr.)
vågner	vågnede	vågnet	at vågne	to wake, be awake.
<i>at lægge Mærke til</i> , to notice		<i>at foretrække</i> , to prefer	<i>en Spisesal</i> , a dining-room	<i>Spisestue</i> , a dining-room
[afraid]		<i>en Frygt</i> , a fear	(en) <i>Torden</i> , thunder	
<i>at være bange for</i> , to be		<i>frygtssom</i> , timid	(et) <i>Vejr</i> , a weather	
<i>at gøre ondt</i> , to hurt		<i>frygtelig</i> , horrible	<i>et Uvejr</i> , a bad weather	
<i>at skænke</i> (II.), to pour out		<i>en Besiddelse</i> , a possession	<i>en Storm</i> , a storm	
<i>at tordne</i> (I.), to thunder		<i>en Ulejlighed</i> , an inconvenience	<i>et Mærke</i> , a mark	
<i>at ledsage</i> (II.), to accompany		<i>en Undskyldning</i> , an excuse	<i>en Time</i> , an hour	
<i>at spise</i> (II.), to eat			(en) <i>Ende</i> , an end	
			(en) <i>Tid</i> , a time.	

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Vilde De gøre Dem den Ulejlighed
at ledsage min lille Pige på
Vejen ? hun er bange for at gå
alene.

Would you take the trouble to ac-
company my little girl ; she is
afraid of going alone.

Det vilde ikke gøre mig nogen
Ulejlighed ; men jeg er bange for
at vi få en stærk Storm inden en
Times Tid.

It would not give me any trouble ;
but I fear we shall have a great
storm within an hour's time.

Jeg har ikke lagt Mærke til Vejret.
 Det gør mig ondt at den Lille må
 blive hjemme, men hun bør ikke
 gå ud i sådant dårligt Vejr.

Hör! det tordner allerede; lad os
 forlade Haven og gå tilbage til
 Huset.

Tör jeg bede Dem gå ind i Spise-
 stuén.

Er De så god at tage Plads ved den
 överste Ende af Bordet.

Herr Johnson, vil De sidde her eller
 ved Siden af min Söster.

Mine Damer, tör jeg bede Dem tage
 Plads.

De burde ikke göre Dem så stor
 Ulejlighed.

Må jeg skænke Dem et Glas
 Rhinskvin?

Her er Buffetten (Skænkebordet);
 jeg beder Dem sørge for Dem
 selv.

Hvad Slags Vin synes De bedst om?
 Jeg foretrækker Portvin.

De Fraværendes Skål!

Det vilde glæde mig, hvis jeg kunde
 ledsage Dem til Dampskibet.

Jeg er bange for Vejret.

Tror De, det bliver Tordenvejr?

Jeg frygter vi få Uvejr.

De burde ikke være så frygtsom.

Jeg ved nok, at man ikke burde
 lægge Mærke til hver Småting.¹

I have not noticed the weather.

I am sorry that the little girl must
 remain at home, but she ought
 not to go out in such bad weather.

Listen! it is thundering already; let
 us leave the garden, and return
 to the house.

May I beg you to go into the
 dining-room.

Will you be so good as to take a
 seat at the upper end of the
 table.

Mr. Johnson, will you sit here or
 by my sister?

Ladies, may I beg you to take your
 seats (to sit down).

You should not give yourself so
 much trouble.

May I pour you out a glass of
 Rhenish wine?

Here is the sideboard; I beg you
 will help yourself.

What kind of wine do you like best?

I prefer Port.

A health to the absent!

I should be glad if I could accom-
 pany you to the steamer.

I am afraid of the weather.

Do you think we shall have thun-
 der?

I am afraid we shall have a storm.

You ought (should) not to be so
 timid.

I know very well one ought not to
 pay attention to every trifle
 (little thing).

¹ Småting is used elliptically for a little thing.

TWENTY-FOURTH EXERCISE.

Your cloak is lying on the table ; I do not know who laid it there. Did the clergyman die in 1857, or in 1859 ? Did you not know that the good old man died only last year ? No, that I did not know. You ought not to do that. Here is a bull in the field ; I dare not fetch the peasant, who is coming through the wood ; the animal may perhaps do me some mischief. You must not be so timid, the bull is not in the field. The poor little girl had sunk before her father could cross the water. My aunt is ill, and lying in bed ; I think she is sleeping, and I dare not wake her. He laid his sister's letter on the table, but he did not know if he should (ought to) let it lie there, because she was not at home. My eldest son bathes in the sea every morning at seven o'clock, about an hour after my English man-servant has roused him. It seems to me very early to get up at six o'clock. You ought not to lie in bed till ten. The king died last night, but the people do not yet know that he is dead. I woke the coachman at six o'clock, but he is still lying in bed.

Translate into English.

Jeg lagde ikke Mærke til Manden, men jeg synes han må være Soldat. Han burde bestemt ikke sætte sig i Besiddelse af Skibet ? Det gjorde han heller ikke, men man siger, at Skibet skulde gives ham af hans Fader. Han beflitter sig på at få en Plads under Generalen, men han tør ikke lade sin Broder vide, at han ønsker noget sådant, fordi Broderen vil at han skal blive her i Landet hos sin egen Familie. Hesten bed mig igår i Hånden, og den smerter mig næsten så meget idag som den gjorde iafte. Ved De, om man tør gå igennem denne Skov ? Nej, det ved jeg ikke. Juristen vidste ikke hvad han skulde sige til Bondepigen, som græd så hæftigt fordi den gamle Bedstefader var død. Det gjorde mig så ondt at måtte sige hende, at Skibet var sunket. Hvor sank det ? Det ved jeg ikke.

LIST OF TITLES, TRADESMEN'S CALLINGS, ETC., ETC.

<i>en Konge</i> , a king	<i>en Dronning</i> , a queen	<i>kongelig</i> , royal
<i>en Prins</i> , a prince	<i>en Prinsesse</i> , a princess	<i>prinselig</i> , princely
<i>en Hertug</i> , a duke	<i>en Hertuginde</i> , a duchess	<i>et Hertugdømme</i> , a duchy
<i>en Greve</i> , a count	<i>en Grevinde</i> , a countess	<i>et Grevskab</i> , a county, count's dignity
<i>en Baron</i> , a baron	<i>en Baronesse</i> , a baroness	<i>et Baroni</i> , a barony
<i>en Admiral</i> , an admiral	<i>en Admiralinde</i> , wife of an admiral	<i>et Admiralitet</i> , an admiralty
<i>en Oberst</i> , a colonel	<i>en Lieutenant</i> , a lieutenant	<i>en Hær</i> , an army
<i>en Major</i> , a major	<i>en Søofficer</i> , a naval officer	<i>en Flåde</i> , a fleet
<i>en Kaptajn</i> , a captain	<i>en Dampfregat</i> , a steam frigate	<i>et Tårn</i> , a tower
<i>en Bager</i> , a baker	<i>et Bagværk</i> , pastry, baked cakes	
<i>en Brygger</i> , a brewer	<i>et Bryggeri</i> , a brewery	
<i>en Bygmester</i> , a builder	<i>en Bygning</i> , a building	
<i>en Embedsmand</i> , a man in office	<i>et Embede</i> , an office	
<i>en Fisker</i> , a fisherman	<i>et Fiskeri</i> , a fishery	
<i>en Hattemager</i> , a hatter	<i>en Hatteskylge</i> , a hat-brim	
<i>en Hjulmager</i> , a wheelwright	<i>et Hjul</i> , a wheel	
<i>en Kræmmer</i> , a retail trader	<i>et Krambod</i> , a retail shop	
<i>en Kulhandler</i> , a coal merchant	<i>en Kulmine</i> , a coal mine	
<i>en Lods</i> , a pilot	<i>en Lodsbad</i> , a pilot boat	
<i>en Låsmed</i> , <i>Kleinsmed</i> , a lock-smith	<i>en Låsfjeder</i> , a spring of a lock	
<i>en Møller</i> , a miller	<i>en Mølle</i> , a mill	
<i>en Papirhandler</i> , a stationer	<i>Papirpenge</i> , pl., paper-money	
<i>en Skibskaptajn</i> , a captain, skipper	<i>en Skibsfart</i> , a ship's way, navigation	
<i>en Skomager</i> , a shoemaker	<i>en Skobørste</i> , a shoebrush	
<i>en Skolelærer</i> , a schoolmaster	<i>en Skolekammerat</i> , a school fellow	
<i>en Skrædder</i> , a tailor	<i>en Skræddersvend</i> , a journeyman tailor	
<i>en Slagter</i> , a butcher	<i>et Slagtertorv</i> , a meat market	
<i>en Smed</i> , a smith	<i>en Smedje</i> , a smithy	
<i>en Sømmand</i> , a seaman	<i>en Indsø</i> , a lake	
<i>en Tigger</i> , a beggar	<i>en Tigtermunk</i> , a mendicant friar	
<i>en Torvebonde</i> , a peasant who brings farm produce to market	<i>en Torvebod</i> , a market-booth	
<i>en Tømmermand</i> , a carpenter	<i>en Tømmerflåde</i> , a timber-raft	
<i>en Urtekræmmer</i> , a grocer	<i>en Urtehave</i> , a vegetable garden	
<i>en Vinhandler</i> , a wine merchant	<i>en Vingård</i> , a vineyard	
<i>en Vognmand</i> , a coachmaster	<i>et Vognhjul</i> , a carriage-wheel	
<i>en Vægter</i> , a watchman	<i>en Vægterpibe</i> , a watchman's rattle	
<i>en Væver</i> , a weaver	<i>en Vævning</i> , a weaving.	

TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.

IRREGULAR VERBS (= Uregelrette Udsagnsord.)

In the following list of irregular verbs, we have given the first person singular of the present of the indicative; the past of the indicative, which is the same for all persons; the past participle, and the present of the infinitive. All parts of the verbs which are not given, follow the regular modes of conjugation.

INDICATIVE.		PAST PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.			
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi	har, er		
beder	bad	bedt	at bede	to beg, pray.
binder	bandt	pl., bedte	at binde	to bind.
brister	brast	bundet	at briste	to burst.
		brustet or bristet		
drager	drog	draget	at drage	to drag.
drager bort	drog bort	draget bort	at drage bort	to drag, go away.
drikker	drak	drukket	at drikke	to drink.
erfarer	erfarede or erfor	erfaret	at erfare	to experience, learn.
farer	for	faret	at fare	to travel, go.
fortryder	fortrød	fortrødt	at fortryde	to repent, regret.
går	gik	gået	at gå	to go.
giver	gav	c.o., given n.o., givet pl., givne	at give	to give.
gælder	gjalt	gældt	at gælde	to be worth.
hænger	hang, intr. hængte, tr.	hængt	at hænge	to hang.
hjælper	hjalp	hjulpen	at hjælpe	to help.
jager	jog or jagede	jaget	at jage	to hunt.

INDICATIVE.		PAST PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.			
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi	har, er		
kryber	krøb	c.g., kröben n.g., kröbet pl., kröbne	at krybe	to creep.
ler	lo	lét	at le	to laugh.
lyder	löd	lydt	at lyde	to sound.
lyver	løj	löjet	at lyve	to tell a lie.
nyder	nöd	nydt	at nyde	to enjoy.
rider	red	redet	at ride	to ride.
river	rev	c.g., reven n.g., revet pl., revne	at rive	to tear.
ryger	rög	röget	at ryge	to smoke.
sker (det) (impers.)	skete	sket	at ske	to happen.
skyder	sköd	skudt	at skyde	to shoot.
skærer or skær	skar	skåren skåret	at skære	to cut.
står	stod	stået	at stå	to stand.
stjæler	stjal	stjålet	at stjæle	to steal.
stryger	strög	ströget	at stryge	to rub clothes iron.
synger	sang	sunget	at synge	to sing.
tager	tog	taget	at tage	to take.
tier	tav	tiet	at tie	to be silent.
træffer	traf	truffet	at træffe	to hit, meet.
trækker	trak	trukket	at trække	to draw, drag.
foretrækker	foretrak	foretrukket	at foretrække	to prefer.
viger	veg	c.g., vegen n.g., veget pl., vegne	at vige	to give up, make way.
æder	åd	ædt	at æde	[male]. to eat (as ani-

det gælder ikke, it is not worth, it does not refer to, affect
det ærgrer mig, it annoys me
det går ikke an, that will not do
at have lyst til, to like, take pleasure in
at hugge ned, to cut down
at spænde, to draw out
at spænde Hanen, to cock, pull a trigger

at spænde Heste, to harness horses
at pleje, to be accustomed
at fange, to catch
at fornøje, to please
(en) Fornøjelse, pleasure
at tåle, to endure
tålmodig, patient
en Tålmodighed, patience
at formode, to suppose
formodentlig, probably

heldig, lucky
snu, cunning
et Fjæld (Norw.), a fell, mountain-side
et Bjærg, a mountain
en Mose (Dan.) } a moor, moss
en Myr (Norw.) }
Myrebær, moor-berries
en Elv (Norw.), a river
et Slags, sort, kind

en Flok, a flock
en Ren
et Rensdyr } a reindeer
en Buk, a buck
(en) Jagt, hunt, hunting
(et) Brænde, firewood
en Riffel, a rifle
en Bøsse, a gun
en Birk, a birch-tree
en Kæde, a chain

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Jeg har Lyst til at gå på Jagt.

I should like (have a mind) to go out hunting.

Hvad Slags Jagt er her ?

What kind of animals does one find here for hunting ?

Når man er heldig kan man finde Rensdyr.

If one is fortunate, one may meet with reindeer.

Jeg har aldrig endnu skudt en Rén. Engang ifjor traf jeg en Flok Rener; men förend jeg kunde spænde Hanen fór de alle over Mosen.

I have never yet shot a reindeer. I fell in with a flock of reindeer once last year; but before I could draw the trigger they had all gone off over the moor.

Man må krybe på alle fire, når man vil træffe en Rénbuk.

One must creep upon all fours, if one wants to hit a buck.

Ja, jeg ved at Bukkene ere udmærket snu Dyr.

Yes, I know that the bucks are extremely cunning animals.

Holder De meget af Jagt ?

Are you very partial to hunting.

Jeg foretrækker at fiske.

I prefer fishing.

Det gör min Broder også; han kan stå den hele Dag ganske tålmodig ved Elven, uden at fange en eneste Fisk.

It is the same with my brother; he will stand quite patiently all day long by the side of the stream, without catching a single fish.

Det går ikke an at gå på Jagt når man er halv syg, og ikke i Stand til at nyde det frie Liv på Fjældene.

It does not do to go out on a hunting expedition when one is half ill, and not able to enjoy the free life on the Fjelds.

Hvor er Englænderen, som plejer at fiske i Elven ?

Where is the Englishman, who fishes in the stream.

Han er oppe på Bjærgene idag.
Vi spise idag hos Præsten.

He is up on the mountains to-day.
We are going to dine to-day at the
clergyman's.

Kan De sige mig hvad Rénerne
æde?

Can you tell me what the reindeer
eat?

De æde Mos på Mosen (*Dan.*),
Myren (*Norw.*).

They eat moss on the moors.

TWENTY-FIFTH EXERCISE.

This affair does not affect his life but his honour. The admiral met the young prince on board his large ship. Is the admiral's ship a steam vessel? Yes, it is a steam frigate which belongs to the Danish fleet. It would please me very much if my son could go into the navy (become a naval officer). Where is the English pilot? he is in the pilot boat with the Swedish lieutenant and the captain of the Norwegian frigate. The admiral's wife has ascertained that the carpenter, the smith, and the ship's baker, with three of the sailors, have never drunk any thing but water or tea or coffee, since they were all so ill in the Russian hospital. The schoolmaster took the book in his hand, and sang charmingly. The brewer, Hansen, and the builder, Evaldsen, with his wife the miller's daughter were standing just outside the large window of the dining room, and they all were silent whilst the good old schoolmaster was singing. Whom did you see at the market? I saw the butcher, and the greengrocer, Thomsen, who has a large vegetable garden in the neighbourhood of the royal woods. I know the woods; the King and Duke William, with Count Holk, Baron Falsen, Colonel Brand, and my brother-in-law, Major Collin, hunted there the day before yesterday. The duke shot a stag, and the king begged him to take the animal home with him in order that the duchess and Princess Mary might see it.

Translate into English.

Jeg kan ikke ride den sorte Hest, fordi min kære Moder har i Sinde at köre til Indsöen idag. Han stod i Dören og rög, da jeg kom ridende forbi Huset. Jeg traf ham første Gang på Jagt, og det fortryder mig, at jeg lod Lejligheden slippe til at spørge ham, hvor hans Svigerinde var gået hen. Hvis Tyven siger, at han ikke stjal min Hund og min Kalv, lyver han. Jeg gav Tiggeren Lov til at forsyne sig med Brände i min Birkeskov; men ikke at hugge store Træer ned og drage dem bort. Hun har nydt Lykken at se alle sine Börn i Sommer. Det gælder ikke om at give de Fattige Penge, men om at gøre sine Medmennesker godt. Jeg fortryder aldrig, at jeg hjalp den stakkels syge Skomager. Jeg traf Tiggeren på Vejen til Kirken; han stjal mit Ur og krøb bort, medens jeg talte med min Ven, Vinhandler Paulsen. Min Tjæner, Tyskeren, løb efter ham, men til ingen Nytte: mit Ur var stjålet; og nu har Tiggeren formodentlig den Fornøjelse at kunne sige hvor mange Klokken er. Det ærgrer mig, at jeg ikke bandt Kæden fastere, fordi Hunden løb bort, medens jeg var ude på Söen i Båden. Jeg viger ikke af Stedet, indtil De giver mig Pengene igen, som De tog igår fra min Søster. Han har skudt to Renbukke på Fjældene, den ene beholder han selv, men den anden har han i Sinde at sende med et Par små Fugle til sin Svoger, Embedsmanden, som bor i Dalen ved Elven. Hvorlænge har De i Sinde at blive ude på Fjældene? Jeg vilde gerne blive der ude endnu et Par Uger, men bliver Vejret slemt, tager jeg ind til Byen så snart som mulig. Plejer De at tage på Jagt hvert Ar? Det gör jeg altid, ifald jeg ikke går på en eller anden lang Rejse i Udlandet.

TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

ON THE PLURAL OF NOUNS (=Navneordenes Flertal).

Nouns in Danish may be classed under three heads :—

I. Those which form the plural by the addition of *e* to the singular.

II. Those which form the plural by the addition of *er* to the singular.

III. Those which remain unchanged, and are the same in the plural as in the singular.

These different modes of termination do not admit of being brought under any definite rule, and must, therefore, be mastered by memory. Most of the words contained in the first class were originally masculine, but many, as will be seen below, now belong to the neuter gender. The asterisk indicates that the final consonant is doubled, as for example: *en Flok*, a flock; *Flokken*, the flock.

I. Nouns which take an *e* in the plural from usage, rather than in accordance with any definite rule:—

en Arm (pl. *Arme*), an arm
en Båd, a boat
et Bad, a bath
et Bed, a flower-bed
en Birk, a birch
et Bjærg, a mountain
en Björn, a bear
et Blad, a leaf
en Bold, a round ball
en Bolt, a bolt
*en Bom,** a bar
et Bord, a table
en Borg, a castle
en Brand, a fire, brand
et Brev, a letter
en Brud, a bride
*en Brød,** a sting
en Brønd, a well

*en Buk,** a buck
en Busk, a bush
*en Bæk,** a brook
en Bænk, a bench
en Bøg, a beech
en Bør, a barrow
en Dag, a day
en Dal, a dale
*en Dam,** a dam
en Damp, a vapour, steam
en Dans, a dance
en Del, a quantity, part, deal
et Dig, a poem
en Disk, a counter, desk
en Dolk, a dagger
*en Dom,** a judgment
*en Dram,** a dram
en Dreng, a boy

*en Drik,** a drink
*en Dröm,** a dream
en Dværg, a dwarf
en Dør, a door
en Eg (long e), an oak
*en Eg ** (short e), an edge of
 a blade, selvage
en Egn, a district, spot
en Elv (Norw.), a river
en Eng, a narrow valley
et Fad, a dish
en Favn, a fathom
en Fil, a file
en Fjord, a frith, Fjord
en Flig, a flap, lappet
*en Flok,** a flock
en Fold,¹ a fold, pen
en Fork,² a pitch-fork
en Fugl, a bird
en Gang, a turn, walk
en Gård, a farm-yard, court
en Gavl, a gable
en Grav, a grave, pit
en Gren, a branch, twig
en Gris, a pig
en Grund, a ground, bottom of
 sea
et Gulv, a floor
en Hals, a neck
en Hank, a handle
et Hav, an ocean, sea
en Havn, a haven
en Heks, a witch
en Helt, a hero
en Hest, a horse
en Hjelme, a helmet
en Hjord, a hearth
en Hjort, a stag
en Hob, a heap, crowd
en Holm, a small island
en Hov, a hoof
en Hund, a dog
en Hvalp, a puppy
en Hæl, a heel
en Hær, an army

en Høj, a height
en Kalv, a calf
*en Kam,** a comb
en Karl, a fellow
*en Kat,** a cat
en Klud, a clout, rag
en Kniv, a knife
*en Kok,** a cook
en Kost, a broom
en Krans, a wreath
en Kreds, a circle
en Krig, a war
en Krog, a corner
*en Krop,** a trunk of body
en Kurv, a basket
en Kusk, a coachman
et Land, a land
en Lås, a lock (of door)
en Leg, a game (of play)
*en Lem,** a trap-door
en Lov, a law, permission
en Lund, a grove
en Løgn, a lie
en Mund, a mouth
en Munk, a monk
*en Nar,** a fool
en Nattergal, a nightingale
et Navn, a name
en Negl, a nail (of finger)
en Orm, a worm
en Ost, a cheese
en Ovn, an oven, stove
*en Pen,** a pen
en Pisk, a whip
en Plov, a plough
en Port, a gate
en Pult, a desk
en Pung, a purse
en Pæl, a pile
en Pøs, a bucket
en Rand, an edge
en Ravn, a raven
*en Rem,** a strap
en Ring, a ring
*en Ryg,** a back

¹ Fold takes *er* in pl., when meaning "plait."

² "Table-fork" is rendered in Danish by the word *Gaffel*, pl. *Gaffer*, which also signifies a gaff-sail.

en Kæv, a fox
en Saks, scissors
en Sal, a drawing-room, hall
(et) Salt, a salt
en Sang, a song
en Seng, a bed
en Sjel, a soul
en Skat,* a treasure
et Skib, a ship
en Skik,* a custom
en Skovl, a shovel
et Skrin, a cupboard
en Skurk, a rogue, rascal
et Slot,* a palace
en Smed, a smith
en Snegl, a snail
en Snor, a string
et Sogn, a see, parish
en Spand, a bucket
et Spejl, a mirror
en Stak,* a stack
en Stald, a stall
en Stav, a staff
en Steg, a roast joint
en Sten, a stone
en Stil, an exercise
en Stilk, a stalk
en Stok,* a stick
en Stol, a chair
en Stork, a stork

en Storm, a storm
en Straf,* a punishment
en Strand, a strand
en Streng, a string (of instr.)
en Ström,* a stream
en Sump, a swamp
en Svamp, a sponge
en Svend, a boy, workman
et Sværd, a sword
en Sværm, a swarm
en Sæk,* a sack
en Søm,* a seam
et Tag, a roof
et Tårn, a tower
et Telt, a tent
en Tolck, an interpreter
en Top,* a top
en Torn, a thorn
et Torv, a market
en Tråd, a thread
en Trolde, a goblin
en Tyv, a thief
en Ulv, a wolf
et Ur, a watch
en Vej, a way
en Vest, a waistcoat
en Vin, a wine
en Vold, a rampart
en Væg,* a wall
*en Ör*n, an eagle.

The following words undergo a vowel-change in the plural
 viz. :—

en Broder, a brother, pl. *Brødre*
en Datter, a daughter, pl. *Døttre* (*en Dotter*, in early Danish)
en Fader, a father, pl. *Fædre*
en Moder, a mother, pl. *Mødre*.

at låne, to lend, borrow
at tænde, to set light to
at slukke Ilden, to put out the fire
en Rype, a ptarmigan, red grouse
en Edderfugl, an eider-duck
en Agerhøne, a partridge
en Dragt, a dress, dressing, load
en Dragt Prygl, a sound thrashing

et Lån, a loan
et Fyr, a light
en Ild, a fire
(et) Svovl, sulphur
en Stikke
en Svovlstikke } a match
(en) Tobak, tobacco
en Tobakspung, a tobacco-pouch

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Kan De låne mig Deres Tobakspung?	Can you lend me your tobacco-pouch?
Jeg lod den falde ud af Båden.	I let it fall from the boat.
Lad mig tænde min Cigar.	Let me light my cigar.
Har Dé set min Pibe?	Have you seen my pipe?
Det er forbudt at ryge her i Teltene.	Smoking is forbidden in the tents.
Kan jeg ikke tænde min Pibe i Køkkenet?	Can I not light my pipe in the kitchen?
Der er ikke Ild i Køkkenovnen.	There is no fire in the kitchen-stove.
Her har De Svovlstikker.	Here are matches.
Tak! Mange Tak!	Many thanks!
Vil De prøve en af mine Cigarer?	Will you try one of my cigars?
Det stormer på Bjærgene, og jeg tror næppe at vi komme over Sumpene og Strømmene.	There is a storm on the mountains, and I hardly think we can get over the swamps and streams.
Så få vi vel sætte over Vandet i Fiskerbåden.	Then we shall have to cross the water in the fishing boat.
Hvor mange Favne dyb er Søen?	How many fathoms deep is the lake?
Den er omtrent femten Favne dyb.	It is about fifteen fathoms deep.
Jeg vilde gerne skyde nogle Vandfugle på Vejen; eller et Par Ryper eller Agerhøns.	I should like to shoot some water-fowls on the way; or a brace of grouse or partridges.
Iaftes så jeg en Flok Fjældryper nær ved Brønden; men der var ingen Vandfugl at se.	Last night I saw a flock of (mountain) ptarmigans near the well; but there was no water-fowl to be seen.

TWENTY-SIXTH EXERCISE.

The miller's-boy crossed the fjord in a boat. The water from the well near the castle is not wholesome to drink. The floors of the rooms are as smooth as a mirror. The doors of the house are just under the

gables. My brother's cook has brought the bucket and the steam-kettle. Shall we have a dance at the palace this evening? No, there will be no dance at Princess Wilhelmina's, because the prince is hunting bears in Norway. The coachman is sitting on the bench under the large beeches. Your purse is lying on my daughter's desk. I have lost two letters, a great deal of string, three pens and a knife. The peasant-woman is standing in the stable with the little calves. Where is the white calf? It is in the corner of the stable. Will you be so good as to lend me two baskets, a sack, and some brooms? You are welcome to take the sack and the brooms, but the baskets are not mine. The locks of the old oak-cupboard are broken. You must send for the smith. There is not a smith in this valley; but you may, perhaps, find one at the farm on the river. I saw a large flock of birds on the edge of the brook. There are snails on the leaves, and on all the twigs and stalks. The peasant took a whip and gave his plough-boys a sound whipping.

Translate into English.

Soldaternes Sværde hænge på Husvæggene. Min norske Tolk siger at der er Ulve og Ræve nær ved Fjorden, og at mange Ravne sidde på Taget af hans Hus i Dalen. Er der Ege i denne Egn? Ja, der er Ege, Birke, Bøge og Hyldebuske på Höjene på Söholmen. Iaften og igår hørte jeg en Nattergal i Skovene. Min Sön så tre Storke og nogle små grå Fugle på Grenene af den store Bøg i den gamle Slotsgård. Deres Grave ere ikke langt fra Havet. Manden havde tre Dolke, et Sværd og et Par Örne i sin Vogn. Disse Strømme rive uhyre store Stene med sig. Alle Lande have deres Skikke. Disse Karle have ikke Lov til at piske Hundene.

TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

II. Nouns which make their plural in *er* from usage rather than in accordance with any definite rule :—

en Änd, a spirit
en Akt, an act
et Amt, an office
en Art, a kind
*et Bal,** a ball (dance)
en Bank, a bank
en Bisp, a bishop
en Blomst, a flower, blossom
en Bod, a booth
en Bord, a border
*en Brig,** a brig
en Brink, a brink
et Bryst, a breast
en Brök, a fraction
en Bugt, a bay
en Byld, a tumour
en Bylt, a bundle
*en Bön,** a prayer
en Dragt, a dress
en Dunst, a vapour, mist
en Dyd, a virtue
en Flod, a river
en Fragt, a freight
en Frugt, a fruit
en Ged, a goat
en Gäst, a guest
en Glöd, a glow
en Gnist, a spark
et Gods, an estate
en Grad, a degree
en Gröft, a ditch
en Gud, a god
*et Hof,** a royal court
en Hud, a skin
en Jagt, a hunt
(en) Jord, an earth
en Kant, an edge, margin
en Kind, a cheek
*en Klap,** a clap, flap

en Klint, a cliff
en Klods, a stump
en Klöft, a chasm
*en Knap,** a button
*en Knop,** a knob, bud
*en Kop,** a cup
en Kyst, a coast
*en Lap,** a rag
*et Lem,** a limb
*et Lod,** the lead, an ounce¹
en Lods, a pilote
et Loft, a loft, ceiling
en Lygte, a lamp, lamp-post
en Lyst, a desire, pleasure
en Last, a cargo, load
en Magt, a power
en Mark, a field
en Mast, a mast
en Mynt, a coin
*en Nöd,** a nut
et Pant, a pledge
en Park, a park
en Pjalt, a rag, tatter
en Plan, a plain, plan
*en Plet,** a stain, spot
en Pligt, a duty
en Post, a post
*en Prik,** a dot
en Prins, a prince
en Præst, a priest, clergyman
en Pynt, a point (of land)
en Råd, a member of a council
en Rad, a row, series
en Rén, a reindeer
en Rest, a remnant, rest
*en Ret,** court of justice
en Rift, a rift, crevice
en Röst, a voice
en Saft, a juice

* The asterisk indicates that the final consonant is doubled when the definite article is affixed to it; as for example : *et Bal*, *Ballet*.

¹ *Et Lod*, meaning an ounce, is unaltered in the plural.

en Sag, a cause, matter, case
en Sans, a sense
en Skål, a health, toast
et Skaft, a shaft
en Skal,* a shell
en Skank, a shank
en Skat,* a tax, rate
en Skælm, a rogue
en Skjorte, a shirt
en Slægt, species, race
en Sorg, a grief, mourning
en Spids, a point
en Stat, a state, realm
et Sted, a place

en Streg, a trick, stroke, streak
en Stump, a stump
en Sum,* a sum
en Synd, a sin
en Søn,* a son
en Tak,* an antler
en Tid, a time
en Toft, an enclosed field
en Tut,* a cornet
en Vagt, a watchman
en Vægt, a weight
et Værk, a work
en Vært, a landlord
en Æsp, an aspen.

at undersøge, to examine
at underrette, to inform
(en) Underretning, information
at forskaffe, to procure
at råde, to advise
at komme i Kost, to board with
lav, low
skøn, beautiful

en Told, a tax
en Toldbod, a custom-house
en Værdi, a value, price
en Kost, a food, board
et Besvær, a trouble
en Lighed, a likeness
en Lethed, a facility
fornöden, sufficient.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Kan De give mig lidt Underretning om en Rejse til Norge?

Can you give me any information in regard to going to Norway?

Jeg råder Dem til at gå med Dampskibet fra Hull direkte til Kristiania.

I recommend you to go in the steamer direct from Hull to Christiania.

Jeg er istand til at give Dem fornøden Underretning om Jernbanerne og Landevejene.

I am able to give you all requisite information concerning the railways and the highroads.

De vil komme til at sejle opad Kristiania Fjorden, og De vil få at se mange skønne Træer på Markerne, og dybe Kløfter i Bjærgene.

You will sail up the Christiania Fjord, and you will see many fine trees in the fields, and deep chasms in the clefts of the mountains.

Blive Kuffertterne undersøgte af Toldbetjentene?

Will the trunks be examined by the custom-house officials?

Det ville de rigtignok; men det vil ikke forårsage Dem noget Besvær.

That they undoubtedly will; but that will not occasion you any trouble.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Råder De mig til at gå i Kost hos
Præsten, som taler Engelsk? | Do you advise me to board with
the clergyman, who speaks
English? |
| Ja; jeg finder at hans Selskab vil
være af stor Værdi for Dem.
Hans Familje taler Sproget med
megen Lethed. | Yes; I think his society would
prove of great value to you. His
family speak the language with
great facility. |
| Mange Tak; nu er det Tid at hente
mine Penge og forskafe mig et
Kreditbrev. | Many thanks! now it is time for
me to fetch my money, and pro-
cure a letter of credit. |

TWENTY-SEVENTH EXERCISE.

The bishops of the land had more power in the old times than they have in our times. Country-clergymen have many duties to perform. The taxes of the State are not large, and the prince has no great estates. Do you see the buds and the blossoms in the flower-beds? The cargoes and freights of the brigs. The rogues had large bundles of rags on their backs. Those landlords give bad weight. The juices of the fruits are sweet. The shafts and shanks of the carriages are English. The coasts and fields, and nearly all places in Denmark are low. The glow and sparks went right up to the ceiling. My senses left me. One might hear the voices of the councillors (barristers) far from the court. The points of the knobs and buttons are green, but the edges are white. The prince's virtues are not great. Are those rogues Danes or Swedes. The English pilot let the lead drop in 15 fathoms. I saw ditches on the plains, and chasms on the cliffs. Goats have brown skins. He gave the coins as pledges. All men commit sins, and endure sorrows.

Translate into English.

Han faldt i en af de dybeste Kløfter på Klinterne,
og Ingen hørte hans Röst da han råbte om Hjælp.

Der er en hvid Plet på alle Lygterne. Jeg tog mine uldne Skjorter med, da jeg gik på Jagt. Når det er koldt, gør det godt at se de hede, røde Gnister stige op af Ilden. Denne Tigger er klædt i lutter Pjalter og Lapper. Det er en af Skurkens Streger. Præsterne kom i Stedet for Bispen. Hendes Bønner blev uopfyldte. Mine unge svenske Gæster ere i Huset med mine Sønner. Idag have vi to Graders Frost, og jeg har slet ikke Lyst til at gå på Jagt. Borderne på Kjolerne vare sorte og grønne med gule og røde Prikker. Safterne af disse Frugter ere rigtignok sure. Han er kommen i Kost hos en Rådmands Enke.

TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

III. Nouns which remain the same in the plural as in the singular :—

et År, a year
et Aks, an ear of corn
en Alen, an ell
et Ar, a scar
et Bånd, a band
et Ben, a bone, leg
et Besøg, a visit
et Bid, a bite
et Blik,* a glance
et Blus,* a blaze
et Brud,* a rupture
et Bryn, an eyebrow
et Brød, a loaf
et Bud,* a message, order
et Buk,* a bow, bend (of body)
et Drøn, a din
et Dyb, a depth
et Dyr, an animal
et Dæk,* a deck
et Får, a sheep

et Fag, a vocation
et Fald, a fall, case
en Fejl, a fault
et Flag, a flag
et Folk, a people
et Forhold, a condition, relation
et Forhæng, a curtain
et Forsøg, an attempt
et Garn, a thread
et Glas,* a glass
et Gran, a grain
et Greb, a handle, gripe
et Hår, a hair
et Hegn, a hedge
et Hjul, a wheel
et Hop,* a jump, hop
et Kald, a calling, living
et Kid,* a kid
et Kön,* a gender
et Knæk,* a crack, blow

* The asterisk indicates that the final consonant is doubled when the definite article is affixed to the word, as for example : *Blik*, *Blikket*.

et Kors, a cross
et Kort, a card, map
et Kryb, a reptile, vermin
et Kys,* a kiss
et Låg, a cover
et Lån, a loan
en Laks, a salmon
et Lam,* a lamb
et Led, a joint, small gate
en Lyd, a sound
et Løb, a running
et Løg, an onion, bulb
et Løv, a foliage
et Mord, a murder
en Myg,* a fly
et Møl, a moth
et Neg, a sheaf
et Næb, a nib
et Næs,* a point of land
et Oprør, an uproar
et Ord, a word
et Par,* a couple, pair
et Præg, an impression, stamp
et Puds, a trick
et Puf,* a puff
et Pund, a pound
et Råb, a call, cry
et Råd, a council, plan
et Rap,* a rap
et Ribs, a white or red currant
et Ror, a rudder
et Sagn, a tradition
et Sår, a sore
et Savn, a loss
et Segl, a seal, signet
et Sejl, a sail
en Sild, a herring
et Sind, mind, intention
et Skar, a cut
et Skin,* a glare

et Skind, a skin
et Skæg,* a beard
et Skød, a lap
et Skrål, a scream
et Skridt, a step
et Skud, a shot, shoot
et Slag, a blow
en (or et) Slags, species, kind
et Slør, a veil
et Smil, a smile
en Snært, a lash
et Spand, a span
et Spid,* a spit
et Spor, a trace
et Spring, a jump
et Sprog, a language
et Stik,* a prick, thrust
et Sting, a stitch, pain
et Strå, a straw
et Stød, a thrust
et Svar, an answer
et Sving, a swing
et Søm,* an iron nail
et Tab, a loss
et Tegn, a sign
et Tilfælde, an accident
en Ting, a thing
et Tog, a train
en Torsk, a cod
et Trin, a step
et Træk,* a feature
en Tvivl, a doubt
et Våben, a weapon, arms
et Vår, a pillow-case
et Vers, a verse
et Vink, a wink
et Vrag, a wreck
et Æg, an egg
en Østers, an oyster.

It must be borne in mind that Danish compound words always follow the gender and number of the last of the two or more words of which they are composed; as for example: *Piskekæftet*, the whip-handle; *Saltvandsfisken*, the salt-water fish.

* The asterisk indicates that the final consonant is doubled.

at tage Fejl, to make a mistake
at bruge, to use, employ
at skydse (Norw.), to convey travellers
at skifte, to change
at spille Kort, to play cards

at lege, to play, sport
en Fejl, a mistake
en Skive, a target, disk
en Kariol (Norw.), a carriage
en Kariolsæle, a carriage harness
en Skydsgut (Norw.), a post-boy.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

De tager Fejl, det er ikke min Båd.

You make a mistake, that is not my boat.

Har Deres Båd et eller to Sejl?

Has your boat one or two sails?

Det har et lille og to store Sejl.

It has one little and two large sails.

Hørte De det Skud?

Did you hear that shot?

Det er min Fætter Hans, som skyder til Skive.

It is my cousin John, who is shooting at a target.

Nu kommer Turen til mig.

Now it is my turn.

Har De set min Søsters Hund?

Have you seen my sister's dog?

Den sidder ved Hegnet.

It is sitting by the hedge.

Dyret hører en eller anden Lyd.

The animal hears some sound or other.

Hvad Slags Hund er det?

What kind of dog is it?

Det skal være en Rénhund.

It is said to be a dog for hunting reindeer.

Det er uden Tvivl en god Hund til at gå på Fjældene.

It is, without doubt, a good dog to have with one on the fjælds.

Er det Hunden som hviner?

Is it the dog which is whining?

Der kommer en Dame kørende i en Kariol med to Skydsheste.

Here comes a lady driving in a carriage with two post-horses.

Hun bruger Piskesnærten altfor meget.

She uses the lash of her whip too much.

Hun gör Forsøg på at standse, men Hesten vil ikke standse indtil den har nået Skydsskiftstedet.

She is trying to draw up, but the horse will not stop until he comes to the place for changing carriages.

Hun har ladet sit Slør ligge i Kariolen, og Handskerne også.

She has let her veil remain in the carriage, and her gloves also.

Hvor er Skydsgutten?

Where is the carriage post-boy?

TWENTY-EIGHTH EXERCISE.

I bought two bands, three ells longs, and a quarter of an ell broad. The woman gave her child a kiss on the mouth and cheeks. He got a bad bite on his right leg. Was it not the left leg? I saw the English flags on the masts. The Danish people do not often make an uproar. He made an attempt to see you. I wish to say a few (couple of) words to the Englishman. I wish to buy two lambs, and a calf. The pilot has two salmon, three herrings, two large cod, a score of oysters, and a basket of eggs. Did you hear the cry in the woods? No, I did not hear a call or any sound; but yesterday I heard a scream on the coast, and I had a mind to go out into the woods. I see no traces of foot-steps. How many wheels has this carriage? Two wheels.

Translate into English.

Jeg ser et stort hvidt Møl og to Myg på Forhænget af min Seng. Barnet sidder på sin Moders Skød, og leger med nogle Kort. Datterens Træk ligne hendes Faders, men Sønnens Træk, både Munden, Kinderne og Brynene, have større Lighed med Moderens. Det er ikke en Soldats Fag at sidde ved Pulten, og det er ikke Juristens Kald at bære Våben. Han vilde gerne være Præst, men hans Fader siger at det er ikke hans Kald. Hans Ord gör intet Indtryk på Sønneren, og Forholdet imellem Fader og Søn er ikke af det bedste. Lodsens bragte mig Bud fra den svenske Admiral, og rådede mig til at rejse med det første Tog iaften. Har De fået Svar på Deres Breve? Masterne på de russiske Brigger ere altfor høje. Jeg så de store Pletter på Bordet. Min Skjorte er i Pjalter. Jeg fandt Skallerne på Klinerne og på Kysten af Bugten. Bondedragterne i Norge ere skønne i nogle Dele af Landet. Bjærgkløfterne ere dybe. Dunsterne ere farlige på Kysterne.

TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

List of words, the meanings of which differ in accordance with difference of gender :—

COMMON GENDER.

- en Ark*, Noah's ark
en Bid, a bite, bit of food

en Birk, a birch

en Bord, a border
en Borg, a castle
en Buk,* a buck
en Flor, an abundance
en Frø, a frog
en Fyr, a dandy
en Gran, a pine-tree
en Led, an incline, side
en Leje, payment of rent, etc.
en Lem,* a trapdoor
en Læg,* a calf of a leg
en Mor, a Moor
en Nøgle, a key
en Råd, a councillor
(en) Ris, rice (a grain of)

en Segl, a sickle
en Skrift, a piece of writing
en Snært, a lash on a whip
en Spand, a bucket
en Stift, a pin, nail
en Søm,* a seam (of sewing)
en Ting, a thing

(en) Tryk,* a print

NEUTER GENDER.

- et Ark*, a sheet of paper
et Bid, a bite, edge, bit for horses
et Birk, an administrative division of land
et Bord, a table
et Borg, a pledge taken in pawn
et Buk,* a bow, salutation
et Flor, a gauze, crape
et Frø, a seed
et Fyr, a sea-light, light-house
et Gran, a grain
et Led, a link, joint
et Leje, a bed, layer
et Lem,* a limb
et Læg, a fold, plait
et Mor, a moiré, brocade
et Nøgle, a tangle
et Råd, a counsel
et Ris, a birch-rod, a ream of paper
et Segl, a seal of letter
et Skrift, a book, work
et Snært, a lash with the whip
et Spand, a span (of horses)
et Stift, a see, diocese
et Søm,* an iron nail
et Ting, legislative assembly
Storting, legislative assembly of Norway
et Tryk,* a pressure



* The asterisk indicates that the final consonant is doubled.

COMMON GENDER.

en Vår, a spring-time (poet.)
en Værge, a guardian
en Værk, a spasm, ache
en Æg,* an edge of a knife
en Æsel, a donkey (as a term
 of reproach)
en Öre, a coin, a hundredth part
 of a crown

NEUTER GENDER.

et Vår, a pillow-case
et Værge, a weapon
et Værk, a work
et Æg,* an egg
et Æsel, an ass (animal)
et Öre, an ear.

at så, to sow
at sy, to sew
en Syerske } a workwoman
en Syjomfru }
en Symaskine, a sewing machine
at leje, to let, hire
at forlange, to require
at trykke, to print
at regne, to rain, reckon
at flytte, to move
(et) Frökorn, corn, grain

en Jomfru, a maid, girl
et Kammer, a little room
en Sal, a drawing-room
en Lejlighed } rooms,
en Huslejlighed } lodgings
en Paraply, an umbrella
en Parasol, a parasol
et Støv, a dust
et Pas, a pass
en Regning, an account
en Advokat, a lawyer.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Vi få vist Regn; De må bringe
 mig min engelske Paraply, min
 lange Kåbe og den gamle Parasol.

Har De Værelser til Leje?

Lejen er altfor stor.

På hvilken Sal ere Værelserne?

Der er en Lejlighed på første Sal.

Jeg ønsker fire Værelser og et
 Kammer til en Tjener.

Hvad er Prisen for sådan en
 Lejlighed?

Når Værelserne ere møblerede,
 forlange vi to Pund om Ugen,
 eller omtrent seks og tredive
 Kroner og nogle Öre.

Når kunne vi flytte ind?

I think we shall certainly have
 rain; you must bring me my
 English umbrella, my long cloak,
 and the old parasol.

Have you rooms to let?

The rent is too high.

On which floor are the rooms?

There is a set of rooms on the first
 floor.

I want four best rooms, and one
 room for a servant.

What is the price of such a set of
 rooms?

If the rooms are furnished we re-
 quire £2 a week, or about 36
 crowns and some öre.

When can we move in?

Iloermorgen, om De önsker.

The day after to-morrow, if you like.

Hvor er min Jomfru ?

Where is my maid ?

Hun sidder, og syr på en lang Söm.

She is sitting sewing a long seam.

Igår kunde hun ikke sy fordi hun fik et Söm i Hånden.

Yesterday she could not work because she got a nail into her hand.

Mit Rejseпас, min Paraply og mine Nögler ere alle på Bordet.

My passport, my umbrella, and my keys are all on the table.

Her har De alle Deres Småting.

Here are all your little things.

Forlanger De noget ?

Do you require anything ?

Hvor er min Bagageseddel ?

Where is the ticket for my luggage ?

TWENTY-NINTH EXERCISE.

Can you lend me a sheet of paper and a seal. Here is paper, ink, a pen, and a seal. What is the fashion now ? The fashion for ladies' dresses is not pretty in these days. The printing of this book is very good. That man is a donkey ; yet he has written a poem. That must be a wretched work ! His last work was just as bad as the first. Who is that gentleman ? He is a lawyer, and a member of the Norwegian legislative assembly. There is not a single pillow-case on my bed. Where are my keys ? Your keys are in the door of the white room. Will you go with me to the pine wood ? There is nothing more pleasant in the spring. There is a yellow fog in London. There is dust on the road to the castle. The bishop is in his diocese, and his son the councillor is with him.

Translate into English.

Om Foråret er det dejligt i Granskovene. Bonden siger, at han har intet Frö at så i sine Marker. Den Dreng er så uartig, han burde få Riset. Jeg önsker ikke så meget som et Ris Papir, jeg har nok med tre Ark.

Moret, som jeg købte for min Moders Kjole, var dyrt. Moret er ikke i Mode i År, og derfor har jeg bestilt mig en Kjole af Flor. Flor er nydeligt for unge Damer, men ikke for gamle. Manden havde et Segl, som han gav Konen i Hænderne. Kan De give mig halvtredsindstyve Øre for en halv Krone? Jeg har ikke en eneste Øre. Hun giver de små Fugle nogle Riskorn. Risen synes mig altfor kostbar for Fuglene. Det er en doven Pige; hun har ikke syet en Söm. De burde sende hende til en Syskole. Næste År rejser hun til England med mig.

THIRTIETH LESSON.

Some verbs, which are composed of an affix and another word, do not admit of the separation of these two compound parts, which remain under all conditions as integral and inseparable syllables of the word, as in the following :—

<i>at beklage</i> (I.), to deplore, lament	<i>at samtale</i> (II.), to converse
<i>at beskyldte</i> (II.), to accuse of	<i>at samvirke</i> (I.), to co-operate
<i>at bedømme</i> (II.), to judge	<i>at undgå</i> , to avoid
<i>at erhverve</i> (I.), to gain, earn	<i>at undskyldte</i> (II.), to excuse
<i>at erfare</i> (I.), to learn	<i>at undslippe</i> , to escape
<i>at erstatte</i> (I.), to replace	<i>at undvige</i> , to evade, avoid
<i>at forestille</i> (I.), to represent	<i>at vanhellige</i> (I.), to desecrate
<i>at foreskrive</i> , to prescribe	<i>at vanære</i> (I.), to dishonour
<i>at foreslå</i> , to propose	<i>at vederfares</i> , to happen, befall
<i>at mishandle</i> (I.), to ill-use	<i>at vederkvæge</i> (I.), to refresh, recruit
<i>at mistyde</i> (I.), to misinterpret	<i>at vederlægge</i> , to indemnify.

Some of these verbs take the auxiliary *at blive*, to become, to be, in forming the passive voice, as for example: *det blev foreslået*, it was proposed; *hun blev beskyldt*, she was blamed; *Drengen blev mishandlet*, the boy was ill-treated.

At blive, when used as an active verb, may be translated by the English verb "to remain," taken in its fullest sense; as for example: *jeg blev i Paris*, I stayed in Paris; *mange Mand blev på Pladsen*, many men were left (lay dead) on the field; *bliv mig fra Livet*, stand off.

The auxiliary verb *at få*, to get, to have, must, etc., admits of being used in a large number of variously modified combinations; as for example:—

at få Nogen til at tie, to make any one keep silence.

at få Nogen vred, to make any one angry.

Du får mig ikke til at gå, thou wilt not make me go.

hun fik ham til at gå, she got him to go.

De får Bogen læst i aften, you will get the book read to-night.

han får tale, he will be forced to speak.

han har fået Lov, he has got permission.

jeg fik gjort alt hvad jeg ønskede, I got everything done that I wished.

hun får gøre det med alle sine Kræfter, she will have to do it with all her might.

min Søn har fået en Tand trukket ud, my son has had a tooth drawn.

hun fik det kun engang at høre, she only heard it once.

Konen påstår at hun får intet at sige i den Handling, the woman insists that she will not be allowed to have a voice in that matter.

han fik en ung Pige til Ægte, he married a young girl.

at prøve, to try, test

at tale, to talk

at måle, to measure

at passe, to suit, fit

at fortjene, to earn

at kvittere, to acquit

at være frisk og sund, to be hale

at gøre færdig, to finish

færdig, finished, ready

travl, busy

snæver, narrow

tyk, thick

tynd, thin

en Prøve, a trial, rehearsal

en Tale, a speech

et Mål, a measure

en Klods, a lump, log

klodset, clumsy

(en) Sundhed, Helbred, health

en Håndrist, a wrist

en Fodrist, an instep

en Høne, a hen (pl. *Høns*), fowls

en Sål, a sole

(et) Sålælæder, sole-leather

en Læst, a last

en Skyld, a fault

en Skade, an injury

det er Skade, it is a pity.

SIMPLE PHRASES.

Er De færdig med mine Bøger?	Have you done with my books?
Nej, jeg havde så travlt; jeg kunde ikke få dem læst.	No, I was so busy; I could not read them.
Her er Skomageren.	Here is the shoemaker.
Han ønsker at få Dem i Tale.	He wishes to speak to you.
Han er kommen her idag for at tage Mål af Dem til et Par Støvler.	He has come to-day to take your measure for a pair of boots.
Kan De få dem færdige til på Lørdag?	Can you have them ready by Saturday?
Jeg har meget travlt, men jeg skal se at få dem færdige til den Dag.	I am very busy, but I will see if I can get them ready by that day.
Jeg må absolut have dem, da jeg skal rejse til London Lørdag Aften.	I must positively have them, because I am going to start for London on Saturday night.
Vil De have Sålerne tykke eller tynde?	Will you have the soles thick or thin?
Stærke, men ikke klodsede.	Strong, but not clumsy.
Vil De prøve de nye Støvler?	Will you try on the new boots?
Jeg er bange for at de ere for små.	I am afraid they are too small.
Disse Støvler passe mig ikke; de ere for snævre over Vristen.	These boots do not fit me; they are too narrow over the instep.
Så får jeg sætte dem på Læsten og blokke dem lidt ud.	Then I must put them on the last, and stretch them out a little.
Nu passe de mig godt.	Now they will do very well.
Har De Regningen med?	Have you your account with you?
Vær så god at kvittere den.	Be so good as to receipt it.

THIRTIETH EXERCISE.

The tailor illtreats his wife and children. My cousin Anne always misinterprets what one says to her. What can that poor creature earn by his work? He earns perhaps about 12 crowns a week. One ought not to condemn the woman. He proposes to replace the money. That he must do if he wishes to be happy.

She laments that she has had a tooth drawn, because she thinks that the tooth was quite sound. The doctor prescribes a long journey for my poor little boy. I wish he would prescribe the same for my sister's eldest daughter. The soldier has not dishonoured his name, no one can accuse him of that. I cannot learn what has become of the old shoemaker, who lived in St. Peter's Street. My son has got leave from the general to remain in the country a little longer, and now he will have the opportunity of recruiting his health and his strength.

Translate into English.

Det er en besynderlig Pige, og jeg er bange for at hendes Forældre aldrig få nogen Ære af denne Datter. Når hendes Fader erfarer hvad hun havde i Sinde bliver han vist vred. Fru Justitsrådinde Paulsen mishandler sine Tjenestepiger, men hun forestiller sig at hun vil undgå Følgerne af sine Mishandlinger. Er det ikke muligt at få den Dreng til at tie? Lød ham være! han får nok Prygl af sin Fader iaften. Jeg får sé hvor mange Æg Bondepigen har i sin Kurv. Hun beklager, at hun næsten ingen Æg får af Hønsene iår. Hun giver sin Svoger Skylden for den Ulykke, og påstår at han aldrig kan erstatte denne store Skade. Hun skulde ikke mistyde alt hvad hun hører. Sådan en Kone får vel Lov til at sige hvad hun vil. Vi få ingen Tid til at nyde Noget her; dette er Stedet, hvor vi skulle sætte over Vandet i Lodsbåden. Det stormer altfor stærkt i Aften til at sætte over Elven i en åben Båd. Jeg foretrækker at gå med Toget.

LIST OF WORDS.

(en) <i>Jord</i> , an earth	<i>et Vandfald</i> , a water-fall
(en) <i>Himmel</i> , a heaven	<i>en Kilde</i> , a spring
(et) <i>Himmerige</i> , the kingdom of heaven	<i>en Regn</i>
<i>en Luft</i> , an air	<i>et Regnvejr</i> } a rain
<i>et Vand</i> , a water	<i>et Vejr</i> , a weather
<i>en Sky</i> , a cloud	<i>en Dal</i> , a valley
<i>en skyfuld Himmel</i> , a cloudy sky	<i>en Højde</i> , a height
<i>en Torden</i> , a thunder	<i>en Strækning</i> , a stretch, range
<i>et Lyn</i> , a lightning	<i>et Græs</i> ,* a grass
<i>en Ild</i> , a fire	<i>en Plæt</i> ,* a spot
<i>en Lynild</i> , a flash of lightning	<i>en Afstand</i> , a distance
<i>et Lys</i> , a light	(en) <i>Sne</i> , a snow
<i>et Mørke</i> , a darkness	<i>en Snebold</i> , a snow-ball
<i>i Mørke</i> , in the dark	<i>en Frost</i>
<i>en Sol</i> , a sun	<i>et Frostvejr</i> } a frost
<i>et Solbillede</i> , a sun picture,	(en) <i>Is</i> , ice
(a photograph)	<i>en Brø</i>
<i>en Måne</i> , a moon	<i>en Isbrø</i> } (Norw.), glacier
<i>en Nymåne</i> , a new moon	<i>en Hede</i> , a heath
<i>et Skudår</i> , a leap-year	<i>en Lyng</i> , a heath, heather
<i>en Stjerne</i> , a star	<i>en Søter</i> (Norw.), a summer-pasture
<i>en Planet</i> , a planet	<i>en Højde</i> (Norw.), a height
<i>en Sø</i> , a sea	<i>en Hagel</i> , a hail
<i>en Indsø</i> , a lake	<i>en Plaskregn</i> , a sharp shower
<i>et Hav</i> , an ocean	<i>en Top</i> ,* a top, summit
<i>en Flod</i>	<i>et Tøvejr</i> , a thaw
<i>en Elv</i> (Norw.) } a river, stream	<i>et Tørvejr</i> , dry weather
<i>en Kam</i> ,* a crest of a hill	<i>et Støv</i> , a dust
<i>en Pøl</i> , a pool	<i>et Bad</i> , a bath
<i>Pølvand</i> , ditchwater	<i>et Badested</i> , a bathing place
<i>et Vindpust</i> , a puff of wind	<i>en Badeanstalt</i> , a bathing establishment
<i>et Stålbåd</i> , a chalybeate,	<i>en Vandhvirvel</i> , a whirlpool.
(mineral) bath	

* The asterisk denotes that the final consonant is doubled.

PART II.

THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.

ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS (= Orddannelsen).

I. Nouns are formed by adding to an adjective one of the following affixes: *de, dom, e, hed, me, skab*, as for example:—

<i>en Højde</i> , a height,	from	<i>høj</i> , high
<i>en Rigdom</i> , riches	„	<i>rig</i> , rich
<i>en Vrede</i> , an anger	„	<i>vred</i> , angry
<i>en Godhed</i> , a goodness	„	<i>god</i> , good
<i>en Fedme</i> , a fatness	„	<i>fed</i> , fat
<i>en Retskaffenhed</i> , an uprightness	„	<i>retskaffen</i> , upright
<i>en Dybde</i> , a depth	„	<i>dyb</i> , deep
<i>en Sygdom</i> , a sickness	„	<i>syg</i> , sick, ill
<i>en Skævhed</i> , a crookedness	„	<i>skæv</i> , crooked
<i>en Rødme</i> , a redness	„	<i>rød</i> , red
<i>en Galskab</i> , a madness	„	<i>gal</i> , mad.

A. Some nouns have been formed by adding the affix *skab* to another noun; as for example:—

<i>et Herskab</i> , a dominion,	from	<i>en Herre</i> , a master
<i>et Venskab</i> , a friendship	„	<i>en Ven</i> , a friend
<i>et Fjendskab</i> , an enmity	„	<i>en Fjende</i> , an enemy.

The terminations *hed* and *skab* originally constituted distinct words; the former representing the German *heit*, signifying a property, and the latter the Old Northern *skap*, mind, disposition. The same distinctive meanings still adhere to these affixes; words ending in *hed*, expressing an attribute, or property, as for example: *en Karlighed*, a love; *en Slethed*,

a badness, while *skab* conveys the sense of condition, as for example: *en Vildskab*, a wildness; *et Broderskab*, a brotherhood.

B. *dom*, originally an independent word (*dóm-r*, O.N., an important thing) is used to express a property, or quality; as for example: *Ungdom*, youth; while *dømme* indicates the exercise of power, as for example: *Kongedømme*, kingdom; *Fyrstendømme*, principality.

II. Nouns which express an action, and a few which indicate a property, or condition, often end in *else* or *sel*, *ing* or *ning*, *en*, and *eri*, as for example:—

<i>en Bevægelse</i> , a motion,	from <i>at bevæge</i> , to move
<i>et Fængsel</i> , a prison	„ <i>at fænge</i> , or <i>at fange</i> , to capture
<i>en Handling</i> , an action	„ <i>at handle</i> , to act, trade
<i>en Tænkning</i> , a thinking	„ <i>at tænke</i> , to think
<i>en Gnaven</i> , a gnawing	„ <i>at gnave</i> , to gnaw
<i>et Bryderi</i> , a worry, disturbance	„ <i>at bryde</i> , to care for, annoy
<i>et Maleri</i> , a painting	„ <i>at male</i> , to paint.

The termination *eri* in most cases conveys a disparaging sense, somewhat similar to that implied in English by the affix “ling;” as for instance:—

<i>et Skriverseri</i> , a piece of scribbling,	from <i>at skrive</i> , to write
<i>et Skænderi</i> , a brawling	„ <i>at skælde på</i> , to scold
<i>et Vrøvlseri</i> , a twaddling	„ <i>et Vrøvl</i> , nonsense.

III. Personal nouns, especially when they convey a sense of diminution or inferiority, are often formed by adding *ling* to the adjective, or other part of speech from which they are derived; while they take *er* to indicate the agent generally; as for example:—

<i>en Lærling</i> , a learner,	from <i>at lære</i> , to learn, teach
<i>en Yngling</i> , a youth	„ <i>ung</i> , young
<i>en Kælling</i> (or more correctly	
<i>Kærling</i>), an old crone	„ <i>en Karl</i> , a fellow
<i>en Dommer</i> , a judge	„ <i>en Dom</i> , a judgment
<i>en Lærer</i> , a teacher	„ <i>at lære</i> , to teach
<i>en Tysker</i> , a German	„ <i>tysk</i> , German.

IV. Various meanings are conveyed to the same verbal

root by the addition of different affixes, or particles; as for example:—

en Egenhed, a peculiarity
en Egenskab, a property, quality
en Manddom, a manhood
et Mandskab, a troop of men,
 soldiers, crew
en Frihed, a liberty
en Frist, a respite

en Hellighed, a holiness
en Helligdom, a sanctuary
en Vildhed, a ferocity
et Vildskab, a wildness
en Vildelse, an error, aberration
en Vildsomhed, an intricacy

at tage sig i Agt, to beware
at agte, to esteem, intend
at lide, to suffer
at tage (or få) fat på, to get hold of
at pådrage sig, to draw upon oneself
at løse, to loosen
at bære, to bear, endure
at ældes, to grow old
at udskælde, to abuse
at tage Del i, to take part in

en Agtelse, an esteem
et Palæts (Palai), palace
en Lidelse, a suffering
en Nabo, a neighbour
en Jul, a Christmas, Yule
en Alder, an age
en Juvel, a jewel
løs, loose
vanvittig, insane
dum, stupid.

DIALOGUES.

Det gör mig ondt at høre fra min
 Nabo, Lægen, at Deres Svoger er
 syg nu i Julen.

Han lider meget, men han bærer
 sine Lidelser med stor Tål-
 modighed.

De må tage Dem i Agt ikke at lade
 Fødderne slippe når De går op
 ad de høje Bjerge.

Man kan ikke altid få fat på noget
 til at standse sit Fald.

I min Alder vilde det virkelig være
 dumt, om jeg ikke kunde stå på
 mine Fødder.

Hvor ung og rask man end er, kan
 man dog let komme på en Fjæld-
 side, hvor der er stygge, løse
 Stene.

Stene eller ingen Stene; nu går
 jeg til Sæteren nærværd Elstad.

I am sorry to hear from my neigh-
 bour, the doctor, that your bro-
 ther-in-law is ill this Christmas.

He suffers very much, but he bears
 his sufferings with great patience.

You must take care not to let your
 feet slip when you are going up
 the high mountains.

One cannot always catch at any-
 thing to stop one's fall.

At my age it would really be stupid
 not to be able to keep myself up
 on my legs.

However young and strong one may
 be, one may easily come upon a
 hillside, where there are ugly,
 loose stones.

Stones or no stones, I am off to the
 Sæter-hut, near Elstad.

READING.

To translate into English.

En Mand havde to Sønner, af hvilke den ene holdt af¹ at sove længe om Morgen, og den anden var meget flittig² og stod altid meget tidlig op. Da den Sidstnævnte³ en Dag var gået ud meget tidlig, fandt han en Pung⁴ med Penge. Han løb hen til sin Broder for at underrette⁵ ham om sin gode Lykke,⁶ og sagde til ham: "Se, Henrik, hvad man får ved at stå tidlig op." — "Men," svarede Broderen, "dersom den, hvem Pungen tilhører,⁷ ikke var stået tidligere op end jeg, vilde han ikke have tabt⁸ den."

FARVEREN⁹ OG DOMMEREN.¹⁰

En Farver, som skulde aflægge en Ed,¹¹ og hvis Hånd var ganske sort, blev befalet¹² at række denne i Vejret.¹³ — "Tag Deres Handsker af, min Ven," sagde Dommeren til ham. — "Tag Deres Brillen¹⁴ på,¹⁵ min Herre," svarede Farveren.

THIRTY-FIRST EXERCISE.

How high are the masts of the English brig? I cannot tell you their height. My neighbour, the old doctor, is a good friend of mine; I esteem his friendship very highly. That is a man whose enmity I should not like to have; he does not care for anything but riches; his pride is something unbearable. The general does not think much of the king's actions and modes of thought. It is a peculiarity of my sister-in-law, that she is never

¹ to like² diligent³ last-named⁴ purse⁵ inform⁶ fortune⁷ to belong to⁸ to lose⁹ dyer¹⁰ judge¹¹ *aflægge en Ed*, take

an oath

¹² ordered¹³ *række i Vejret*,

to hold up

¹⁴ spectacles¹⁵ *tage på*, put on.

happy when she cannot scold her servants. The thief is no longer in prison, he has recovered (got) his freedom since Christmas. The queen has a German lady-reader. It is said that the queen is angry because this lady, who does not read well, is always making a disturbance among the German servants in the palace. Do you see where the animal has gnawed right through the door of the Sætter-hut? What animal is it? It is a wild animal which runs about on the high mountains. How fat and red that boy is. Fatness and redness belong to a little child of his age. I think my neighbour, the judge, must be mad; his judgment is pure madness. Have you read the last work by the young German who was here yesterday? It is a stupid piece of writing. She is so crooked, every movement pains her. Poor thing! has she never any respite from her sufferings? Not often, she is nearly always ill. How cold it is to-day. The cold was greater yesterday. There will probably be much illness amongst old people and little children.

THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.

ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS.—(Continued).

NOUNS (= Navneord).

A large number of nouns are formed in the Danish language by placing a prefix before another noun, or before a word derived from some other part of speech.

These prefixes may be divided into two classes: (I.) the positive; and (II.) the negative.

I. The positive prefixes are: *an*, *be*, *bi*, *er*, and *sam*, the

four first of which have been borrowed from the German, and are identical with their German analogues, whilst the last named, derived from *samme*, same, corresponds with the English particles *con*, *sym*, *syn*; as for example:—

<i>et Ansigt</i> , a face,	from <i>at ansé</i> , to regard (<i>sé</i> , see; <i>an</i> , on)
<i>et Begreb</i> , a conception	„ <i>at gribe</i> , to grasp (<i>at begribe</i> , to understand)
<i>et Bidrag</i> , a contribution	„ <i>at bidrage</i> , to tend to
<i>en Erfaring</i> , an experience	„ <i>at erfare</i> , to learn
<i>en Samlyd</i> , a symphony	„ <i>en Lyd</i> , a sound
<i>et Samtykke</i> , a consent	„ <i>et Tykke</i> , an opinion.

A. *An* and *bi*, although not independent words, admit of being used as such in certain phrases, borrowed from the German; as for example:—

<i>det går an</i> , that will do (German: <i>das geht an</i>)
<i>at stå En bi</i> , to stand by one
<i>at ligge bi</i> , to lay by (nautical).

II. The negative particles are *for*, *mis*, *u*, *und*, *van*, and *veder*; as, for example:—

<i>en Foragt</i> , a contempt	from <i>en Agt</i> , a consideration, esteem
<i>en Mistanke</i> , a suspicion	„ <i>en Tanke</i> , a thought (<i>at tænke</i> , to think)
<i>en Udyd</i> , a vice	„ <i>en Dyd</i> , a virtue
<i>en Undskyldning</i> , an excuse,	
pardon	„ <i>en Skyld</i> , a blame
<i>en Vanart</i> , degeneracy	„ <i>en Art</i> , a nature, kind
<i>et Vederlag</i> , a compensation	„ <i>et Lag</i> , a layer, firm, association

A. The particle *for* in such words as *Foragt*, *at foragte*, to despise, etc., is unaccentuated, to distinguish it from the preposition *for*, before; thus, in the word *at forklæde*, to dress up, the *o* in *for* is short, while in *et Forklæde*, an apron, (compounded of *for*, before, and *et Klæde*, a cloth), the *o* in *for* is marked by a long accent (= *Tonehold*).

<i>at eje</i> , to own
<i>at benytte</i> , to make use of
<i>at betinge</i> , to bargain for
<i>at fiske</i> , to fish
<i>at opholde sig</i> , to stay, sojourn
<i>med Hensyn til</i> , in respect to

<i>en Ejer</i> , an owner
<i>en Nytte</i> , a use
<i>en Fiskegrund</i> , a fishing ground
<i>et Beløb</i> , an amount
(<i>et</i>) <i>Fuglevildt</i> , wild fowl, game
<i>i så Fald</i> , in that case.

DIALOGUES.

- Jeg har ingen stor Erfaring med Hensyn til Vejret i Fjældene, men dog tror jeg at vi få Regn og koldt Vejr iaften. I have no great experience of the weather on the fjælds, but yet I think we shall have rain and cold weather this evening.
- Herr Svendsen har i Sinde at opholde sig her på Rype- og Renjagt en fjorten Dages Tid i August. Mr. Svendsen intends to stay here about a fortnight in August, to shoot ptarmigans and reindeer.
- Han skulde først betinge sig Log hos Fiskegrundens Ejer, tillige med Tilladelse til at fiske. He should first secure a lodging with the owner of the fishing ground, and at the same time get permission to fish.
- Uden Mandens Samtykke kunde De ikke benytte Dem af hans Både. Without the man's consent you could not use any of his boats.
- Det går ikke an at fiske uden Ejeren's Tilladelse, men Rype- og Renjagten er endnu tilladt enhver Normand. It will not do to fish without the owner's permission, but every Norwegian is still at liberty to shoot ptarmigans and reindeer.
- Imorgen gör jeg en Prövetur på Vandet, medens min Broder går tilfjælds for at skyde Fuglevildt. I shall make a trial expedition on the water to-morrow, whilst my brother goes on the fjælds to shoot wild fowl.

READING.

To translate into English.

RÆVEN¹ OG VINDRUEERNE.²

En Ræv kom til et Sted, hvor der var nogle smukke modne³ Druer,⁴ men de hang så højt, at den ikke kunde nå⁵ dem. Den sprang til den var ganske udmattet,⁶ og anstrængte⁷ sig af alle Kræfter, men det hjalp ikke. Tilsidst, da den så, at den på ingen Måde kunde komme til dem, sagde den: "Å, det er kun nogle grønne, sure Ting; derfor

¹ fox, ² grapes, ³ ripe, ⁴ grapes, ⁵ reach, ⁶ to tire out, ⁷ to exert,

vil jeg ikke gøre flere Forsøg,¹ men lade dem hænge, hvor de ere."

DEN GAMLE KONE OG RAVEN.²

En gammel Kone købte en ung Ravn. Hendes Naboerske³ spurgte hende, hvad hun vilde med det hæslige⁴ Dyr. — "Jeg vil prøve," svarede hun, "om det er sandt, at en sådan Fugl kan leve i 200 År."

THIRTY-SECOND EXERCISE.

I despise the Spanish colonel, and therefore I will not stand by him. She had no suspicion of her neighbour, the old miller. Now she learns that this man who looks so respectable is a very vicious person. I must beg you to pardon (excuse) me, the fault is mine. How can you esteem a man who consents to take part in such a vicious action. The children were to dress themselves up on Christmas Eve; the youngest boy was to wear his sister's black silk dress and his mother's white apron. Do you believe that the brothers will get compensation? No, I do not. With your permission I will make use of the opportunity to fish in the river. If your father consents, you may bring your youngest brother with you. I will try to get his consent. You shall be at liberty to fish from morning till evening, if you will only allow my old fisherman to go in the boat with you. My cousin, Captain Hansen, is coming to shoot reindeer in the first fortnight of July. It will be of no use; he will probably not see a single animal. In that case he must betake himself to something else. I despise men who only think of acquiring riches. What use is it to be rich if one is not happy. How long will you stay in London? For about a fortnight, and

¹ attempts,

² raven,

³ fem. of *Nabo*: neighbour,

⁴ ugly.

then I shall make a short journey in England and in France with my eldest sister. Have you any great experience in travelling? No, I have never yet had an opportunity of travelling; but that has not been my fault. I am still young, and my father insisted always that I ought to think of earning some money before I made travelling-tours.

THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS.—(Continued).

ADJECTIVES (=Tillægsord).

I. Adjectives, expressing a material quality, often end in *en* or *ern*, as for example:—

gylden (pl. *gylâne*), gold, golden, from *(et) Guld*, gold
sölvern, silver, silvery (poet.) „ *(et) Sölv*, silver.

A. In poetry the older form *sölver* is also still used; as for example: *sölverhvid*, silvery-white; *sölverklar*, silvery-pure (clear).

B. In ordinary phraseology the substance of which an object is made is not expressed by using an adjective, as in the phrase “a wooden spoon,” but by combining into one word both the object, and the substance of which it is made; as: *en Træske*, a wood-spoon; *et Guldlommeur*, a gold pocket-watch; *en Silkekjole*, a silk dress; *en Saltvandsfisk*, a salt-water fish.

II. Adjectives, expressive of form or appearance, often end in *et*; as for example:—

<i>blåøjet</i> , blue-eyed,	from <i>blå</i> , blue; <i>et Øje</i> , an eye
<i>buget</i> , curved, bulging	„ <i>en Bug</i> , a bulge
<i>hornet</i> , horned	„ <i>et Horn</i> , a horn
<i>forkantet</i> , four-cornered	„ <i>fire</i> , four; <i>en Kant</i> , an edge
<i>sorthåret</i> , black-haired	„ <i>sort</i> , black; <i>et Hår</i> , a hair.

III. The termination *laden* diminishes the force of the quality expressed by the adjective to which it is joined; as in:—

grönladen, greenish, inclining to green, *grön*
sortladen, blackish „ „ black, *sort*.

IV. The termination *haftig*, having, and the more rarely used affixes *vorn*, and *el*, have a qualitative signification, which is generally analogous with the English termination “ly;” as for example:—

mandhaftig, manly, from *en Mand*, a man
tossevorn, silly „ *en Tosse*, a simpleton
vammel, sickly „ *at vample*, to loathe

V. Some adjectives are formed by adding to nouns or other adjectives the following affixes: *agtig* (neuter *agtigt*), *bar* (*bart*) *ig* (*igt*), *lig* (*ligt*), *som* (*somt*), and *sk*; as for example:—

<i>barnagtig</i> , childish,	from <i>et Barn</i> , a child
<i>bondeagtig</i> , peasant-like	„ <i>en Bonde</i> , a peasant
<i>frugtbar</i> , fruitful	„ <i>en Frugt</i> , a fruit
<i>kostbar</i> , costly	„ <i>en Kost</i> , a cost
<i>skriftlig</i> , written	„ <i>et Skrift</i> , a writing
<i>ensom</i> , lonely	„ <i>en</i> , one
<i>politisk</i> , political	„ <i>en Politik</i> , a policy.

A. Many national adjectives, as already shown, terminate in *sk*; as for instance:—

<i>tysk</i> , German	<i>fransk</i> , French	<i>græsk</i> , Greek
<i>polsk</i> , Polish	<i>russisk</i> , Russian	<i>hebræisk</i> , Hebrew
<i>norsk</i> , Norwegian	<i>svensk</i> , Swedish	<i>finlandsk</i> , Finnish.

These adjectives, as already mentioned (*in Lesson IV.*), are written in Danish with small initial letters like all other adjectives. An exception to this rule may be made where the adjective is used to indicate a special language; as for example:—

den svenske Dame taler Russisk, the Swedish lady talks Russian.
min engelske Ven finder at Spansk er ikke så vonskeligt som Portugisisk, my English friend thinks that Spanish is not so difficult as Portuguese.

en Födsel, a birth
at forære, to make presents
en Foræring, a gift
at bo, to inhabit
at tilbyde, to offer
indfødt, native
en Knipling, a lace
et Skind, a skin
et Læn, a linen
gammeldags, old-fashioned

en Krave, a collar
en Hals, a neck
et Halsbånd, a necklace
(et) Elfenben, ivory
en Vifte, a fan
en Ring, a ring
(en) Olie, oil
en Bistand, an assistance
en Omgang, an intercourse
dannt, cultivated.

DIALOGUES.

Er det sandt, at Deres Broder
 befinder sig i en ubehagelig
 Stilling, fordi han mangler
 hundrede Pund?

Det er kun altfor sandt.

Men gør mig ondt at høre, men
 dog glæder det mig at have en
 Lejlighed til at tilbyde ham min
 Bistand, som jeg ofte har lovet
 ham.

Jeg har altid været overbevist om,
 at De vilde være ligeså beredt
 til at holde som til at love.

Gør mig den Tjeneste at besørge
 dette Brev til ham; vedlagt vil
 han finde Beløbet, og han kan
 selv bestemme, når han vil
 tilbagebetale det.

Is it true that your brother is
 placed in an unpleasant posi-
 tion for want of a hundred
 pounds?

It is only too true!

I am sorry to hear that, but in
 the meantime I am glad to find
 an opportunity of offering him
 my assistance, as I have often
 promised.

I have always been convinced that
 you would be as ready to perform
 as to promise.

Do me the favour to forward this
 letter to him; enclosed he will
 find the amount, and he may
 name his own time for payment.

READING.

To translate into English.

PEN OG BLÆKKHUS.¹

I.

Der blev sagt i en Digters Stue,² idet man så på hans
 Blækkhus, der stod på Bordet: "Det er mærkeligt, Alt hvad
 der dog kan komme op af det Blækkhus! Hvad mon³ nu det
 Næste bliver? Ja, det er mærkeligt!"

¹ ink-stand

² a poet's room

³ what, I wonder!

“Det er det!” sagde Blækhuset. “Det er ubegribeligt! det er det, jeg altid siger!” sagde det til Pennesfjæderen,¹ og til hvad Andet, der på Bordet kunde høre det. “Det er mærkeligt, Alt hvad der kan komme fra mig! Ja, det er næsten utroligt! og jeg ved virkelig ikke selv, hvad det Næste bliver, når Mennesket begynder at øse² af mig. En Dråbe³ af mig, den er nok til en halv Side Papir, og hvad kan der ikke stå på den! Jeg er noget ganske mærkeligt! fra mig udgår alle Digterens Værker! disse levende Mennesker, som Folk tro at kende, disse underlige Følelser,⁴ dette gode Humør,⁵ disse yndige⁶ Skildringer⁷ af Naturen;— jeg begriber det ikke selv, for jeg kender ikke Naturen, men det er nu engang i mig! fra mig udgik og udgår denne Hærskare⁸ svævende,⁹ yndige Piger, kække¹⁰ Riddere på fnysende Gangere!¹¹ oh, ja, jeg ved det ikke selv! jeg forsikrer Dem, jeg tænker ikke ved det!”

THIRTY-THIRD EXERCISE.

This is a silver spoon, that is not what I want. Give me a wooden-spoon. The wooden spoon is in the kitchen, but here is a horn-spoon. Has the child light, or dark hair? It is a charming blue-eyed, black-haired little girl. It is my niece's birthday to-day, and I must therefore make her some pretty present. What are you intending to give her? I am giving her a brown silk dress, a lace veil, a pair of black silk stockings, two pairs of French kid gloves, a fine linen collar, and a pair of linen cuffs with gold studs in them. Her mother gives her a four-cornered silver case (casket) with some jewels in it, and from her father she receives a gold watch, a gold chain, a heavy silver bracelet, two dozen (dress) gloves, a costly necklace, several rings, and an ivory fan.

¹ quill-pen

² to bale; at øse af, to draw up or from

³ drop

⁴ feeling

⁵ humour

⁶ charming

⁷ description

⁸ host

⁹ gliding, fluttering

¹⁰ brave

¹¹ snorting steeds.

THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.

ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS.—(Continued).

VERBS (= Udsagnsord).

I. Verbs are formed directly from nouns, as for example :—

at agte, to esteem, intend,	from en Agt, a consideration, intention
at smage, to taste	„ en Smag, a taste, flavour
at lyde, to sound	„ en Lyd, a sound
at hæfte, to fasten	„ et Hæfte, a fastening.

A. In some cases the radical vowel of the noun is changed in the verb, as for example :—

at mægte, to master,	from en Magt, a power
at hænde, to happen, come to hand	„ en Hånd, a hand
at virke, bevirke, to effect	„ et Værk, a work
at skyde, to shoot	„ et Skud, a shot, discharge.

II. Many verbs, which are derived from nouns and adjectives, end in *ge, ige, le, re, ske, ne, se te* ; as for example :—

at spørge, to inquire,	from et Spor, a trace, foot-print
at bemægtige sig, to take possession of	„ en Magt, a power, force
at smugle, to smuggle	„ i Smug, clandestinely
at gnistre, to sparkle	„ en Gnist, a spark
at åbenbare, to reveal	„ åben, open ; at åbne, to open
at herske, to rule	„ en Herre, a master
at rødme, to blush	„ rød, red
at hvidne, to turn white	„ hvid, white
at rense, to rinse	„ ren, clean
at smage, to pine	„ en Smag, a taste.

III. Many verbs convey elliptically the meaning of the roots from which they have been derived ; as for example :—

at gifte, to marry,	from at give i Ægteskab, to give in marriage
at nægte, to deny	„ at sige nej, to say no
at opdage, to discover	„ at bringe noget op til Dagen (= Lyset), to bring something to the light of day.

IV. Some verbs are simply imitative sounds, as for example :—

at brumle, to buzz, grumble
at mumle, to mumble
at pikke, to tap, tick

at kvidre, to twitter
at pible, to bubble
at tude, to howl (like a dog).

V. Verbs derived from Greek and Latin roots, and those which long have been, or still are being introduced from foreign sources, may be incorporated in the Danish language by adding *ere* to the original word ; as, for example :—

at diktere, to dictate
at identificere, to identify

at protestere, to protest
at reformere, to reform.

A. This facile mode of verbal adoption was carried to its greatest height in the latter part of the eighteenth century, when custom and fashion threatened to reduce the Danish language to the condition of a mere polyglot mongrel tongue. The efforts of Rask and later writers to restore the use of genuine Danish words, have so far succeeded in arresting this process of verbal fabrication, that the writings of the best living authors of Norway and Denmark present few, if any, instances of this kind of word-coining.

VI. Many verbs are formed by placing before another verb one of the following prefixes: *be*, *er*, *for*, *fore*, *und*, *veder*, *mis*, *over* ; as for example :—

<i>at begribe</i> , to comprehend,	from	<i>at gribe</i> , to seize
<i>at erkende</i> , to acknowledge, own	„	<i>at kende</i> , to know
<i>at forsætte</i> , to misplace	„	<i>at sætte</i> , to set
<i>at forestille</i> , to present	„	<i>at stille</i> , to place
<i>at undgå</i> , to avoid	„	<i>at gå</i> , to go
<i>at vederkvæge</i> , to recruit strength	„	<i>at kvæge</i> , to refresh
<i>at misforstå</i> , to misunderstand	„	<i>at forstå</i> , to understand
<i>at overleve</i> , to outlive	„	<i>at leve</i> , to live.

A. The affixes *be* and *er* must be considered as genuine German particles. *For* is usually the representative of the German *ver*, but *ore*, although occasionally representing the German *vor*, are more frequently to be referred to the Old Northern words *for*, *fyrir*, for, before. *Und* is the German *ent* and Old N. *undan*, without; *veder* represents the German *wider*,

Old N. *við*, *viðr*, with; *mis* is Old N. *Mis*, deviation, fault; while *over* is equivalent to the German *über* and Old N. *yfir*, over.

It should be observed that the prefixes *u* and *van*, which occur in a few verbs, and in numerous nouns and adjectives, are both borrowed from Old Northern, in which the former conveyed the sense of negation, and the latter that of deficiency, as well as negation, as they still do in Dano-Norwegian; as for example: *sand*, true; *usand*, untrue; *at skabe*, to form, create; *vanskabt*, deformed.

VII. Intransitive verbs acquire an active, transitive sense by a change in the radical vowel; as for example:—

<i>at brage</i> , to crack	<i>at brække</i> , to break
<i>at falde</i> , to fall	<i>at fælde</i> , to fell
<i>at jare</i> , to go, drive	<i>at føre</i> , to lead
<i>at knage</i> , to creak	<i>at knække</i> , to crack
<i>at lægge</i> , to lie	<i>at lægge</i> , to lay
<i>at ryge</i> , to smoke	<i>at røge</i> , to smoke (meat, etc.)
<i>at sidde</i> , to sit	<i>at sætte</i> , to set.

DIALOGUES.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Man mærker, at Dagene begynde at tage af (tage til). | One perceives that the days begin to shorten (to lengthen). |
| Det er Tegn til, at de smukke Dage snart ville være forbi. | It is a sign that the fine days will be soon at an end. |
| Ikke altid; vi have undertiden Sommervejr om Efteråret, og Vinter om Foråret. | Not always; we sometimes have summer-weather in autumn, and winter in spring. |
| Agter De at tilbringe Vinteren i London? | Do you intend to spend the winter in London? |
| Nej, jeg skal ledsage min Fætter til det sydlige Frankrig. | No, I shall go with my cousin to the South of France. |
| Det er et af de skønneste Klimater i Europa; De har vel Venner der? | It is one of the finest climates in Europe; I suppose you have friends there? |
| Ja, min Onkel bor dér bestandig for sin Sundheds Skyld, og han har indbudt os til at tilbringe Vintertiden hos ham. | Yes, my uncle resides there constantly on account of his health, and he has sent us an invitation to spend the winter with him. |
| Det vil være særdeles behageligt; jeg ønsker Dem en lykkelig Rejse. | That will be charming; I wish you a pleasant journey. |

READING

to translate into English.

PEN OG BLÆKHUS.—(Continued.)

II.

“Det har De Ret i!” sagde Penneffjæderen; “De tænker slet ikke; for tænkte De, da vilde De forstå,¹ at De kun giver Væde!² De giver Væde, så at jeg kan udtale og synliggøre³ på Papiret det jeg har i mig, det jeg skriver med. Pennen er det som skriver! derom tvivler⁴ intet Menneske; og de fleste Mennesker have da ligeså god Indsigt⁵ i Poesien, som et gammelt Blækhush!

“De har kun lidt Erfaring,”⁶ sagde Blækhuset. “De er jo knap⁷ en Uge i Tjenesten, og allerede halvt opslidt.⁸ Bilder De Dem ind,⁹ at De er Digteren! De er kun Tyende,¹⁰ og mange af den Slags har jeg haft for De kom, og det både af Gåsefamilien og af engelsk Fabrik;¹¹ jeg kender både Fjæderpen og Stålpenn!¹² Der er Mange jeg har haft i Tjeneste, og jeg vil få Mange endnu, når han, Mennesket, som gör Bevægelserne¹³ for mig, kommer og skriver ned, hvad han får ud af mit Indvendige.¹⁴ Jeg gad nu nok vide,¹⁵ hvad det Første bliver, han løfter¹⁶ ud af mig!”

“Blækbøtte!”¹⁷ sagde Pennen.

THIRTY-FOURTH EXERCISE.

Will you be so kind as to wash this glass for me? The wine does not taste well. The fastening of my fan is broken, I must make enquiries if I can have it repaired here in town. I think it possible that the silversmith, Jansen, who lives in Östergade, might put it to rights

¹ to understand² wet, moisture³ make visible⁴ to doubt⁵ insight⁶ experience⁷ scarcely⁸ to wear out⁹ to imagine¹⁰ servants¹¹ manufacture¹² steel-pen¹³ movement¹⁴ inside¹⁵ should like to know¹⁶ to lift¹⁷ ink-tub.

again. My maid has not fastened my cloak. How could she fasten it, when there is no fastening to be seen? Do you see how she blushes because her brother asked her if she had read the French book? Yes, and now she is growing pale just as quickly. The sailor cannot deny that he smuggles something or other each time he comes back from a voyage. In case he does this often, the captain will certainly find it out.

THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON

ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS.—(Continued).

ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS (*Biorud og Forholdsord*).

The addition of *e* changes the sense of some adverbs from that of motion to that of rest, as for example :—

han står ude på Gaden, og Konen kommer straks ud, he is standing out in the street, and the woman is coming out immediately.

Soldaten gik bort igår, men nu må han være hjemme, the soldier went away yesterday, but he must be at home now.

Soldaten er borte, han rejser hjem idag, the soldier is away, he is going home to-day.

The terminations *en* and *er* convey a sense of direction, or of motion whether suspended or active, as for example :—

Østen for, to the east of (*Øst*, east) *en Østenvind*, an easterly wind
Vesten fra, from the west (*Vest*, west) *en Vestenvind*, a westerly wind
Vinden er Norden (*Norden fra*), the wind is northerly.

Øster, east, eastward *atter*, once again
Vester, west, westward *efter*, after.

III. Some adverbs are formed by adding to nouns or adjectives the terminations *igen*, *elig*, *lig*, *ligen* (analogous to English *y* and *ly*), as for example :—

<i>kraftigen</i>	} strongly, forcibly	{ from <i>en Kraft</i> , a strength	
<i>kraftelig</i>			„ <i>kraftig</i> , strong
<i>hjørteelig</i> , heartily			„ <i>et Hjærte</i> , a heart.

IV. Some adverbs have been formed directly from the neuter of the corresponding adjectives, as for example :—

<i>bredt</i> , broadly,	from <i>bred</i> , <i>t</i> , broad
<i>vidt</i> , widely, far	„ <i>vid</i> , <i>t</i> , wide
<i>skælmisk</i> , roguishly	„ <i>skælmisk</i> , roguish (unchanged in neuter).

V. Some adverbs, which are formed by the combination of a preposition and a noun, or of an adverb and some other part of speech, usually have the termination *s*, or *es*, or simply *e*; as, for example :—

<i>påtværs</i> , across, aslant,	from <i>på</i> , on, <i>tværs</i> , askew, across
<i>allesteds</i> , everywhere	„ <i>alle</i> , all, <i>et Sted</i> , a place
<i>medrette</i> , rightly	„ <i>med</i> , with, <i>en Ret</i> , a right
<i>undervejs</i> , on the way	„ <i>under</i> , under, <i>en Vej</i> , a way
<i>tilvogns</i> , by carriage	„ <i>til</i> , to, <i>en Vogn</i> , a carriage.

A. These and many similarly composed words admit of being used either in their compound or disintegrated form; as for example :—

tilskibs, *til Skibs*, by ship
tilsengs, *til Sengs*, to bed
igår aftes, *igår Aftes*, last evening
itide, *i Tid*, *i Tide*, in time
indenfor, *inden for*, within
tilligemed, *tillige med*, together with
ovenikøbet, *oven i Købet*, besides
tilsyneladende, *til Syne ladende*,
 seemingly

indenlands, *ind i Landet*, inland
udenbys, *ude af Byen*, outside the
 town
tilarbejds, *til Arbejde*, at work
tildørs, *til Dørs*, to the door
tiltaffels, *til Taffels*, at table (in re-
 ference to State dinners, etc.)
tilbords, *til Bords*, at table (ordinary
 occasions).

READING

to translate into English.

PEN OG BLÆKKHUS.—(Continued.)

III.

Sent¹ på Aftenen kom Digteren hjem; han havde været i Konsert, hørt en udmærket Violinspiller² og var ganske opfyldt³ og betagen⁴ af dennes mageløse Spil.⁵ Det havde

¹ late

² violin-player

³ to be impressed by

⁴ overwhelmed

⁵ matchless play

været et forbavsende¹ Væld² af Toner, han havde fået ud af Instrumentet; snart lød³ det som klingende⁴ Vanddråber.⁵ Perle på Perle,⁶ snart som kvidrende⁷ Fugle i Kor,⁸ som bruste⁹ Stormen igennem en Granskov;¹⁰ han troede at høre sit eget Hjærte græde,¹¹ men i Melodi, som det kan høres i en Kvindes¹² dejlige Røst.¹³ Det havde været som om ikke blot Violinens Strænge¹⁴ klang;¹⁵ men Strængestolen,¹⁶ ja Skruer¹⁷ og Sangbund!¹⁸ det var overordentligt! og svært havde det været, men sét ud som en Leg,¹⁹ som om Buen²⁰ kun løb frem og tilbage hen over Strængene, man skulde tro, at Enhver kunde gøre det efter. Violinen klang af sig selv, Buen spillede af sig selv, de to var det, som gjorde det Hele, man glemte Mesteren,²¹ der førte²² dem, gav dem Liv og Sjel. Mesteren glemte man: men på ham tænkte Digteren, ham nævnede han, og nedskrev sin Tanke derved!

DIALOGUES.

Det vilde glæde mig, om en Lejlighed vilde tilbyde sig for mig at rejse til London.

Og det vilde glæde mig meget, hvis jeg kunde ledsage Dem.

Det vilde også være mig til megen Nytte, da De er bekendt med de forskellige Måder at rejse på; i ethvert Tilfælde vil jeg takke Dem for et godt Råd desangående.

I hvilken Del af Byen tror De det vilde være bekvemtest for mig at bo? De kunde måske også give mig et Begreb om, hvor meget Rejsen vil koste?

I should be glad, if I could find an opportunity of going to London.

And I should be very glad, if I could accompany you.

It would also be of great use to me, as you are acquainted with the different ways of travelling; at all events I shall be very much obliged to you for good advice on the subject?

In what part of the town do you think it most convenient for me to stay? Perhaps you could give me an idea how much the journey will cost?

¹ to overpower

² rush

³ to sound

⁴ resounding

⁵ drops

⁶ bead, drop

⁷ twittering

⁸ chorus

⁹ to roar

¹⁰ a pine-wood

¹¹ to weep

¹² woman

¹³ voice

¹⁴ string

¹⁵ sound

¹⁶ bridge of violin

¹⁷ screw

¹⁸ body of instrument

¹⁹ play, sport

²⁰ bow

²¹ master

²² to lead.

Blandt Andet råder jeg Dem til at forsyne Dem med engelske Penge for Afrejsen.	Among other things I advise you to procure English money before you start.
Kan jeg udføre nogen Kommission for Dem ?	Can I do anything for you ?
Jeg kunde have Lyst til at sende nogle ubetydelige Foræringer til nogle Bekendte i London.	I should like to send a few trifling presents to some friends in London.

THIRTY-FIFTH EXERCISE.

I shall be heartily glad to see my husband's old friend, the French lawyer. Is he already in Denmark, or is he still on the way? He is in Germany, and we do not know if he will come by the inland route or by ship. Last night the children went to bed in time for their mother to drive out to see her friend, the admiral's wife, who lives out of town. That little boy goes to work together with his father in time to see the sun rise (stand up). The king and the queen go to dinner (to table) at six o'clock. That is rather early; in England the queen does not dine (go to table) before eight o'clock. We were sitting at table when the officer came into the room. Will your son be at home on Thursday evening?

THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.

ON COMPOUND WORDS (*Ordsammensætning*).

The Danish language possesses an inexhaustible source of richness and variety in its capacity for forming compounds. The very facility, however, with which polysyllabic combinations may be created, exposes the language to the danger of being vitiated by the incorporation of numerous incongruous elements with its native structure. Modern writers of authority have shown themselves sensible of this danger, and, accordingly, we find that multiple compounds are being more and more rarely used among living Danish and Norwegian authors, although simple dual compounds are freely employed by the best writers.

As this verbal plasticity, which is a characteristic, common in different degrees to all languages of Northern and Teutonic origin, gives rise in Danish to combinations, which are often very puzzling, the English student should devote special attention to the manner in which the several parts of such compounds are brought together.

I. As a rule, the last member of a compound verbal group expresses the dominant idea of the whole, and on that assumption it always regulates the gender and number; as for example:—

et Søvandspattedyr, a marine mammal, from *Sø*, sea, *Vand*, water,
at patte, to suck, *Dyr*, animal, *Pattedyr*, mammal
en Kirkeklokkedøb, a baptism, or naming of a church-bell
et Sølvlommeur, a silver pocket-watch
en Skolelæsebog, a book of extracts, used in schools, for reading
en Dameskrædderinde, a ladies' tailor, or mantle-maker
et Kongebarn, a royal child.

II. Compounds may be formed of words belonging to different parts of speech; as for example:—

et Frimærke, a postage stamp, from *fri*, free, *Mærke*, mark
(en) Lillefinger, the little finger
en Storherre, a magnate, the grand seignior
(en) Langelinie, a long line
femårig, five-yearred
brunhåret, brown-haired
en Mellemvej, an alternative, middle-way
indelukket, locked in
tjenstdygtig, capable of doing service.

III. In some cases the meaning of the compound differs from that conveyed when the different parts of the combined group are separated, or transposed; as for example:—

<i>en Blækflaske</i> , an ink-bottle	<i>en Flaske Blæk</i> , a bottle of ink
<i>en Frugtkurv</i> , an apple-basket	<i>en Kurv Frugt</i> , a basket filled with fruit
<i>en Vandkande</i> , a water-can	<i>en Kande Vand</i> , a can full of water.

IV. A few compound words require that both parts should agree in number; as for example:—

en Bondegård, a peasant-stead, farm, pl. *Bøndergårde*
et Barnebarn, a grandchild, pl. *Børnebørn*, grandchildren.

V. Many verbs, which are composed of adverbs or prepositions followed by another verb, admit of being expressed in the separate words of which the combination has been formed; as for example :—

at ihjelslå or *at slå ihjel*, to kill
at igennembores or *at bore igennem*, to penetrate, bore through
at afhugge or *at hugge af*, to cut off
at indelukke or *at lukke inde*, to lock in.

VI. In many cases the meaning of a compound verb is entirely different from that conveyed by the separation of the combined parts; as for example :—

<i>at afstå</i> , to concede	<i>at stå af</i> , to dismount
<i>at udelukke</i> , to exclude	<i>at lukke ud</i> , to let out
<i>at oversætte</i> , to translate	<i>at sætte over</i> , to cross over (water, etc.)
<i>at underholde</i> , to maintain	<i>at holde under</i> , to keep under.

VII. In some cases an *s* (the genitive singular), *n*, or *ns* is inserted between the parts of the compound; as for example :—

en Gadedørsnøgle, a street-door key
en Skibskaptajn, a ship's captain
en Hjærtensven, a heartily loved friend.

DIALOGUES.

Hvorledes ere Vejene nu ?

De ere overordentlig smudsige.

Hvorledes var den Egn, gennem hvilken De passerede ?

Meget klippefuld og bjærgrig.

Er Byen smuk ?

Gaderne ere godt brolagte; den første Gade er meget smuk og fører lige ned til Havnen.

Så De Havnen ?

Ja! den er meget rummelig og besøges af alle Nationers Skibe.

Hvorledes kan De være så vel bekendt med disse Ting efter kun to Dages Ophold ?

How are the roads now ?

They are excessively dirty.

What was the country like through which you passed ?

Very rocky and mountainous.

Is the town handsome ?

The streets are well paved; the principal street is very fine, and leads directly to the harbour.

Did you see the harbour ?

Yes, I did; it is very roomy, and is frequented by ships of all nations.

How can you know so much of all these things after only two days' stay ?

Hr. B. har ført mig omkring i Byen og vist mig Alt hvad der var værdt at se.

Har De modtaget en Pakke, jeg sendte Dem fra Lyon ?

Dersom De ikke allerede har fået den, vil De efter al Sandsynlighed få den imorgen eller iovermorgen.

Jeg beder Dem at hilse alle vore Kære på det Venligste.

Mr. B. has taken me about the town, and shown me everything worthy of notice.

Have you received a parcel I sent you from Lyon ?

If you have not already received it, you will, in all probability, have it to-morrow or the day after to-morrow.

I beg you will give my kind remembrances to all our friends.

READING

to translate into English.

PEN OG BLÆKHUS.—(Continued.)

IV.

“Hvor tåbeligt,¹ om Buen og Violinen vilde hovmode² sig over deres Gerning!³ og det gør dog så tidt⁴ vi Mennesker, Digteren, Kunstneren,⁵ Opfinderen⁶ i Videnskaben,⁷ Felt-herren;⁸ vi hovmode os — og Alle ere vi dog kun Instrumenterne, Vor Herre spiller på; ham alene Æren!⁹ vi have Intet at hovmode os over!”

Ja, det skrev Digteren ned, skrev det som en Parabel, og kaldte den “Mesteren og Instrumenterne.”

“Der fik De Deres, Madam!” sagde Pennen til Blækhuset, da de To igen vare ene. “De hørte ham vel læse op, hvad jeg havde skrevet ned!”

“Ja, hvad jeg gav Dem at skrive!” sagde Blækhuset. “Det var jo et Hib¹⁰ til Dem for Deres Hovmod!¹¹ at De ikke engang kan forstå, at man gør Nar¹² af Dem! jeg gav Dem et Hib lige fra mit Indvendige! jeg må dog kende min egen Malice!”

“Blækholderske!”¹³ sagde Pennen.

“Skrivepind!”¹⁴ sagde Blækhuset.

¹ foolish

² to pride oneself

³ action

⁴ often

⁵ artist

⁶ discoverer

⁷ science

⁸ commander

⁹ honour

¹⁰ thrust

¹¹ arrogance

¹² fool

¹³ ink-holder

¹⁴ writing-pin

Og Enhver af dem havde Bevidstheden¹ om at de havde svaret godt, og det er en behagelig² Bevidsthed at vide at man har svaret godt, det kan man sove³ på, og de sov på det; men Digteren sov ikke! Tankerne⁴ vældede⁵ frem, som Tonerne fra Violinen, trillende⁶ som Perler, brusende som Stormen gennem Skoven; han fornåm⁷ sit eget Hjærte deri, han fornåm Glimtet⁸ fra den evige⁹ Mester.

Ham alene Æren!¹⁰

H. C. ANDERSEN.

THIRTY-SIXTH EXERCISE.

We must buy ourselves a bottle of ink, our ink-bottle is empty. The water-can is full, but to-morrow you must bring us a can of well-water. Can you give me a stamp for a letter to England? I have only three stamps, but the tailoress (dressmaker), Hansen, will give you several. The old peasant-man has his grandchildren in the ship with him. How many (peasant) farms does the Count own? He owns several, but his largest farm lies on the road between Copenhagen and Elsinore.

NAMES OF VARIOUS FAMILIAR PLANTS, ETC.

en Plante, a plant
en Rod, a root
en Saft, a juice
en Plantesaft, a sap
en Stængel, a stalk
en Blomst, a flower
et Blad, a leaf
et Træ, a tree
en Trætop, a tree-top
et Frø, a seed
en Frøskal, a husk of seed
en Rose, a rose
en Lilje, a lily
en Tulipan, a tulip
en Hyacinth, a hyacinth
(en) Reseda, mignonette

en Korsblomst, a milk-wort
en Geranium, a geranium
en Sværdlilje, an iris
en Safran, a crocus
en Snekløkke, a snow-drop
en Pinselilje, a narcissus
en Påskelilje, a yellow daffodil
en Solsikke, a sun-flower
en Fruesko, a lady's slipper
en Marie-Hånd
en Fandens Hånd } an orchis
en Brændenælde, a nettle
(en) Hamp, hemp
en Ener, Brisk, Bruse, a juniper
(en) Bnebærbrændevin, gin
en Fyr, (*Furu*, Norw.), a fir-tree

¹ assurance

² agreeable

³ to sleep

⁴ thought

⁵ to pour

⁶ roll gently

⁷ to perceive

⁸ gleam

⁹ eternal

¹⁰ honour.

<i>en Gran</i> , a pine		<i>en Asp</i> } an aspen	
<i>en Sølgræn</i> , a white pine		<i>et Æspetræ</i> }	
<i>et Lærketræ</i> , a larch		<i>en Poppel</i> , a poplar	
<i>et Lindetræ</i> , a lime-tree		<i>en Hassel</i> , a hazel-bush	
<i>en Birk</i> , a birch-tree		<i>et Morbætræ</i> , a mulberry-tree	
<i>en Dværgbirk</i> }	a dwarf-	<i>et Figentræ</i> , a fig-tree	
<i>en Fjældtræ</i> (Norw.) }	birch	(<i>en</i>) <i>Humle</i> , hops	
<i>en Næver</i> , a birch.bark		<i>en Kartoffel</i> , a potato	
<i>en Ask</i> }		(<i>en</i>) <i>Ærter</i> , pl., peas	
<i>et Æsketræ</i> }	an ash	(<i>en</i>) <i>Bønner</i> , pl., beans	
<i>en Old</i> , an alder		(<i>en</i>) <i>Spinat</i> , spinach	
<i>en Eg</i> }		<i>en Rødbede</i> , a beet-root	
<i>et Egetræ</i> }	an oak	<i>en Gulerod</i> , a carrot	
<i>en Bøg</i> }		<i>en Turnip</i> , a turnip	
<i>en Bok</i> (Norw.) }	a beech	(<i>en</i>) <i>Syre</i> }	
<i>en Elm</i> }		(<i>en</i>) <i>Bjergsyre</i> (Norw.) }	sorrel
<i>et Elmetræ</i> }	an elm	(<i>en</i>) <i>Endivie</i> , endive	
<i>en Vidje</i> }		(<i>en</i>) <i>Salat</i> , lettuce	
<i>en Pål</i> }		<i>en Ræddike</i> , a radish.	
<i>et Pøletræ</i> }	a willow		

THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

SYNTAX.

ON THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE (*det ubestemte Kendeord*).

The indefinite article *en, et* is simply the numeral "one" (*en, et*) spoken without accentuation of the *e*. The Old Northern had no indefinite article.

The indefinite article in Dano-Norwegian must agree with the noun which it precedes, as: *en Dreng, et Hus*; *en* being the form of the common gender to which *Dreng* belongs, and *et* the form of the neuter gender to which *Hus* belongs.

This article is sometimes used in the sense of "nearly," "almost," "about," carrying with it an idea of diminution, or indefiniteness; as for example:—

han bliver her en tre, fire Uger, he will stay here about three or four weeks.

min Ven gav mig en fem og tyve, tredive Bøger, my friend gave me some twenty-five or thirty books.

Certain adjectives, as *sådan*, such, may be placed after as well as before the indefinite article, while *slig* and *mangen* must always be made to precede the article ; as for example :—

sådan en Skole, or *en sådan Skole*, such a school.
sådan et Skrin, or *et sådan Skrin*, such a casket.
mangen en Gang, many a time.
mangt et År, many a year.
slig en Kone, such a woman.
sligt et Sogn, such a parish.

When an adjective is preceded by the adverbs *så*, *hvor*, *altfor*, or *for*, the indefinite article may, as in English, stand between the adjective and the noun ; as for example :—

så smukt et Hus, so fine a house.
hvor god en Ven! how good a friend !
altfor sildig en Undskyldning, too late an excuse.

The indefinite article must be repeated after *og*, and, when two or more nouns follow each other ; as for example :—

en Pige og en Dreng, a girl and a boy.

This repetition is not necessary with *eller*, or, unless the last-named word is of a different gender from those preceding it ; as for example :—

en Pige, Kone eller Enke, a girl, wife, or widow.
en Mand eller et Barn, a man or a child.

In proverbs, axioms, or other tersely put sentences, the indefinite article may be dropped altogether when the noun is preceded by an adjective ; as for example :—

Brændt Barn skyer Ild, a burnt child dreads the fire.

The indefinite article is not used in Danish in characterising a profession, distinctive condition or designation ; as for example :—

er han Kristen eller Jøde? is he a Christian or a Jew?
Herr Madsen er Protestant, men hans Kone er Katholik, Mr. Madsen is a Protestant, but his wife is a Catholic.
hvad er den Mands Sønner? what are that man's sons ?

den ældste er Jurist, den næste Billedhugger og den yngste Fabrikant,
the eldest is a lawyer, the next a sculptor, and the youngest a
manufacturer.

min Tjeners Fader er Lysestøber, men hans Broder er Konditor, my
servant's father is a Chandler, but his brother is a confectioner.
er Deres Onkel Pebersvend? is your uncle a batchelor?
nej, han er Enkemand, no, he is a widower.

at skamme sig, to be ashamed
at synes om, to like
at være ræd (Norw.), to be afraid
at bo, to inhabit
at længe efter, to long for
at snige, to creep
at due, to be worth, avail
det duer ikke, that will not do
at sky, to shun
at være (or at gøre sig) tilfreds,
to be contented
varsom, cautious
ussel (pl. *usle*), miserable, poor

en Indfødt, a native
en Beboer, an inhabitant
en Bolig, a dwelling
en Gård, a yard, court, farm
en Klo, pl. *Kløer,* claws, feet
et Garn, a thread, net
(en) Fremtid, time to come,
future
et Ordsprog, a proverb
et Hul (pl. *Huller*), a hole
en Farver, a dyer
en Murmester, a master mason
en Mur, a wall

READING

to translate into English.

BARNET I GRAVEN.

I.

Der var Sorg¹ i Huset, der var Sorg i Hjærterne, det
yngste Barn, en firårs Dreng, den eneste Søn, Forældrenes
Glæde² og Fremtids Håb,³ var død; to ældre Døttre havde
de vel, den ældste skulde netop i dette År konfirmeres,⁴
velsignede,⁵ gode Piger begge To, men det mistede⁶ Barn er
altid det kæreste, og dette var den yngste og en Søn. Det
var en tung Prøvelse.⁷ Søstrene sørgede som unge Hjærter
sørge, grebne⁸ især⁹ ved Forældrenes Smerte, Faderen var
nedbøjet,¹⁰ men Moderen overvældet¹¹ af Sorg. Nat og Dag
havde hun gået om det syge Barn, plejet¹² det, løftet¹³ og

¹ sorrow

² joy

³ hope

⁴ to confirm

⁵ blessed

⁶ lost

⁷ heavy trial

⁸ to seize

⁹ especially

¹⁰ to bow down

¹¹ to overpower

¹² to tend, nurse

¹³ to lift

båret¹ det; det var en Del² af hende selv havde hun følt og fornummet,³ hun kunde ikke tænke sig at det var dødt, at det skulde lægges i Kiste⁴ og gemmes⁵ i Graven: Gud kunde ikke tage dette Barn fra hende, mente⁶ hun, og da det dog skete⁷ og var en Vished,⁸ sagde hun i sin syge Smerte:

“Gud har ikke vidst det! han har hjærteløse⁹ Tjenere her på Jorden, de handle som de lyste,¹⁰ de høre ikke en Moders Bønner.”¹¹

Hun slap¹² i sin Smerte Vor Herre, og da kom mørke Tanker,¹³ Dødens Tanker, den evige Død,¹⁴ at Mennesket blev Jord¹⁵ i Jorden, og da Alt var forbi.¹⁶ Ved sådan Tanke havde hun Intet at klamre¹⁷ sig til, men sank i Fortvivlelsens¹⁸ bundløse¹⁹ Intet.

I de tungeste²⁰ Timer kunde hun ikke græde mer; hun tænkte ikke på de unge Døttre hun havde, Mandens Tårer²¹ faldt på hendes Pande,²² hun så ikke op til ham; hendes Tanker vare hos det døde Barn, al hendes Liv og Leven²³ åndede²⁴ i at tilbagekalde sig hvert Minde²⁵ om Barnet, hvert af dets uskyldige²⁶ Barneord.

THIRTY-SEVENTH EXERCISE.

I.

I have never seen such a lovely rose! Such a flower is not to be had in every garden. Many a time have I wished myself in a house of my own. A clergyman should be ashamed of having such a parish; however good a house he may own, he ought not to rest till every peasant has something better than a miserable hole to

¹ to carry

² part

³ to perceive

⁴ coffin

⁵ to hide

⁶ to think

⁷ to happen

⁸ certainty

⁹ heartless

¹⁰ to like, list

¹¹ prayer

¹² to lose hold of

¹³ thought

¹⁴ everlasting

death

¹⁵ earth

¹⁶ away, gone by

¹⁷ to cling to

¹⁸ despair

¹⁹ bottomless

²⁰ heavy

²¹ tear

²² forehead

²³ living

²⁴ to breathe

²⁵ recollection

²⁶ innocent

live in (for his dwelling). What sort of animal is that? It may be a reindeer. I have never seen such an animal. Can you give me a dozen or a score of apples? I have not an apple in my shop, but if you would like a pear you may have it; here is one. I saw a child, a peasant woman, a soldier, a sailor, and a custom-house officer in the church. Is she a married woman or a widow? She is a widow, and one of her brothers is a widower. He will never be a good huntsman who fears every branch in the wood. A green Christmas makes a fat church-yard. A cat likes fish, but it will not wet its feet to get it. An honest man is soon known. It is a clever fish that can wriggle itself out of every net.



II.

Is he a tailor or a shoemaker? He is neither the one nor the other; he is a dyer, and the brother is a mason. The servant girl gave the beggar thirty or forty potatoes, a couple of onions, and ten or twelve plums. I should not like to have such a girl in my service. It is many a year since I have had such a dishonest servant in my house. I have many a time distrusted her, and in future I shall be more cautious, as the proverb says, "A burnt child dreads the fire." She says it was only once or twice she did anything of the kind, but such an excuse will not avail. How long will your uncle, the French merchant, stay in Copenhagen? Perhaps about four or five weeks. My brother is a Catholic, but my brother-in-law is a Jew. What a harsh parent that man has been to his young, motherless children! And what charming little girls he has! I have told him many a time that he ought to feel ashamed of letting his family live in such a wretched house.

THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

ON THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (*det bestemte Kendeord*).

I. The substantive-article consists of the particles *en, et*, or *n, t*, pl. *ne, ene*.

As has already been shown, the modern Scandinavian tongues have retained the ancient Northern form of the definite article which admits of its amalgamation with the noun as a terminal appendage. It would seem that this form of the article originally represented the demonstrative pronoun "that," *hin, hint, hine* (*hinn, hin, hitt*, pl. *hinir, hinar, hin*, in Icelandic), which in accordance with the construction of the Northern languages followed the noun, and in process of time became amalgamated with it, losing the *h* for the sake of euphony, until the original Danish *Mand hin*, that man, passed into the modern *Manden*, the man.

Further changes have sprung up in regard to the mode of applying this terminal form of the article, which are similarly due to considerations of sound.

A. In cases where the noun ends in *e*, the substantive-article is simply indicated by the addition of *n* or *t*; as for example: *en Hede*, a heat, *Heden*, the heat; *et Æble*, an apple, *Æblet*, the apple.

B. Nouns whose plural ends in *e, r*, or *er*, take *ne* to mark the plural termination of the incorporated article: as for example: *Æbler*, apples, *Æblerne*, the apples.

C. Nouns which remain unchanged in the plural take *ene* to mark the addition of the substantive-article; as for example: *Mus*, mice, *Musene*, the mice.

D. The addition of the substantive-article to nouns ending in *el* or *en* may have the effect of eliminating the *e* which precedes the *l* or *n*; as for example:—

en Djævel, a devil, may be rendered *Djævelen* or *Djævlen*
et Lagen, a sheet " " *Lagenet* or *Lagnet*.

In the plural of such words the substantive-article is always appended to the abbreviated form, as :—

Djæv_lene, the devils

Lag_nerne, the sheets.

II. The adjective-article, *den*, *det*, pl. *de*.

This article is used in an independent form, where the noun is preceded by an adjective; as for example :—

den store Hval, the big whale

det runde Hjul, the round wheel

de stolte Hjorte, the proud stags.

According to some grammarians, this article may likewise be regarded as representing a demonstrative pronoun, differing from the substantive-article in having retained its independence as a distinct word, although, like the latter, it has lost the accentuated tone, which still characterises the Danish demonstrative *dén*, *dét*, *dé*.

In ordinary conversation *den*, *det*, *de* are often used instead of the affixes *en*, *et*, *ene*, where the noun is not qualified by an adjective; and in these cases they have the same sense as the English definite article, as for example :—

lad dog de Bøger ligge i Fred, do let the books rest in peace !

den Regn får ingen Ende, there is no end to the rain.

altid finder jeg det Bord stående ved Døren, I always find the table standing by the door.

at trænge til, to require
at stå i Færd med, to be on the point
at miste, to lose
at spille, to play, act
at forestille, to represent, act
at stå til Tjeneste, to be at one's service
fortræffelig, admirable
hurtig, fast, quick
lystig, merry, gay
vittig, witty
en Fjæder, a feather, spring
et Klæde, a cloth
et Tørklæde, a handkerchief
et Tøj, a stuff

et Skuespil,* a play
et Lystspil,* a comedy
et Sörgespil,* a tragedy
en Farce, a farce
en Skueplads, the stage
en Scene, a scene, a stage
en Rolle, a part
en Forfatter, an author
en Kummer, *en Sorg*, a sorrow
en Bagtalelse, a scandal, slander
et Fingerböl,* a thimble
et Landsted, a country-house
en Hyld, a shelf
en Æske, a box, case
et Skab, a cupboard
en Alen, an ell, yard

* Here, as elsewhere in the present work, the asterisk indicates that the final consonant is doubled.

READING

to translate into English.

BARNET I GRAVEN.—(Continued.)

II.

Det var som om hun ikke kendte til Sövn¹ mer, og alene den vilde være hendes bedste Ven, styrke² Legemet,³ kalde Ro⁴ i Sjælen; de fik hende til at lægge sig i Sengen, hun lå også stille som en Sovende.⁵ En Nat, Manden lyttede⁶ efter hendes Åndedrag⁷ og troede for vist,⁸ at hun fandt Hvile⁹ og Lettelse,¹⁰ han foldede¹¹ derfor sine Hænder, bad¹² og sov snart sundt og fast, mærkede ikke, at hun rejste sig,¹³ kastede sine Klæder om sig og gik så stille ud af Huset, for at komme derhen hvor hendes Tanker Nat og Dag søgte, til Graven, der gemte hendes Barn. Hun gik gennem Husets Have, ud på Marken, hvor Stien¹⁴ førte uden om Byen hen til Kirkegården; Ingen så hende, hun så Ingen.

Det var dejligt stjerneklart,¹⁵ Luften¹⁶ endnu så mild, det var først i September. Hun kom ind på Kirkegården, hen til den lille Grav, den var som en eneste stor Bouquet af Blomster, de duftede,¹⁷ hun satte sig ned, böjede¹⁸ sit Hoved imod Graven, som skulde hun gennem det tætte¹⁹ Jordlag²⁰ kunne se sin lille Dreng, hvis Smil²¹ hun så levende huskede;²² det kærlige Udtryk²³ i Øjnene, selv på Sygelejet,²⁴ var jo aldrig til at glemme,²⁵ hvor talende havde der hans Blik været, når hun tog hans fine²⁶ Hånd, den han ikke selv mægtede²⁷ at løfte.²⁸ Som hun havde siddet ved hans Seng sad hun nu ved hans Grav, men her havde Tårerne frit Løb,²⁹ de faldt på Graven.

¹ sleep² to strengthen³ body⁴ quiet⁵ sleeper⁶ to listen⁷ drawing of breath⁸ for certain⁹ rest¹⁰ ease¹¹ to fold¹² to pray¹³ to get up¹⁴ path¹⁵ star-light¹⁶ air¹⁷ to give forth perfume¹⁸ to bend¹⁹ close, dense²⁰ layer of earth²¹ smile²² to remember²³ expression²⁴ sick-bed²⁵ to forget²⁶ delicate²⁷ to have power²⁸ to lift²⁹ course, run.

THIRTY-EIGHTH EXERCISE.

I.

When will the watch be ready? The watch requires to be cleaned; you must let it stay at the watchmaker's till the end of the week. Is the spring broken? No, it is not broken. Could you lend me a watch? I will lend you one. You are quite welcome to the watch which lies on the table. Does it go well? The French watch on the shelf in the cupboard goes very well, but the English watch in the case goes a little too fast. What is the price of the cloth? It costs 15 Kroner per ell. Where are the silk goods, the woollen stockings, the dress, the cloth, and the handkerchiefs? They are all here. Do you see the whale in the water? Is there really a whale so near the land? I have seen a whale in the ocean, but I did not think I should see the animal so close to the coast in this country. The girl has run away with the sheets of the bed. The sheets are on the bench in the garden. The cab standing at the door has lost one of its wheels.

II.

What piece do they give to-night at the theatre? The piece which is given to-night is "The School for Scandal," by Sheridan, the English writer. Is it a comedy or a tragedy? It is a very witty comedy in three acts. The last time we were at the theatre they gave a most wretched tragedy, and after that we saw a new farce in one act, translated from the French. What was the name of the farce? "The Widower's Trouble." The actress played the part of the widower's cousin admirably, but I preferred the actor who played the count's part in the first scene, which is laid in the interior of a grand English country-house, belonging to some rich nobleman.

THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.

ON THE ARTICLES (= Kendeord).

I. As in English, the definite article may be entirely dispensed with in Danish where the noun has a general sense ; as for example :—

Rug er dyrere end Byg, rye is dearer than barley.

Kærlighed er Kristendommens Hoveddyd, love is the sovereign virtue of Christianity.

No article is required before a title or other distinctive appellation when this is followed by a personal noun ; as for example :—

Kejser Vilhelm, the emperor William

Justitsråd Svendsen, the councillor Svendsen

Skrædder Hansen, the tailor Hansen.

In speaking of a special year, the article may be omitted, as also where definite periods of time, or names of places are expressed ; as for example :—

År 1660 indførtes Enevoldsregeringen i Danmark, in the year 1660 absolute autocracy was introduced in Denmark.

sidste Gang jeg så Dem, the last time I saw you.

i går vare vi på Esromsø, we were on Esrom lake yesterday.

II. The definite article is used in Danish, contrary to English custom, where the noun expresses a general typical character or idea, or where it represents a species ; as for example :—

Mennesket er dødeligt, man is mortal

Skøbnen var hende imod, fate was against her.

The definite article-affixes, *en, et, pl. ne, ene*, cannot be incorporated with the names of persons or places, which remain unaffected by case or by juxtaposition with other parts of speech, excepting when the grammatical construction requires that they should be put in the genitive case, when, as in English, they take the termination *s* or *es* ; as for example :—

*Jeg så Hansen, men Hansens Kone var ikke i København, I saw Hansen, but Hansen's wife was not in Copenhagen
København er Danmarks Hovedstad og Landets bedste Havneby, Copenhagen is Denmark's capital, and the best haven in the kingdom.*

III. Such names of countries, as *Tyrki, Tartari*, and others ending in *i*, take the final article-affix *et*, making *Tyrkiet, Tartariet*, on the ground that these have been derived from the names of the people, and must be regarded as the elliptical form of *Tyrkernes Land*, the land of the Turks; *Tartarernes Land*, the land of the Tartars.

It must be observed, however, that the termination *en*, which occurs in some names of countries, as for example in *Spanien* and *Italien*, is not the substantive-article incorporated with a verbal root, but an integral and inseparable part of the name itself.

IV. With some adjectives, as *hél*, whole, *alt*, all, the article-affix *en, et*, may be added to the noun, in which case the adjective is not preceded by the article; as for example:—

hele Folket, the whole people
alt Kornet, all the corn.

In the former case, the adjective article may also be used, as *det hele Folk*, but in the latter no such transposition can be made; *det alt Korn* being as inadmissible as “the all corn” would be in English.

at rase, to rage
at gå forbi, to pass by
at ødelægge, to lay waste
øde, desolate
at lide, to suffer
at brænde af, to burn off
at føje sig, to submit
at trække, to drag, pull
det trækker, there is a draught
græsselig, gruelig, horrible
umulig, impossible

en Krig, a war
en Pligt, a duty
et Kors, a cross
en Fremgang, an advance
en Umage, a trouble, pains
en Fødsel, a birth
en Fødselsdag, a birthday
en Træk,* a current of air
(et) Græs,* grass
et Foder, a fodder
(et) Kreatur, cattle.

READING

to translate into English.

BARNET I GRAVEN.—(Continued.)

III.

“Du vil ned til dit Barn!” sagde en Stemme tæt ved,¹ den lød² så klar, så dyb, den klang³ ind i hendes Hjærte, hun så op, og der stod hos hende en Mand, hyllet⁴ i en stor Sørgekappe⁵ med Hætte⁶ ned om Hovedet,⁷ men hun så ind under den i hans Ansigt,⁸ det var strængt, men dog så tillidsvækkende,⁹ hans Øjne strålede¹⁰ som var han i Ungdoms¹¹ År.

“Ned til mit Barn!” gentog¹² hun, og der lå en Fortvivlelsens¹³ Bøn¹⁴ deri.

“Tör¹⁵ Du følge mig?” spurgte Skikkelsen. “Jeg er Döden!”

Op hun nikkede bekræftende;¹⁶ da var det med Et, som om alle Stjærner ovenover lyste med Fuldmånens Glans,¹⁷ hun så den brogede Farvepragt¹⁸ i Blomsterne på Graven, Jorddækket¹⁹ her gav blødt²⁰ og sagte²¹ efter, som et svævende Klæde, hun sank, og Skikkelsen bredte²² sin sorte Kappe om hende, det blev Nat, Dödens Nat, hun sank dybere end Gravspaden²³ trænger ned,²⁴ Kirkegården lå som et Tag²⁵ over hendes Hoved

Hun stod i en mægtig Hal,²⁶ der bredte sig stor og venlig; det var Skumring²⁷ rundt om, men foran hende, og i samme Nu,²⁸ tæt op til sit Hjærte, holdt hun sit Barn, det tilsmilede

¹ near by
² to sound
³ to resound
⁴ wrapped
⁵ mourning cloak
⁶ hood
⁷ head
⁸ face
⁹ to inspire confidence
¹⁰ beam

¹¹ youth
¹² to repeat
¹³ despair
¹⁴ prayer
¹⁵ to dare
¹⁶ to nod affirmatively
¹⁷ brightness
¹⁸ variegated splendour
¹⁹ of colour
²⁰ cover

²⁰ soft
²¹ gently
²² the figure spread
²³ spade
²⁴ to penetrate
²⁵ roof
²⁶ vast hall
²⁷ dusk
²⁸ moment

hende i en Skønhed,¹ større end nogensinde før;² hun udstødte³ et Skrig, dog hörligt⁴ blev det ikke, ti tæt ved, og derpå igen langt borte og atter⁵ nær, lød en svulmende,⁶ dejlig Musik, aldrig før havde så saligstemmende⁷ Toner⁸ nået⁹ til hendes Øre!

THIRTY-NINTH EXERCISE.

I.

Queen Victoria was in Germany a couple of years ago with her daughter, the Princess Beatrice. In the year 1870 the great war between the Germans and the French broke out, and the year afterwards King William of Prussia became emperor of Germany. Where there is war there is always trouble, sorrow, and suffering. Death passes no man by. What fate wills, man must submit to. A man has to perform many a painful duty. In these days a destructive war is raging in Turkey, between the Russians and Turks. When will there be an end to this horrible war? Virtue does not make its home in every house. I spoke yesterday to Count Moltke, who was travelling last year in Italy and Spain, but he did not go so far as Turkey.

II.

The whole country was in an uproar. The whole town is talking of Hansen's misfortune. All the grass in the fields has been burnt up by the sun, and will no longer serve as food for the cattle. Why do you not take the trouble to write better? I assure you that I take great pains. If you would take greater pains you would speak better English, but without taking trouble it is impossible to make any progress. Is your son a

¹ beauty

² ever before

³ uttered

⁴ audible

⁵ again

⁶ to swell

⁷ bliss-inspiring

⁸ tone

⁹ to reach.

captain? He is still a lieutenant, but after his next voyage he hopes to become a commander or first-lieutenant. Fate has always been against my friend, Holtman. Fortune will perhaps soon prove more friendly to him; at all events he must submit to his destiny whatever it may be.

FORTIETH LESSON.

ON NOUNS (= *Navneord*).

In the early form of Dano-Norwegian three distinct genders (male, female, and neuter) were recognised for nouns, and three different terminations were consequently used for the article, adjective, and pronoun, in order to bring the latter into accord with the noun to which each referred. Traces of this earlier form may still be met with in certain country dialects, although in the cultivated language of the Danes and Norwegians two genders only are now accepted: the *Fælleskøn*, common gender, including words of male and female gender, and the *Intetkøn*, neuter.

It is to be observed that some nouns have in the process of time undergone a change of gender, which in earlier ages was usually from the neuter to the common gender, although in more recent times the change has been in the opposite direction, as seen in the case of *et Sted*, a place, which was originally *en Sted*, and *et Bogstav*, a letter, which was *en Bogstav*. This explains why the Danes say *ingensteds*, nowhere, instead of *intetsteds*, and *efter Bogstaven*, according to the letter, instead of *efter Bogstavet*, for here the older form has lingered on in these familiar expressions, after the word itself has changed its gender. Some words are still passing through this period of change, as for example: *Slags*, kind, which good writers give indifferently *en Slags* and *et Slags*. The same indefiniteness exists in regard to *Helbred*, health; *Mimut*, minute; *Punkt*, point, etc.

Except in the genitive, to which reference will be made in a subsequent lesson, the noun in modern Dano-Norwegian is not affected by case, remaining the same in the nominative, dative, objective, and vocative.

I. The noun (or pronoun, etc., representing it), when constituting the nominative (*Grundordet*), or subject, in the sentence, must always precede the verb in a simple sentence, or in the primary clause of a compound sentence; as for example: *Barnet sover længe*, the child sleeps long; *hvis Barnet sover, bliver jeg her*, if the child is sleeping, I will stay here.

II. The noun (or pronoun, etc., representing it), which constitutes the subject, must follow the verb in the secondary part of the compound sentence; as for example: *ifald min Ven ikke er hjemme, bliver jeg ikke længe borte*, in case my friend should not be at home, I shall not remain long away.

In conditional propositions, in the imperative, or in emphatic assertions, more especially when certain adverbs, as *aldrig*, *ofte*, *derefter*, are used, the nominative, or subject, must follow the verb; as for example:—

kunde Manden håbe at få en smuk Foræring, vilde han sikkert ikke glemme at komme tilbage, if the man could hope to get a handsome present, he would certainly not forget to come back.

skynd Dem! make haste!

aldrig forglemmer Kongen at vise sin Taknemlighed, never will the king forget to show his gratitude.

ofte havde Dronningen i Sinde at modtage hende, omendskönt Konen ikke fortjente en sådan Nåde, again and again did the queen think of sending for her, although the woman did not deserve such a favour.

In questions of any kind, the nominative noun, or subject, follows the verb; as for example:—

ser De det Antal Mennesker? do you see all those people?
husker han ikke Navnet? does he not remember the name?

III. The dative (*middelbart Genstandsord*), of a noun, or its representative pronoun, may be expressed, either by its being made to follow the verb and precede the object; as for

example: *jeg vil give Manden Bogen*, I will give the man the book; or by the aid of a preposition, as for example: *jeg har i Sinde at give denne Bog til min Broder*, I intend to give this book to my brother.

As in English, nouns of time, space, quantity, value, etc., may be used in Danish in an objective or accusative sense, without any governing preposition; as for example:—

han bliver her fjorten Dage, he will stay here a fortnight.

hun har rejst mange Mil, she has travelled many miles.

mit Barn er tre År gammelt, my child is three years old.

det vejer ti Lod, that weighs ten ounces.

jeg bruger min Paraply mange Gange om Sommeren, I use my umbrella many times in the summer.

hun har købt fem Alen fransk Knipling, she has bought five ells of French lace.

det Rændyrskind koster fem og fyrretyre Kroner, that reindeer-skin costs forty-five crowns.

READING

to translate into English.

BARNET I GRAVEN.—(Continued.)

IV.

“Min søde Moder! min egen¹ Moder!” hørte hun sit Barn sige. Det var den kendte,² elskede Røst;³ og Kys⁴ fulgte på Kys i uendelig Lyksalighed;⁵ og Barnet pegede⁶ hen på det mørke Forhæng.⁷

“Så dejligt er der ikke oppe på Jorden! ser Du, Moder! ser Du dem Allesammen!⁸ det er Lyksalighed!”

Men Moderen så Intet, dér hvor Barnet pegede, Intet, uden den sorte Nat; hun så med jordiske Øjne, så ikke således som Barnet, det Gud⁹ havde kaldt til sig, hun hørte Klangen,¹⁰ Tonerne, men hun fornåm¹¹ ikke Ordet,¹² det hun havde at tro.¹³

¹ own

² to know

³ voice

⁴ kiss

⁵ bliss

⁶ to point

⁷ curtain

⁸ all of them

⁹ God

¹⁰ sound

¹¹ to perceive, notice

¹² word

¹³ to believe

"Nu kan jeg flyve,¹ Moder!" sagde Barnet, "flyve med alle de andre glade Börn lige derind² til Gud! jeg vil det så gerne, men når Du græder, som Du nu græder, kan jeg ikke komme fra Dig, og jeg vilde så gerne! må jeg dog ikke nok! Du kommer jo derind til mig om ganske lidt,³ søde Moder!"

"O bliv, o bliv!" sagde hun, "kun et Øjeblik endnu! en eneste Gang endnu må jeg se på Dig, kysse Dig, holde Dig fast i mine Arme!"

Og hun kyssede og holdt fast. Da lød⁴ hendes Navn⁵ deroven fra; så klagende⁶ kom disse Toner; hvad var det dog?

"Hører Du!" sagde Barnet, "det er Fader, som kalder på Dig!"

Og atter, efter få Sekunder, lød dybe Suk,⁷ som fra Börn der græde.

"Det er mine Søstre!" sagde Barnet, "Moder, Du har jo⁸ ikke glemt⁹ dem!"

FORTIETH EXERCISE.

I.

If it should be fine this evening I will go into the country. During the last three days the wind has been in all quarters, in the east, west, north, and south; but now it is blowing so strongly from the west that we are certain to have rain. If it should blow too hard I shall stay at home. If you could take the trouble to come again at seven o'clock you would certainly find the doctor. The children read to their mother every day, and never will they forget these happy times. The sculptor has been several years in Italy, but now he intends to come back to his own country. Why are you in such a hurry? Do you happen to be going to the theatre this evening? I am not going this evening

¹ to fly

² right in

³ in a little while

⁴ sounded

⁵ name

⁶ plaintively

⁷ sigh

⁸ surely

⁹ to forget.

because I must be in the office by nine o'clock. What shall I bring you from Paris? Whatever you bring me I shall accept with gratitude. I shall give her a China dinner-service as a present for her birthday, in case she happens to be in town at the time. How is she? Very ill, and she will never be better.

II.

Our garden is 250 feet long; how long is yours? This tree is 25 feet high. How many years is he to remain in England? They say he will remain about a couple of years longer. Does he often give his sister money? He hardly ever gives his sister anything; but he makes his brothers nice presents, notwithstanding that he seldom gives them money. He has travelled through many great countries, but yet he likes his own little native land the best. Do you remember how many instruments we heard at the concert? Was it 14 or 15? I cannot tell you so exactly what the number was, perhaps about 14 or 16.

FORTY-FIRST LESSON.

ON NOUNS (= Navneord).

Continued.

The genitive (*Ejeordet*) is the only case of the noun which is still marked in Danish by a change in the word; and, as in English, it may be expressed by the addition of *s* or *es*, or by the use of a preposition.

I. It may be accepted as an invariable rule that the genitive always precedes the word governing it; as for example:—

for Guds Skyld, for God's sake.

II. The genitive termination may be wholly dispensed with where the sense of quantity is conveyed by the noun governing the word ; as for example :—

en Mængde Mennesker, a number (of) men.
en Tønde Æl, a ton (of) ale.

A similar ellipsis occurs in regard to the names of places ; as for example :—

Odense By, the town (of) Odense.

Where the designation of a person or thing is derived from the name of a place, no such elliptical form is used, and the name is made to assume the form of an adjective, terminating in *er* for both genders and numbers ; as for example :—

en Hamborger Købmand, a merchant of Hamburg.
et Londoner Hus, a London-house.
to Pariser Damer, two ladies of Paris.

Where several words stand in apposition, it is only the last, as in English, which takes the genitive termination ; as for example :—

den forrige Kejser af Frankrig, Napoleon Bonapartes Grav var engang på St. Helena, the former emperor of France, Napoleon Buonaparte's grave was once at St. Helena.

III. The prepositions *af*, *til*, *på*, *i*, may all replace the genitive, and their respective modes of application constitute a very important element in the construction of good Danish. *Af* and *til* may often replace each other without detriment to style or sense ; but the correct use of these prepositions, as well as of *på* and *i*, demands a careful attention to the conditions of the subjects ; thus for instance we may find indifferently :—

<i>Salomo, Davids Søn</i>	} Solomon, the son of David.
<i>Salomo, Søn af David</i>	
<i>Salomo, Søn til David</i>	

It will be observed, however, that in the following examples, the prepositions could not be transposed with equal accuracy :—

Husets Dør (*Døren til Huset*), the house-door
Husets Værelser (*Værelserne i Huset*), the rooms of the house
Dørens Haspe (*Haspen på Døren*), the door-latch.

IV. When a comparison is instituted between two objects, the word governing the genitive need not be repeated; as for example:—

Diamantens Værdi er større end Rubinens, the value of the diamond is higher than that of the ruby.
Dolkens Hæfte er smukkere end Sværdets, the handle of the dagger is handsomer than that of the sword.

V. In proper names the *es* of the genitive is now very often replaced by *'s*; as for example: *Lars's Hest*, Lars's horse; *Judas's Pung*, Judas's purse. Some writers, however, still adhere to the older form, and write: *Larses, Judases*.

In words ending in *st, sk, sp*; *es* is often used instead of *s*, for the sake of euphony; as for example:—

en Fiskes Øjne, instead of *en Fisks Øjne*, the eyes of a fish
en Bispes Tale „ *en Bisks Tale*, a bishop's address.

The genitive of nouns, to which the substantive-article has been affixed, is formed both in the singular and plural by the addition of *s*; as for example: *Markens Grænse*, the boundary of the field; *Børnenes Legetøj*, the children's playthings.

In Old Northern the preposition *til* governed the genitive, and in conformity with this requirement, the noun following *til* continues in modern Dano-Norwegian to take *s*, wherever a general, and not a special meaning is conveyed; as for example: *at være til Sinds*, to have a mind; *at gå til Sengs*, to go to bed. When a special object is referred to, the genitive is not used; as for example: *lad Barnet gå hen til Sengen*, let the child go to the bed.

VI. Traces of the existence in Old Northern of different forms of declension for nouns, and various terminations of cases still linger in modern Dano-Norwegian, in such expressions as: *at hugge ned for Fode*, to cut down before one's feet;

ad Åre, up in years; *hvad er der på Færde!* what is the matter? *al Landsens Ulykke*, the misery of the whole country; *på Havsens Bund*, at the bottom of the sea; *af Hjærtens Lyst*, with heart-felt pleasure, etc. The termination of the three last examples is a survival of the Old Northern genitive of the neuter article *hins*.

READING

to translate into English.

BARNET I GRAVEN.—(Concluded.)

V.

Og¹ hun huskede¹ de Tilbageblevne,² en Angst betog³ hende, hun så frem for sig og altid svævede⁴ Skikkelser⁵ forbi, hun trode at kende Nogle, de svævede gennem Dødens Hal, hen mod det mørke Forhæng, og dér forsvandt⁶ de.

“Moder, nu ringer Himmeriges⁷ Klokker!” sagde Barnet. “Moder, nu står Solen op!”⁸

Og der strømmede⁹ et overvældende¹⁰ Lys mod hende; — Barnet var borte, og hun løftedes¹¹ — det blev koldt rundt om hende, hun hævede¹² sit Hoved og så, at hun lå på Kirkegården på sit Barns Grav; men Gud var i Drømmen¹³ bleven en Støtte¹⁴ for hendes Fod, et Lys for hendes Forstand,¹⁵ hun böjede sine Knæ og bad:

“Tilgiv¹⁶ mig, Herre min Gud! at jeg vilde holde en evig Sjæl¹⁷ fra sin Flugt,¹⁸ og at jeg kunde glemme mine Pligter mod de Levende, Du her gav mig!” Og ved disse Ord var det som om hendes Hjærte fandt Lettelse!¹⁹ Da brød Solen frem,²⁰ en lille Fugl sang over hendes Hoved, og Kirkeklokkerne ringede til Morgensang. Der blev så helligt²¹ rundt om, helligt som i hendes Hjærte!

¹ to remember

² left behind

³ a fear seized

⁴ float

⁵ form

⁶ to disappear

⁷ kingdom of heaven

⁸ to rise

⁹ to stream

¹⁰ to overpower

¹¹ to lift

¹² to lift, raise

¹³ dream

¹⁴ support

¹⁵ sense

¹⁶ to forgive

¹⁷ soul

¹⁸ flight

¹⁹ relief

²⁰ to burst forth

²¹ holy

hun kendte sin Gud, hun kendte sine Pligter, og i Længsel¹ skyndte² hun sig til Hjemmet. Hun böjede sig over Manden, hendes varme, inderlige³ Kys vækkede⁴ ham, og hun var stærk og mild som Hustruen kan være det, fra hende kom Fortröstningens Væld.⁵

“Guds Vilje⁶ er altid den bedste!”

Og Manden spurgte hende: “Hvorfra fik Du med Et denne Kraft,⁷ dette tröstende Sind?”⁸

Og hun kyssede ham og kyssede sine Börn:

“Jeg fik det fra Gud ved Barnet i Graven!”

H. C. ANDERSEN.

FORTY-FIRST EXERCISE.

I.

Is this boy your friend's son? Have you the book belonging to my brother's friend? No, I have not. Have you a bottle of mine in the carriage with you? I have a wine-bottle, but there is no wine in it; a London wine-merchant, whom we met in the town of Slagelse, had the last drop of the wine. The shoemaker is the son of the mason who built many of the houses in the town of Slesvig. There is no lock on this door; the carpenter must come and put a hasp on. A pane of glass is broken in the window, and now the draught comes right into the room. I was not calling your servant, but the nephew of your servant. He is not in the house; he may perhaps be sitting on the garden-seat, or he may be running about the fields. She has her own and her sister's thimble. Is it a silver or an ivory thimble? It is neither a silver nor an ivory thimble, but a gold thimble.

¹ longing

² to hasten

³ hearty

⁴ to wake

⁵ source of resignation

⁶ will

⁷ strength

⁸ consoling spirit.

II.

Is it your nmbrella that your servant brought me ? No, my umbrella is standing in the corner of the green room in the hotel, and the one which my brother's servant brought you belongs to the doctor's daughter. Have you all you require ? I have not all the papers that I shall want. The paper is all used (up). All the money is used. Has the coachman drunk a whole bottle of ale ? No, he has only drunk half a bottle. It is my brother's fault that I came half an hour too late. Is the house built of granite or of Portland stone ? I cannot tell you if the stone is granite or of some other kind. What is that hanging on the wall ? It is an old Turkish dagger which was given me by an intimate friend.

FORTY-SECOND LESSON.

ADJECTIVES (*Tillægsord*).

I. As has already been shown, adjectives precede, and agree with, the noun to which they refer, and they follow both the indefinite article and the independent adjective-definite article ; as for example :—

en god Soldat, den gode Soldat.

A. Exceptions to the general rule, that an adjective must agree in number with the noun which it qualifies, are afforded by the plurals *få, alle, mange*, which may be used with a singular noun ; as for example :—

han har kun få Mark i Lommen, he has only a few marks in his pocket.
tager fat alle Mand! take heed all ye men !
Klokken er mange, it is late (the clock is many [hours]).

II. In Danish, as in English, the adjective follows the

noun when it constitutes a surname, or distinctive appellation ; as for example :—

Gorm den Gamle, Gorm the Old.
Kristian den Anden, Christian the Second.

III. Some adjectives, which express value, or obligation, follow the noun ; as for example :—

han er mig mange Penge skyldig, he owes me a great deal of money.
De er den Ære værdig, you are worthy of the honour.

IV. *Begge*, both, and *al*, all, must precede the noun directly, without taking the independent adjective-article ; as for example :—

begge Regenterne, both the reigning princes.
alt Byttet, all the booty.
alt Forrådet, all the stores.

V. Numerals immediately precede the noun, and those of the ordinal numbers which are declinable must agree in number and gender with the noun ; as for example :—

Damen har tabt tre Öre, the lady has lost three öre.
jeg mødte ham på anden Sal, I met him on the second floor.
han tog den første Lejlighed at øve sig i Udtalen, he took the first opportunity of perfecting (exercising) himself in the pronunciation.
han behøver ikke at skrive mere end en Stil, he need not write more than one exercise.
første Torsdag i næste Måned skulle nogle af Sultanens oprørske Undersåtter lide Døden, the first Thursday of next month some of the Sultan's rebellious subjects will be put to death.

VI. In speaking of large combinations, a singular noun may sometimes be employed with the plural numeral ; as for example :—

Generalen faldt ind i Landet med femten tusinde Mand, the general invaded the country with fifteen thousand men.

VII. *Megen*, *anden*, *egen*, *liden* undergo no change when preceded by the adjective-article *den* ; as for example :—

den liden Dåd han udførte ! the small achievement that he performed !
den megen Regn vi havde igår, the quantity of rain we had yesterday.

A. In the neuter these adjectives drop the *n*, and take *t*, to agree with the noun ; as for example :—

det lidet Godt hun bestilte, the little good she did.
mit eget Hus er mit Slot, my own house is my castle.

VIII. The adjective *hel*, all, whole, in combination with a numeral, conveys a difference of meaning in accordance with its place in the sentence ; as for example :—

ti hele År, ten complete years.
hele ti År, all the ten years.

IX. As the ordinary terminations of adjectives have already been given, it is only necessary here to draw attention to certain differences of meaning, which are conveyed by these affixes ; thus for example :—

agtig and *lig* express resemblance to, or affinity with, an object, and may generally be rendered in English by the particle “ish,” as *sortagtig*, blackish ; *syrilig*, sourish ;

bar (derived from *at bære*, to bear) corresponds to the English “ful,” “able ;” as *frugtbar*, fruitful ; *ærbær*, honourable ;

som conveys a sense of action, while *lig*, when joined to a word referring to properties of the mind, implies a possible rather than an existing action ; as for example : *tænkksom*, thoughtful, meditating ; *tænkelig*, conceivable ; *følsom*, feeling ; *følelig*, perceptible.

READING

to translate into English.

Extract from H. C. ANDERSEN'S Tale “Dejlig.”

“Rom gad jeg nok se !”¹ sagde hun, “det må være en yndig² By med alle de mange Fremmede, som komme der, beskriv³ os nu Rom ! hvorledes ser der nu ud idet man kommer ind ad Porten ?”⁴

¹Rome I should so much like to see, ²charming, ³to describe, ⁴gate.

"Det er ikke let at beskrive!" sagde den unge Billedhugger.¹ "Der er en stor Plads;² midt på den står en Obelisk, som er fire tusind Ar gammel!"

"En Organist!" udbrød³ Fruen, hun havde aldrig før hørt Ordet Obelisk; Nogle vare nær ved at le,⁴ Billedhuggeren med, men det Smil⁵ som kom, gled hen i Beskuelse,⁶ thi han så tæt⁷ ved Fruen et Par store havblå⁸ Øjne, det var Datteren af hende, der talte, og når man har en sådan Datter, kan man ikke være enfoldig!⁹ Moderen var et øsende¹⁰ Spørgsmåls Væld,¹¹ Datteren Vældets Skønheds Najade,¹² der hørte til.¹³ Hvor var hun dejlig! hun var Noget for en Billedhugger at se på, men ikke tale med, og hun talte Intet, idetmindste¹⁴ meget lidt.

"Har Paven¹⁵ en stor Familje?" spurgte Fruen.

Og den unge Mand svarede, som Spørgsmålet bedrø kunde have været stillet:¹⁶ "Nej, han er ikke af stor Familje!"

"Det mener¹⁷ jeg ikke!" sagde Fruen; jeg mener, har han Kone og Børn?"

"Paven tør¹⁸ ikke gifte¹⁹ sig!" svarede han.

"Det holder jeg ikke af!"²⁰ sagde Fruen.

Klogtigere²¹ kunde hun vel have spurgt og talt, men om hun ikke havde spurgt og talt, som hun gjorde det, mon da vel²² Datteren således havde heldt sig op til²³ hendes Skulder²⁴ og sét med dette næsten rørende²⁵ Smil?

Og Hr. Alfred talte, talte om Italiens Farvepragt,²⁶ de blånende²⁷ Bjerge, det blå Middelhav,²⁸ Sydens Blå, en Dejlighed,²⁹ som man i Norden kun fandt overtruffen³⁰ i den nordiske Kvindes³¹ blå Øjne. Og det blev her sagt med

¹ sculptor

² square

³ to exclaim

⁴ to laugh

⁵ smile

⁶ gave place to a look
of attention

⁷ close to

⁸ sea-blue

⁹ silly

¹⁰ to pour forth

¹¹ questioning spring

¹² Naïd

¹³ to listen

¹⁴ at least

¹⁵ the pope

¹⁶ to put

¹⁷ to mean

¹⁸ to dare

¹⁹ to marry

²⁰ at holds af, to like

²¹ more cleverly

²² would then

²³ holds sig op til, to lean
oneself against

²⁴ shoulder

²⁵ touching

²⁶ splendour of colour

²⁷ blue-tinted

²⁸ Mediterranean

²⁹ beauty

³⁰ exceeded

³¹ woman

Hentydning,¹ men hun som skulde forstå² det, hun lod sig ikke mærke med³ at hun forstod det; og det var jo nu også dejligt!

"Italien!" sukkede⁴ Nogle, "rejse!" sukkede Andre.
 "Dejlig! Dejlig!"

FORTY-SECOND EXERCISE.

I.

What is the little girl doing? She is writing her French exercise. Is it a difficult exercise? Yes, the exercise is rather difficult; but she has been learning French a whole year. Has she learnt to speak English? Not yet, and next year she is going to England with her old aunt, therefore she will certainly have many excellent opportunities of acquiring a good accent without giving herself much trouble. Charles the First of England, who was the grandson of Frederick the Second of Denmark, was beheaded by his rebellious subjects. It is more than two centuries since that unfortunate event occurred. This king had two sons who became sovereigns, viz.: Charles the Second and James the Second. I only want one or two pairs of gloves, and in case you have not got the gloves at hand it is not worth while to fetch them. How much money do I owe you?

II.

I met two strange ladies on the first floor. They were not really strangers, because they live on the third floor; but during all the ten years that I have lived in the house I have never once seen them. How much money do you want? At this moment I have only very little money in my pocket, but still I may be

¹ special meaning ² to understand, ³ she gave no sign, ⁴ to sigh.

able to give you a few marks. All I want is a few öre. Have you read the German papers to-day? It is said that a general with some 5,000 or 6,000 men has made an incursion into the country, and secured possession of a large booty in money and stores, and taken a number of prisoners. The soldiers are all efficient and well-trained men.

NAMES OF ANIMALS, ETC.

<i>en Hund</i> , a dog	<i>en Krabbe</i> , a crab
<i>en Hvalp</i> , a puppy	<i>en Reje</i> , a shrimp
<i>en Kat</i> ,* a cat	(<i>stors Rejer</i> , prawns)
<i>en Kattekilling</i> , a kitten	<i>en Flodkrebs</i> , a cray-fish
<i>en Mus</i> , a mouse	<i>en Elg</i> , an elk
<i>en Rotte</i> , a rat	<i>en Elgko</i> , a female elk
<i>en Vandrotte</i> , a water-rat	<i>en Hjort</i> , a stag, reddeer
<i>et Ejern</i> , a squirrel	<i>en Hind</i> , a hind
<i>en Væsel</i> , a weasel	<i>et Dädyr</i> , a fallow deer
<i>en Grævling</i> , a badger	<i>en Odder</i> , an otter
<i>en Mår</i> , a marten	<i>en Bæver</i> , a beaver
<i>en Jærv</i> (Norw.)	<i>en Ræv</i> , a fox
<i>en Fjældfras</i> (Norw.)	<i>en Ulv</i> , a wolf
} a glutton	
<i>en Björn</i> , a bear	<i>en Hare</i> , a hare
<i>en Los</i> ,* a lynx	<i>en Kanin</i> , a rabbit
<i>en Hermelin</i> , a stoat	<i>et Får</i> , a sheep
<i>en Rén</i>	<i>en Ged</i> , a goat
<i>et Rensdyr</i>	<i>en Ko</i> , a cow
} a reindeer	
<i>en Smile</i> (Norw.), a doe of reindeer	<i>en Kalv</i> , a calf
<i>en Sæl</i> , a seal	<i>en Tyr</i> , a bull
<i>en Hval</i> , a whale	<i>en Okse</i> , an ox
<i>en Hvalros</i> ,* a walrus	<i>en Hest</i> , a horse
<i>en Sör</i> , a sturgeon	<i>en Hoppe</i> , a mare
<i>en Laks</i> , a salmon	<i>et Föl</i> ,* a foal
<i>en Torsk</i> , a cod	<i>en Gris</i> , a pig
<i>en Örréd</i>	<i>en Fasan</i> , a pheasant
<i>en Örret</i> (Norw.)	<i>en Arhane</i> (Norw.), black cock
} a trout	
<i>en Forelle</i> , a trout	<i>en Agerhöne</i> , a partridge
<i>en Sild</i> , a herring	<i>en Tjur</i> (Norw.), a capercaillie
<i>en Rödspätte</i> , a plaice	<i>en Rype</i> , a ptarmigan
<i>en Flynder</i> , a flounder	<i>en Edderfugl</i> , an eiderduck
<i>en Pigvarre</i> , a turbot	<i>en Örn</i> , an eagle
<i>en Östers</i> , an oyster	<i>en Hönsehög</i> , a goosehawk
<i>en Hummer</i> , a lobster	<i>en Stork</i> , a stork
	<i>en Svane</i> , a swan

en Svale, a swallow
en Stær, a starling
en Krage, a crow
en Ravn, a raven
en Spurv, a sparrow
en Lærke, a lark

en Drossel (Droslen), a thrush
en Sortdrossel, a blackbird
en Digesvale, a martin
en Finke, a finch
en Skade, a magpie
en Nattergal, a nightingale.

FORTY-THIRD LESSON.

ON PRONOUNS (*Stedord*).

Pronouns more than any other parts of speech have retained traces of the various modes of declension which characterised the Old Northern, since they alone have distinctive terminations to mark different cases, as for example: Nom., *jeg*, I; Acc., *mig*, me; Nom., *vi*, we; Acc., *os*, us. (See Fourteenth Lesson).

I. As already shown, *De*, you (obj., *Dem*) is the pronoun ordinarily used in addressing another person; *Du* being limited to special grades of relationship or intimacy, and *I* to numbers. *I* is, however, occasionally still used in addressing one individual, in which case, as when *De*, you, is employed, the verb, adjective, etc., which it governs, must be in the singular; as for example: *Er De syg?* are you ill? *hvor gammel er I?* how old are you?

II. *Han* and *hun* were at one time in use when servants or inferiors were addressed, but this mode of address is being rapidly superseded by the more courteous *De*.

Han and *hun* are used in referring to persons, whilst *den* and *det* are used in speaking of animals (excepting perhaps domesticated animals, or household pets). Amongst the lower classes *han* and *hun* are occasionally employed to indicate inanimate objects of all kinds. *Hannem* and *dennem* are found in poetry for *ham* and *dem*.

III. *Eders, jeres, and deres* have nearly superseded the older *jer, jert, jere, your; der, dert, dere, their; while vores*, although regarded by Grammarians as incorrect, is also used in ordinary speech in the place of *vor, vort, vore, our*.

De, they, cannot be used, as in English, in a general sense; and in such sentences as "they say" it is necessary to employ the pronoun *man*, as *man siger*, instead of *de sige*; the same meaning may, however, be conveyed by using a noun, as for example: *Folk sige*, people say.

IV. The relative *hvilken* may be used instead of *som* or *der*, when the pronoun occurs parenthetically as a secondary, rather than as an essentially necessary reference to the preceding noun; as for example:—

gode Æbler, hvilke man lettere kan have i Norden end i Syden, er en nyttig Frugt, good apples, which are more common in the North than in the South, are useful fruits.

Hvilken, in consequence of its various terminations, admits of being used with precision where *som* or *der* might leave room for doubt; as for example:—

Hensyn til min Konge og mit Fædreland, hvilket jeg elsker højst af alle, skal i denne Sag bestemme mig, consideration for my king and my country, which I love above all things, shall determine my conduct in this matter.

Som and *der* refer directly to the person or thing named in the first clause of the sentence; as for example:—

giv mig den Bog, som ligger dér, give me the book that lies there.
jeg så Manden, som blev bankerot for et Par År siden, I saw the man, who became a bankrupt a few years ago.
det er vist ikke Officeren, der gik i fransk Tjeneste, this is surely not the officer who went into the French service.

The relative pronoun may be omitted when it is governed by a verb or a preposition; as for example:—

Koen, dér ligger, the cow that lies there.
dér står Drengen, jeg gav Bogen, there stands the boy to whom I gave the book.
Huset, jeg bygger, the house I am building.

Although a pronoun, as a rule, must agree in gender and number with the noun which it represents, an exception is very generally made in respect to nouns whose grammatical gender is at variance with the natural gender of the individuals or objects which the nouns indicate; thus for example :—

Mennesket slog sig, da han faldt, the man struck himself when he fell.
Fruentimmeret viste Heltemod, da hun forsvarede sig, the woman showed valour when she defended herself.

at beundre, to admire
at tilstå, to confess
at forsikre, to assure
at tage på, to put on, wear
at styrke, to strengthen
at påtage, to assume
at komme sig, to recover
at bygge, to build
at fornærme, to affront

at Bryllup,* a wedding
en Klædedragt, an attire
en Disk, a shop-counter
et Pus,* a dear little creature
en Styrke, a strength
en Fare, a danger
farlig, dangerous
hurtig, quick
fornuftig, sensible.

READING

to translate into English.

LEANDERS TÅRN.¹

Det såkaldte "Leanders Tårn" står på en Klippe² i Strædet,³ ikke langt fra den asiatiske Kyst. — Det er let at skønne,⁴ at Tårnet med Uret bærer dette Navn; Leander gjorde jo ikke sit Mesterstykke⁵ i Bosporus, men i Hellespont. — I det græske Kejserdømmes⁶ Dage tjente Tårnet til Fæste⁷ for den ene Ende af den store Kæde,⁸ hvormed man spærrede Indløbet⁹ til Konstantinopels Havn,¹⁰ det gyldne Horn, når fjendtlige¹¹ Flåder truede¹² Staden. Dens anden Ende var fæstet i Serailodden.¹³ Tyrkerne kalde Tårnet "Kis-Kulessi," d. e. Jomfrutårnet,¹⁴ efter følgende Sagn.¹⁵

¹ tower

² cliff

³ straits

⁴ to perceive

⁵ master-piece, feat

⁶ empire

fastening,

⁸ chain

⁹ closed the entrance

¹⁰ haven

¹¹ hostile

¹² threatened

¹³ point of land by
the Seraglio

¹⁴ the tower of the
maiden

¹⁵ tradition

“Sultan Mohammed havde en sjælden¹ smuk Datter, hvem en Zigöinerinde² havde spået,³ at hun skulde dø af et Ormestik.⁴ For at ingen Orm skulde komme hende nær, lod Sultanen hende bo i en Kiosk, som han havde ladet bygge på denne Klippe. Da Schahen af Persiens Søn engang kom til Konstantinopel, hørte han den smukke Mehar-Schegid omtale,⁵ og blev forelsket⁶ i hende. Han sendte hende en betydningsfuld⁷ Blomsterbuket,⁸ der skulde sige hende, hvad han følte. Men iblandt Roserne og Hyacinterne var ulukkeligvis en Orm skjult.⁹ Den stak¹⁰ Prindsessen i Hånden, da hun tog Buketten, og da Ingen var at formå til¹¹ at udsuge¹² Giften,¹³ var den visse¹⁴ Død forhånden.¹⁵ Schahen af Persiens Søn fik det at vide,¹⁶ ilede¹⁷ over til hende i en Båd, og sugede Giften ud af hendes Hånd. Sultanen gav ham derpå Mehar-Schegid til Hustru.”¹⁸

FORTY-THIRD EXERCISE.

I.

A man often hears what he does not like. They say in town that the prince is going to be married. One should never talk too much about oneself. As you come into the village you see the church and the churchyard, which lie on your left, whilst the clergyman's house, which is near Mr. Svendsen's farm, is seen on the right hand. Is that the woman who was talking to your husband yesterday on the road by the sea? No, it was not she; the person who talked to my husband was an older woman. When it was first reported that the king of Italy was dangerously ill, I heard that his daughter,

¹ unusually

² gipsy

³ to foretell

⁴ snake's bite

⁵ to be talked of

⁶ in love with

⁷ full of meaning

⁸ bouquet

⁹ to hide

¹⁰ to bite

¹¹ at formå til, to

induce

¹² to suck out

¹³ poison

¹⁴ certain

¹⁵ at hand

¹⁶ to know

¹⁷ to hasten

¹⁸ wife

the queen of Portugal, and her sister, who lives in Paris, had been telegraphed to, to come to Rome with all haste. It was hoped that the danger was past; but people said that the king was much depressed, and did not himself think that he would recover. Is the house in the wood yours? No, that is the house my brother-in-law built two years ago.

II.

Which of these hats will you wear to-day? Not any one of them, the old one which I wore yesterday looks so remarkably well. What kind of lace do you wish for? I do not like those that you have on the counter; I prefer the French lace that lies on the shelf. Do you know my sister's little child who was here at Christmas? She is such a sensible little creature. How old is the child? She is about three years old. Is it the custom in England for a woman to take such a thing upon herself? I think not, but at any rate she could not do it in Denmark. That person who is sitting on the red chair is very much admired; but for my part I must confess that I admire his clothing more than his person. Have you anything against the man who has married my niece? No, I am quite indifferent to him. Hast thou seen my dog; is it not here? The dog lying there is not mine. It is not conceivable that he should owe his tailor so much money; he says that he will take the first opportunity of paying his tradesmen with the little that he has remaining of the fortune which his father left him some years ago.

FORTY-FOURTH LESSON.

ON PRONOUNS (*Stedord*).(*Continued.*)

I. The reflective pronoun *sig*, and the possessive pronouns *sin*, *sit*, *sine* referred originally to plurals as well as to singulars, but the tendency of later times has been to limit their use to the third person singular; *dem* and *deres* being employed when more than one person is referred to; as for example:—

de beklagede dem over deres Skæbne, they lamented (themselves) over their fate.

de tog deres Hatte og gik, they took their hats and went.

It must be observed, however, that the use of *dem* and *deres*, instead of the characteristic *sig* and *sin* in the plural, is almost entirely limited to the Danes, who have forsaken a vernacular form in favour of a German mode of speech, while the Norwegians and Swedes still adhere to the original usage of these pronouns.

The difference between *sin* and *hans* has already been elsewhere sufficiently explained (*see* Thirteenth Lesson), and we need, therefore, here only draw attention to the fact, that although it may be accepted as a general proposition that the former pronoun refers to the subject in the sentence, it must be borne in mind that practically it is made to refer to the nearest preceding noun; as for example:—

hans Herre befalede ham at tage sine Sager og gå, his master ordered him to take away his things and go.

hun hørte Faderens Formaning til sine Børn, she heard the father's admonition to his children.

Moderen roste sin Søn, fordi han var flittig, the mother praised her (own) son, because he was diligent.

enhver søger for sinnes Vel, each one tries to provide for his own welfare.

hun overlod sig til sine Tanker, she gave herself up to her thoughts.

II. As has already been stated, the pronoun *man* can only be used as a nominative or subject; where an objective or other case is required, *En* must be used; as for example:—

Ens eget er dog det bedste, one's own is nevertheless the best.

III. The demonstrative pronouns *denne* and *hin* answer in some respects to the English "this one" and "that one;" the former indicating something last-named or nearest, while the latter refers to something first-named, or more remote; as for example:—

Pompejus og Cæsar havde mange Tilhængere i Rom, hin af Adelen, denne af Almuen, Pompey and Cæsar had many adherents in Rome, the former among the nobles, the latter among the lower classes.

IV. The interrogative pronouns *hvo*, *hvem*, *hvad*, when used as the subjects of an objective or secondary clause in the sentence, are generally followed by a relative in Danish; as for example:—

jeg véd ikke hvem der har gjort det, I do not know who has done it.
ser De, hvad det har at sige? do you see what that means?

Hvo (*hvem*) is also used in a demonstrative sense, as:—

hvo som elsker sit Fædreland, he who (whoever) loves his country.

Hvad is often used in the sense of an adjective, as for example:—

hvad for Efterretninger har De? what (kind of) news have you?
til hvad for en Pris er det? how much (at what price) is it?

It is also used interjectionally, as:—

hvad for en Lykke! what happiness!

V. Some Danish grammarians include the cardinal and ordinal numbers generally under the head of pronouns, although they consider the words "a hundred," "a thousand," etc., as nouns; as for example:—

et Hundrede, pl. *Hundreder*, a hundred
et Tusinde, pl. *Tusinder*, a thousand
en Million, pl. *Millioner*, a million
en Billion, pl. *Billioner*, a billion.

Hundrede and *tusinde*, when used before a noun as simple numerals remain unchanged ; as for example :—

ni hundrede Mennesker, nine hundred people
fem tusinde Sømænd, five thousand seamen.

The Danish system of counting between 50 and 100 in half-twenties can advance no good claim in favour of its continuance. The old Northmen followed the simpler and more rational method of counting by tens, as is still done by the Swedes and Norwegians, who say *tre*, 30, *firti*, 40, *femti*, 50, *seksti*, 60, instead of using the clumsy Danish forms of *trediv*e, *fyrretyve*, *halvtredsindstyve*, *tresindstyve*, etc. The O. N. meaning of *sind* is “times” ; consequently, the etymological meaning of *halvtredsindstyve*, fifty, is half on to three times twenty, while *halvfemsindstyve*, ninety, means half on to five times twenty. For convenience sake, the word *sindstyve* is frequently dropped in ordinary speech when the numeral is not followed by a noun ; as for example :—

de vare halvtreds, there were fifty of them
han er to og firs, he is eighty-two.

But where a noun comes after the number, the entire word must be written ; as for example :—

der var halvtredsindstyve Mennesker i Salen, there were fifty people in the room.
hun er næsten firsindstyve År gammel, she is nearly eighty years old.

READING.

To translate into English.

BRYLLUP I TYRKIET.

Bryllupsforberedelserne¹ optage² en Tid af åtte til ti Dage, og ende enten Mandag eller Fredag Aften. På den næstsidste Dag drager Bruden i offentlig³ Procession til Badet.⁴ I Spidsen gå nogle Musikanter⁵ med Hoboer⁶ og Trommer ;⁷

¹wedding preparations
²occupy ³public

⁴bath
⁵musician

⁶hautboys
⁷drums

efter dem gå Mænd, som bære Badelinned,¹ Flasker med Rosenvand, hvormed de bestænke² de Forbigående,³ Kar⁴ med brændende Aloetræ⁵ og andre vellugtende⁶ Substanser. En Mand bærer en Læderflaske⁷ med Vand, ifald Nogen af Følget⁸ skulde overfaldes⁹ af Tørst.¹⁰ Så komme Brudens gifte¹¹ Slægtninge og Venner; derpå en Skare¹² unge Piger, der bære hvide Schawl, og endelig Bruden under en Baldakin,¹³ båret¹⁴ af fire Mænd. Et stort rødt Kaschmirsschawl er kastet over hende, så man hverken kan se Kronen¹⁵ på hendes Hoved eller den rige Klædedragt og de mange Smykker.¹⁶ Blot et eller to ere fæstede udenpå Schawlet. I varmt Vejr vifter¹⁷ en gammel Kone, som går baglænds,¹⁸ Bruden med en Vifte af sorte Strudsfjædre.¹⁹ Processionen slutter²⁰ med nogle Musikanter. — I den varme Årstid finder den ofte Sted om Aftenen, efterat Solen er gået ned. Isåfald²¹ bære unge Brudepiger og Andre Lamper, som de Tid efter anden fylde²² med Olie.²³ Processionen går i Reglen²⁴ Brudgommen imøde,²⁵ når han kommer fra Badet, og følger ham ind i Bryllupshuset, hvis Dør lukkes, og hvor Gæsterne iføres²⁶ Bryllupsklæder. Man mindes her Lignelsen²⁷ om de ti Jomfruer, som gik Brudgommen imøde, og Lignelsen om Bryllupsklæderne. På den sidste Dag går Bruden i lignende²⁸ Procession til Brudgommens Hus, medens Brudgommen går i Procession til Moskeen²⁹ for at forrette sin Aftenbøn,³⁰ hvorfra han vender tilbage³¹ til Bryllupshuset. Hans Procession standser ofte på Vejen, hvor han modtager mange Lykönskninger³² af sine Venner.

P. BLUM.

¹ linen

² to sprinkle

³ passers by

⁴ vessel

⁵ aloes

⁶ sweet smelling

⁷ leather-bottle

⁸ attendants

⁹ to overcome

¹⁰ thirst

¹¹ married

¹² band

¹³ canopy

¹⁴ to carry

¹⁵ crown

¹⁶ ornaments

¹⁷ to fan

¹⁸ backwards

¹⁹ ostrich feathers

²⁰ to close

²¹ in that case

²² to fill

²³ oil

²⁴ as a rule

²⁵ to meet the bride-groom

²⁶ to be clothed with

²⁷ reminded of the parable

²⁸ similar

²⁹ mosque

³⁰ perform his devotions

³¹ to return

³² congratulations

FORTY-FOURTH EXERCISE.

I.

Who is with your father? The man who sells his gloves so cheap is with him. Which of the ladies is in my sisters' room? There is no one with them excepting their servant. Where has your nephew come from? He has come from our cousin in England, and as soon as he returns from his sea-voyage he is to enter his uncle's counting-house. Who has my little boy's copy-book? Has your brother got it? He has only his own? but I do not know if this writing paper is your son's or his own. Those men give themselves no trouble. There were nearly three hundred soldiers at the station, each with his sword and rifle. To whom do the cattle on this field belong? They belong to our cousin, the squire (owner of estate), but the animals on yonder field belong to the miller. Has your cousin no more cows than these four? He has several more on his farm near Rensborg. The peasant says the horses are his; but I thought they were yours. The horses are not mine, but my neighbour's. He who wears the shoe knows best where it pinches. Some slept in the carriage, others gave themselves up to their silent thoughts.

II.

What news have you of your brother-in-law? I have not had particularly good news, as you will see from these letters. Is your sister with her husband in the country? No, she is still with her daughter in Ribe; but as soon as she learns with what a dangerous illness her husband has been attacked, she will immediately return. May my daughter take your umbrella to her uncle? Why does she not take your own instead of borrowing mine?

Mine is good for nothing; it fell from our carriage yesterday and was driven over, and now we cannot use it any longer. Have you heard of the misfortune that happened to-day? A man fell from his horse in one of the narrowest of our streets, the horse darted off, and the man, who was much shaken (*røstet*), has been taken to a hospital. Do you know for how much (at what price) I might buy a handsome carriage and a pair of strong horses? Perhaps for about two hundred and fifty, or three hundred pounds. That is a hundred more than I wish to pay.



FORTY-FIFTH LESSON.

ON VERBS (*Udsagnsord*).

I. The present of the indicative (*Nutiden af den fremsættende Måde*) has a wider application than the same tense in English, and is used :—

A. To express, as in English, what usually happens at a definite period; as for example :—

Drengen går hver Dag i Skole, the boy goes every day to school.

B. In the place of the past tense, in descriptive narration; as for example :—

Imedens han talte, hørte hun på ham, og løber så hen og anklager ham, whilst he was speaking, she listened to him, and ran and denounced him.

C. In the place of the future and conditional, in which respect it constitutes a marked characteristic of the language; as for example :—

Jeg rejser næste År, I shall travel next year.

Går hun med, bliver jeg hjemme, if she should go too, I shall remain at home.

II. The imperfect, or past tense, (*Datiden*) is used :—

A. To express a past period of indefinite date or limitation, and is employed in historical narration; as for example :—

Napoleon opsvang sig til Frankrigs Kejser, Napoleon raised himself to be emperor of France.

jeg læste, da han kom, I was reading when he came.

B. In an optative, conditional sense; as :—

gik det blot godt! if it only would go well!

handlede De efter mit Råd, kunde det endelig blive godt, if you would act by my advice, it might in the end go well.

jeg gik ud i Aften, hvis jeg vidste det blev godt Vejr, I would go out this evening, if I knew that it would be fine (weather).

III. The future tense (*Fremtiden*) is often expressed by the help of the auxiliary (*Hjælpeordet*) *blive*, as well as by that of *skulle* and *ville*; as for example :—

om det ikke holder op, bliver jeg gal, if that does not cease, I shall go mad.

i År bliver hun ikke gift, she will not be married this year

Skal and *vil* are not used precisely as their English representatives “shall” and “will,” since the first implies, in Danish, an obligation or intention on the part of the agent, while the second expresses futurity without any action of the will; as for example :—

Jeg spørger om De skal rejse, I am asking whether you are going to travel (must travel).

jeg tror at jeg vil være alfor træt, I think that I shall be too tired.

jeg håber at De vil gøre det, I hope that you will do it.

det skal jeg nok, yes, that I will.

kommer De imorgen? ja, jeg skal nok komme, are you coming to-morrow? yes, I shall certainly come.

Posten vil idag næppe komme i rette Tid, the post will hardly arrive at the proper time to-day.

Here it will be seen that *vil* is used where the action depends upon something foreign to, or apart from the subject, while *skal* is employed where the action, will, or determination refers to, or emanates from the subject.

READING.

To translate into English.

SAMFUNDETS STÖTTER, *Skuespil i fire Akter, af HENRIK IBSEN.*
 ("The Props [Supports] of Society," a drama in four acts, by Henry Ibsen.)

SCENE I.

Fuldmægtig ¹ KRAP.—Nå, er det Dem, som banker.²
Skibsbygger ³ AUNE.—Konsulen ⁴ har havt Bud ⁵ efter mig.
Fuldmægtig KRAP.—Har så; men kan ikke modtage⁶ Dem;
 har overdraget⁷ til mig at . . .

Skibsbygger AUNE.—Til Dem? Jeg vilde nok helst—⁸

Fuldmægtig KRAP.—Overdraget til mig at sige Dem det. De
 må holde op⁹ med disse Lördagsforedrag¹⁰ for Arbejderne.¹¹

Skibsbygger AUNE.—Så? Jeg tænkte dog, jeg måtte bruge¹²
 min Frihed¹³—

Fuldmægtig KRAP.—De må ikke bruge Deres Frihed til at
 gøre Folkene ubrugelige¹⁴ i Arbejdstiden. Sidste Lördag har
 De talt om den Skade,¹⁵ Arbejderne skal have af vore nye
 Maskiner,¹⁶ og af den nye Arbejds måde¹⁷ på Værftet.¹⁸
 Hvorfor gör De det?

Skibsbygger AUNE.—Det gör jeg for at støtte¹⁹ Samfundet.²⁰

Fuldmægtig KRAP.—Det var mærkeligt! Konsulen siger, at
 det er Samfundsopløsende.²¹

Skibsbygger AUNE.—Mit Samfund er ikke Konsulens Sam-
 fund, Herr Fuldmægtig! som Formand²² i Arbejdersamfundet
 må jeg—

Fuldmægtig KRAP.—De er først og fremst²³ Formand på
 Konsulens Værft. De har først og fremst at gøre Deres
 Skyldighed²⁴ imod det Samfund, som kaldes Konsul Bermiks
 Firma,²⁵ for det er *det* vi alle sammen leve af.—Ja, nu véd De
 hvad Konsulen havde at sige Dem.

¹ head-clerk or director² knock³ ship-builder⁴ the consul⁵ message⁶ receive⁷ commissioned⁸ rather⁹ cease¹⁰ addresses¹¹ workmen¹² use¹³ leisure¹⁴ useless¹⁵ injury¹⁶ machines¹⁷ mode of working¹⁸ ship-building yard¹⁹ support²⁰ society²¹ dissolution of the
social fabric (society)²² foreman, president²³ first and foremost²⁴ duty²⁵ firm

Skibsbygger AUNE.—Konsulen vilde ikke have sagt det på *den Måde!* men jeg skønner¹ nok hvem jeg har at takke for dette her. Det er den fordømte amerikanske Havarist.² De Folk vil, at Arbejdet skal gå som de er vant³ til det derovre, og det—

Fuldmægtig KRAP.—Ja, ja, ja, jeg kan ikke indlade⁴ mig på Vidtløftigheder.⁵ Nu kender De Konsulens Mening;⁶ altså basta!⁷ vil De så gå ned på Værftet igen; det kan vist behöves;⁸ jeg kommer selv derned om lidt.

FORTY-FIFTH EXERCISE.

I.

My son goes to the office every morning at nine. I will not suffer him to make such a noise (*Støj*, c.g.). Are you going to town to-day? No, I am not going to-day, because I have not been very well since I returned from my last voyage. When are your friends going out hunting? They are going as soon as my uncle arrives. I heard that your uncle had come last Thursday. He did come on that day, but he went away again, and now we do not know at what time we may expect him. If he does not come at the appointed time my friend will go without him. Yesterday I saw a large number of birds at the farm in Frederiksdal. What kind of birds did you see? We saw storks sitting on the gable, a swan which was swimming in the pond, and several little birds, as larks, finches, swallows, sand-martens, and thrushes twittering in chorus.

¹ perceive

² confounded ship-wrecked American

³ accustomed

⁴ enter into

⁵ longwinded dissertations

⁶ meaning

⁷ enough

⁸ certainly be necessary

II.

Has your aunt praised you (ye)? She praised us because we had been diligent this week. We shall not sell our horses if our son comes back from the East-Indies. When do you expect him? Oh! if we only knew when to expect him! But his coming home depends upon the war, if that should cease, he will probably come this year, but if the war should be prolonged, it is impossible to say when we may hope to see him again. Would you oblige me by changing (*at bytte*) a sovereign? I shall be very glad to do so. Would you like to have English shillings or Danish marks? Many thanks (I thank you), I prefer Danish money. Mrs. Paulsen said that you were going to travel next summer; is it true? Yes, it is; I am going (intend to go) to France next August.

FORTY-SIXTH LESSON.

ON THE AUXILIARY VERBS, etc. (*Hjælpeverbene, o.s.v.*)

I. The auxiliary (*Hjælpeordet*) *at få*, to get, when joined to a participle past, was at one time generally used in the Scandinavian languages to express the sense of "shall have;" as for example:—

når jeg får spist, when I shall have dined.

The use of *få* in this sense has, however, been almost wholly superseded in Danish by that of *have*. In either case the adverb used in combination with the verb indicates the distinct period of time which is to be expressed; thus: *når*, when, while: implies a sense of definite futurity; *da*, when: implies a sense of definite past; as for example:—

da han havde spist gik han i Byen, when he had dined, he went into town.

II. Two or more auxiliaries may be added to the governing verb, as may be seen from the following sentences :—

hun har villet gå, she had wished (intended) to go.
han skal have sagt, he shall (is reported to) have said.
det skal være skrevet, it is said to have been written.
det skal have været besluttet, it is said to have been resolved.
det skal være blevet gjort, it is said to have been done.

The English auxiliaries “have,” “be,” “do,” etc., when used with a present participle, are often replaced in Danish by various other modes of construction, as may be seen from the following sentences :—

hun er færdig med at spille, she has done playing.
Manden var ved at sove, the man was sleeping.
Konen skrev ikke igår, the woman was not writing yesterday.
han er i Færd med at rejse, he is in the act of (on the point of) travelling.

III. Participles (*Tillægsformerne*) may be used as adjectives, in which case they must agree, like these, in gender and number with the noun to which they refer; as for example :—

den brølende Løve, the roaring lion
en indbunden Bog, a bound book
et bundet Dyr, a chained animal
de fangne Soldater, the captured soldiers.

In some cases these participles may be used adverbially, as for example :—

han kom ridende, he came riding
hun sidder fangen, she is (sits) imprisoned.

The present participle in English is frequently best rendered in Dano-Norwegian by the reiterated use of the present indicative; as for example :—

hun sidder og læser, she is reading
han står og taler, he is speaking.

IV. Although the rule, that the verb should agree in number and person with the noun to which it refers, is accepted in Dano-Norwegian, as in other languages, it is evident, that a decided tendency to reduce both numbers of the verb to the singular form is apparent, even amongst the best educated Danes and Norwegians; thus, for example, most

persons will be heard to say *vi har* instead of *vi have*, *de er* instead of *de ere*. This substitution of the singular of the present tense of the indicative for the plural is perhaps most prevalent in regard to the auxiliaries, but it is not limited to these verbs.

The impersonals *det er*, it is, *det var*, it was, *hvor er*, where is, *der er*, there is, etc., remain unchanged whether the subject to which they refer is plural or singular; as for example:—

hvor er Manden? where is the man?
der er nogle Piger, there are some girls.

<i>at være indtagen</i> , to be taken with	<i>et Dampskib</i> , a steamboat
<i>at beslutte</i> , to determine	<i>et Kompagni</i> , a company
<i>at indsatte</i> , to instal	<i>en Plads</i> , a place, situation
<i>at erhverve</i> , to acquire	<i>en Forretning</i> , a business
<i>at udnævne</i> , to nominate	<i>en Sag</i> , a case, matter
<i>at trampe</i> , to stamp, trample	<i>sagkyndig</i> , conversant with a subject
<i>at fare afsted</i> , to rush away	<i>(en) Erfarenhed</i> , experience, skill
<i>at være i Færd med</i> , to be on the point	<i>en Kontorist</i> , a clerk in a counting-house
<i>at besøge</i> , to visit	<i>(en) Gallop</i> , a gallop
<i>at vente</i> , to wait	<i>en Hestehov</i> , a horse's hoof.
<i>at forlade</i> , to leave	
<i>at forlade sig på En</i> , to trust to one	

READING.

To translate into English.

Uddrag af "Tilfjælds i Ferierne, eller Jæger- og Fiskerliv i Højfjældene," af J. A. Friis.

(Extract from "On the Fjelds in the Holidays, or the Life of the Huntsman and Fisherman on the high Fjelds," by J. A. Friis.)

Det er ofte komisk¹ at se mangan Fluefisker² kaste sin Flue³ hen på Steder⁴ i en Höl⁵ eller Dele af Elv, hvor den Erfarne⁶ ikke vil væde en Töm,⁷ og igen undlade⁸ at prøve der, hvor Fisken netop helst plejer⁹ at stå.

Det Hele går på Slump.¹⁰

¹ comical
² fly-fisher
³ fly
⁴ places

⁵ a hole (Norw.)
⁶ expert
⁷ line (Norw.)

⁸ omit
⁹ to be accustomed
¹⁰ hap-hazard

I Reglen er det altid bedst at fiske ovenfra nedover, af den gode Grund,¹ at de største Fisk, som för sagt, stå överst oppe i Hölene.

Man nærmer sig altså Hölen med den Forudsætning,² at Fisken ikke er blind, men at man bliver sét af denne. Kan man derfor allerede ovenfra Hölen have "længet Tømmen"³ således, at man med en Gang kan gøre et smukt Kast⁴ ned i den överste Del af samme, uden at komme lige⁵ ned til den, eller i en Afstand⁶ af 8—10 Alen, er det bedst.

Det har oftere hændt⁷ mig, at jeg netop i den alleröverste Del af en Höl, tæt⁸ inde ved Land, på ganske grundet⁹ Vand, ved første Kast med Fluen, efter formelig¹⁰ at have luret mig ned¹¹ enten bag Træer eller en stor Sten, har fået en større Fisk, end jeg senere har sét ned over hele Hölen. Havde man gået i Syne¹² af denne lige ned til Stranden og begyndt med at gøre, som sædvanligt, nogle Småkast¹³ for at få Tømmen lang, vilde man ikke blot have skræmt¹⁴ den, men også andre fra sin Plads, og i Elve, hvor der ofte fiskes med Flue, gjort den så sky,¹⁵ at de på en lang Stund¹⁶ ikke vilde vove¹⁷ at hoppe.¹⁸

FORTY-SIXTH EXERCISE.

I.

I am bound to tell you that I am not able (in a position) to pay you the money which I owe you. Perhaps when you obtain the situation which the head-clerk, Mr. Thorlingen, promised you in the steam-boat company's office, you will be able to pay me some of the money which you owe me. That I will, with the greatest pleasure; but I ought to tell you, it is said that

¹ reason

² assumption

³ run out the line

⁴ throw

⁵ quite

⁶ distance

⁷ happened to

⁸ close to

⁹ shallow

¹⁰ almost

¹¹ laid in wait

¹² in sight

¹³ short throws

¹⁴ frightened

¹⁵ timid

¹⁶ a long time

¹⁷ venture

¹⁸ rise

the director of the company has resolved, that no clerk is in future to be nominated to a place in the office, who has not acquired some experience in business-transactions of a similar character to these. I was in the act of going out when he came running towards me with a letter in his hand, which had just arrived from my wife in Sweden. The peasant was working in his field when a troop of cavalry came tearing across the (farm) place, trampling under the hoofs of their horses everything that lay in the way, as they dashed off in full gallop.

II.

His brother is more prepossessing than he is, but yet he ought not to take so much upon himself in his relations with (in regard to) his family. The consul was sitting writing while I was with him. It seems to me he ought not to have been writing while a friend was calling on him (paying him a visit). I do not know how the consul could write while his secretary, Mr. Lang, was standing at the table and talking the whole time. I had to wait a whole hour before I could speak to the consul, and since I left him I have been writing for three hours. You must be tired after having done so much. Mr. Samuelsen is a very expert fisherman; he has often succeeded (it has often happened to him) in getting a large salmon the first time he threw his line into the water. I have no experience in fishing, and I do not think I have ever thrown (wetted) a line. What kind of flies do you use when you fish in Esrom lake? I use small silver-white flies when I fish in shallow water close to land.

FORTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

ON ADVERBS, etc. (*Bjæld o.s.v.*)

I. Some adverbs are used in Danish as adjectives ; as for example :—

en særdeles Tildragelse, a peculiar occurrence
hun har anvendt temmelig Flid, she has shown tolerable industry.

II. Adverbs may be transposed and fused into verbs ; as for example :—

Manden som er her } the man who is here
den herværende Mand }

III. The adverbs *ja* and *jo*, yes, cannot be indifferently used, thus :—

A. *Ja* is used in answer to a question which is affirmative ; as for example :—

er De her? ja! are you here? yes!

It may also be employed as an exclamation, or interjection ; as for example :—

han bad mig, ja, bønfaaldt mig endog med Tårer derom, he begged me, nay, implored me even with tears.

B. *Jo* is used in answer to a question which involves a doubt, or implies a denial ; as for example :—

er De ikke dér? jo! are you not there? yes!

It is also used to give emphasis to a negative proposition, and, in some cases, as an ironical interjection ; as for example :—

du var jo ikke her før...jo, jeg var, thou wast not here before...yes, I was.
jo, det var smukt! oh! that was grand!

Jo...jo, desto are used as comparative or relative conjunctions ; as for example :—

jo længere, jo værre, the longer the worse
jo mer han eftertænkte sin Forfatning, desto mer blev han bestyrket i sit Forsæt, the more he reflected on his condition, the more he was confirmed in his resolution.

IV. Some adverbs and conjunctions require to stand in a certain correlation to each other; as for example:—

ligeså...som, as...as
ikke alene...men endnu, ...endog } not only...but
ej blot...men også
dels...dels, partly...partly.

han er ligeså stor som jeg, he is just as tall as I am.

hun er ikke alene uskyldig, men fortjener endog Belønning, she is not only innocent, but she even deserves recompense.

at le, to laugh
at regere, to rule
at besørge, to care for
at anskaffe, to procure
at indrette, to prepare
at føje sig, to submit
at snakke, to chatter
at spise, to eat, dine
at løbe, to run
at sylte, to pickle, preserve
dum, stupid
sulten, hungry
tørstig, thirsty
snaksom, talkative
omkring, round about
en Lærer, -inde, teacher
en Skyld, a fault

en Karakter, a character
en Bagtaler, fem. -ske, a slanderer
en Bekendt, acquaintance
et Bekendskab, an acquaintance-
ship
(et) Syltetøj, sweetmeats
en Agurk, a cucumber
en Agurkesalat, sliced cucumber
en Eddike, vinegar
(en) Mad, food, meal
Aftensmad, supper
hvor som helst, anywhere
hvad som helst, whatever
fuldkommen, quite, perfectly
en Fægtning, a fight
en Gartner, a gardener.

READING.

To translate into English.

Extract from the Christiania Daily Paper "MORGENBLADET."

In this extract the spelling has been left as in the original. The student will observe that the double *a* is used instead of *å*, and that *i* is used instead of *j* in such words as *Øjeblik*, while, on the other hand, *j* is inserted in *igjen* (*igen*), etc., where the modern system of orthography has discarded it as useless.

Fra Throndhjem 15de Decbr.—Der er afgaaet et Par Dampskibe til Levanger med Fødemidler¹ osv.,² ved hvilken Leilighed flere Privatmænd, hvoriblandt specielt nævnes³ DHrr. Jenssen & Ko., Jenssen & Sønner og H. T. Jenssen,

¹ provisions

² et cetera (in words:
og så videre)

³ amongst whom are
specially named

Konsul Lundgreen m. fl.,¹ skal have vist megen Gavmildhed,² der kommer vel med og er et godt Exempel. Den nedsatte Komite,³ som skal indsamle Bidrag,⁴ har inddelt⁵ Byen i Distrikter, i hvilke Listerne cirkulere.⁶

Vi henstiller⁷ til dem, som indkjøbe Julegaver til den forestaaende Fest,⁸ at betænke, hvilke kjærkomne Julegaver⁹ der vil kunne gives til de mange virkelig nødlidende¹⁰ i vor Nærhed, hvoraf mange, om de end hjælpes noget i Øieblikket, dog ere blevne blottede for sin Smule høist fornødne Løsøre.¹¹ Hr. Sogneprest Pienes Opraab indeholder¹² en levende og talende Beskrivelse over Nöden.

Iaften Kl. 8 sendtes Dampskibet "Nea" til Levanger med mange Fornödenhedsartikler¹³ samt 1660 Kroner fra Indsamlingskomiteen.¹⁴ Her viser sig overhovedet megen Deltagelse¹⁵ og Villighed til at hjælpe.

Den Tanke hörer vi dukke op¹⁶ paa mange Kanter,¹⁷ om det er rimeligt,¹⁸ at man, efterat Levanger By, af Störrelse omtrent 1000 Indbyggere¹⁹ ialt, er opbrændt saa godt som totalt,—bör indlade sig paa at føre den op igjen²⁰ paa dens gamle Sted, hvor den, efter længe at have været i Tilbagegang,²¹ end mere synes at mangle Betingelsen for Trivsel,²² naar Svensketrafiken²³ ved Jernbanen föres ganske forbi Stedet. Hvis der for Alvor²⁴ skulde blive Spørgsmaal²⁵ om at sløife²⁶ Byen, maatte der vel hertil banes Adgang²⁷ ved et Forlig med Brandforsikringsindretningen om, at Erstatnings-

¹ *med flere*, with others

² *liberality*

³ *the committee appointed*

⁴ *collect contributions*

⁵ *divided*

⁶ *lists are sent round*

⁷ *propose*

⁸ *coming festival*

⁹ *welcome Christmas gifts*

¹⁰ *suffering want*

¹¹ *stripped of their trifle of much needed belongings*

¹² *the parish-minister Pienes appeal contains*

¹³ *necessary articles*

¹⁴ *collecting committee*

¹⁵ *very great sympathy*

¹⁶ *come to the surface*

¹⁷ *sides*

¹⁸ *reasonable*

¹⁹ *inhabitants*

²⁰ *undertake to raise it up again*

²¹ *decline, decay*

²² *requirements for prosperity*

²³ *Swedish traffic*

²⁴ *seriously*

²⁵ *question*

²⁶ *raze*

²⁷ *opening made*

summen¹ blev at yde uden Forpligtelse til at gjenopføre Bygningerne.² Hertil vilde maaske udkræves³ ialfald kgl. Resol.⁴ om ikke en Storthingsbeslutning.⁵

FORTY-SEVENTH EXERCISE.

I.

You have not seen the soldiers who have come back, have you? Yes, I have, I saw them as they were coming back from their last engagement. The reigning prince is not beloved by his subjects, and the longer he reigns the less he accommodates himself to their wishes. It is not only on account of her being so talkative that we care so little for her visits, but also on account of her being at the same time the greatest slanderer of our acquaintance. The boy is not only idle, but he is stupid, and I think that his sister is just as idle and still more stupid. That is a pretty character to give the children of one's best friend. You may laugh if you will, but it is quite true. It may perhaps not be the parents' fault that the children are stupid; that may be due to (come from) nature, but it certainly is their fault that the children are idle, partly because they let them run about when and as (how) they like, and partly because they give themselves no trouble to procure them efficient teachers and governesses.

II.

The gardener has not yet brought us flowers from the garden, but he will soon bring some. Is the garden far from here? Not at all (quite the contrary), it is

¹ towards an arrangement with the fire insurance company that the compensation-money

² payable without obligation to re-erect the buildings
³ require

⁴ royal decree
⁵ resolution of the Storting

close to the house. My son has been in the garden from this morning until now, and he is both hungry and tired. You must tell the servant to get the supper ready as soon as possible, so that the young gentleman may get something to eat. If the servant should ask what he is to bring, only tell him to bring whatever there happens to be at hand: cold meat, ham, tongue, cheese, cucumber, preserves; the more things the better. The servant says he will attend to what you say (do all that you require) as soon as he can.

FORTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

ON PREPOSITIONS (*Forholdsord*).

I. Some prepositions admit of being placed after, instead of before the words which they govern, and thus lose their predominant characteristic; as for example, in sentences of the following kind:—

han gik mig forbi, he went past (by) me.

Dem var det ikke han talte om, it was not you of whom he spoke.

det var mig som hun gav det til, it was to me she gave it.

den Bekymring kunne vi være foruden, that consideration need not trouble us.

luk Døren op, open the door.

luk ikke Døren i (til), do not shut the door.

der er Skuffen hvor jeg lagde det i, there is the drawer in which I laid it.

der ligger Bunken hvor jeg tog det af, there lies the heap from which I took it.

tag Deres Kåbe på, put on your cloak.

The following prepositions do not admit of this mode of transposition, but must always precede the words which they govern:—

foran, before
bag, behind
ifølge, according to
næst, next to
ovenfor, above
indenfor, within

nedenfor, below
henimod, towards
samt, together with
ved Siden af, by the side of
uden, without.

II. Prepositions in Danish generally govern the ablative, or perhaps more correctly speaking, the dative, since the language scarcely admits of a definite distinction between these two cases. But where we have to indicate a movement from one spot to another, or a transition from one condition to another, the preposition governs the accusative.

The distinction between rest and motion is, however, most frequently shown in Danish by the help of an adverb placed before the preposition; as for example:—

at gå ind i Stuen, to go into the room.

at gå inde i Stuen, to walk about in the room.

at flytte et Træ ned (ud, ind, hen, om) i Haven, to move a tree down (into, from one place to another) in the garden.

at flytte et Træ i Haven, to move a tree in the garden.

Fra and *i*, in the same manner as *til*, require to be followed by a genitive in certain relations of place and time; as for example:—

at gå fra Bords, to leave the table.

vi vare der i Mandags, we were there on (last) monday.

Ad and *af*, which through a careless mode of pronunciation, may be made to sound very nearly alike, ought to be carefully distinguished, the former meaning “on,” “towards,” and the latter “off,” “away,” as will be seen in the following examples:—

han gik ad Skoven til, he went towards the wood.

han gik af Vejen, he went off the road.

at betyde, to signify
at gøre Nar, to make a fool
at spille, to act, play
at hilse, to greet
at voide, to cause
at gribe, to seize
at straffe, to punish
at skrække, to frighten

en Amtmand, a magistrate
en Fortræd, a vexation
et Fængsel, a prison
en Gæld, a debt
en Frihed, a liberty
et Oprør, an uproar, riot
en Straf, a punishment
en Skræk, a terror
en Mening, an opinion.

READING.

To translate into English.

Uddrag af "De tre nordiske Rigers Historie," af C. F. ALLEN.

(Extract from "The History of the three Northern Kingdoms
by C. F. Allen.)

Christiern¹ den Anden ankom til Nederlandene² sidst i Juli 1524 og forblev³ her til den 13 Marts 1526, da han vendte tilbage til Tydskland. I Nederlandene traf han sin Ægtefælle,⁴ som omtrent en Måned tidligere havde begivet sig herhid⁵ til sin Faster⁶ Margrete, og sine Börn, som under Forældrenes Ophold⁷ i Tydskland havde været overgivne til Margretes Varetægt.⁸ Christiern den Anden nåede⁹ Nederlandene, som vi vide, ikke uden at have været udsat¹⁰ for Fare¹¹ for sit Liv eller sin Frihed, og en hel Hær¹² af Sorger og Bekymringer, som havde forfulgt¹³ ham i Tydskland, fulgte med ham til Nederlandene. Han var nedbøiet,¹⁴ men ikke knækket;¹⁵ thi al hans Hu¹⁶ og Tragten¹⁷ gik fremdeles¹⁸ ud på at finde Midler¹⁹ til sine Rigers Gjen-erobring,²⁰ eller i det Mindste til at skade²¹ sine Fjender så meget som muligt: derpå pønsede²² han både ved Dag og ved Nat. Foruden de øvrige Tryk,²³ hvorunder han led,²⁴ forbittredes²⁵ ham Opholdet i Nederlandene ved det uvenlige Sind, han altid mødte²⁶ hos Regentinde Margrete. Hun havde Intet tilovers for ham²⁷ fra den Tid, han var regerende Konge, da han i de sidste Aar, sköndt²⁸ ikke uden gyldig Grund,²⁹ var optrådt fjendtlig³⁰ mod Nederlandene; og hendes Stemning³¹ imod ham forbedredes ikke, da han kom

¹ Christian² Netherlands³ remained⁴ consort⁵ hither⁶ father's sister⁷ sojourn⁸ guardianship⁹ reached¹⁰ exposed¹¹ danger¹² army, array¹³ pursued¹⁴ bowed down¹⁵ crushed¹⁶ desire¹⁷ aim¹⁸ moreover¹⁹ means²⁰ kingdom's recon-
quering²¹ injure²² ponder²³ besides the other
difficulties²⁴ suffered²⁵ embittered²⁶ encountered²⁷ she had borne him
no good will²⁸ although²⁹ valid grounds³⁰ shown himself hos-
tile³¹ disposition

som Flygtning,¹ fordreven fra sine Riger, krævede² Hjælp og manede om Betalingen af sit Tilgodehavende,³ men især⁴ var hun bleven opfyldt af Bitterhed mod ham, da han var gået over til den lutherske Vranglære,⁵ og ikke blot det, men havde, som hun sagde, forført⁶ sin Dronning, Kejserens Søster, til det Samme, og derved sat en Plæt⁷ på det kejserlige⁸ Huses Ære.

FORTY-EIGHTH EXERCISE.

I.

Who are you talking to? I am talking to the peasant-woman's little boy. Where is the little boy going (to)? He is going into town to sell his mother's chickens. My brother has come from home, and he says the town is in an uproar. What is the reason of it? In his opinion it is not an affair of any consequence; but at the same time it must be admitted that the men in authority whom he spoke to were all in a state of terror, and were intending to have the soldiers brought into the town. According to my brother's opinion some strangers had been making fools of these gentlemen, most of whom are (up in years) elderly. What did he wear? He wore his black coat. Were you at the theatre last Thursday? No, I was not there. It is said that the actress, Mrs. Petersen, has killed herself with a dagger. When did this occur? Her death must have happened within an hour after she came home from the theatre, where she acted that evening in the new tragedy. What has become of the Swedish lady who was here in the summer? I do not at all know where she has gone.

¹ fugitive
² sought for

³ importuned her for
payment of what
was due
⁴ especially

⁵ Lutheran heresy
⁶ misled
⁷ a stain
⁸ imperial

II.

Be so good as to go into the room, you will find the lady and her children there. There is the man who caused me that annoyance ; I will have nothing more to do with him. I know the man of whom you are speaking, he sat next to me last evening ; but as soon as I knew who he was I got up, and went from him without taking any notice of him. As you may believe, there is no friendship between him and me. Where does the watchmaker live from whom you bought your watch ? I do not know his address, it was not to me he gave his address. The man of whom you are speaking is in prison for debt. When will the poor fellow come out ? That I cannot tell you, but according to what (as) I hear, the woman is afraid that her husband will never be set free ; but I believe she need have no such apprehension ; the man will most likely come out of prison when the usual time of punishment expires.

LIST OF GEOGRAPHICAL AND OTHER TERMS.

(*en*) *Natur*, nature
en Grund, a ground, land
et Land, a land, country
en Sö, a sea
et Hav, an ocean
en Flod
en Elv (Norw.) } a river
en Flod, a flood-tide
en Ebbe, an ebb, low tide
(*det*) *Store Bælt*, the Great Belt
Bælterne, the Belts
Öresundet, the Sound
Österlandet, the East
Östersjön, the Baltic
Vesterhavet, the Atlantic
Fastlandet, the Continent
en Ö, an island
et Bjærg, a mountain

en Dal, a valley
en Halvö, a peninsula
et Forbjærg, a promontory
et Højland, a highland
Højlandene i Skotland, the Highlands
Nederlandene, the Netherlands
(*et*) *Danmark*, Denmark
(*et*) *Slesvig*, Slesvig
(*et*) *Jylland*, Jutland
en Jyde, a Jutlander
jydsk, jutish
(*et*) *Köbenhavn*, Copenhagen
köbenhavnsk, of Copenhagen
(*et*) *Helsingör*, Elsinore
(*et*) *Kattegat*, the Kattegat
en Bugt, a bay
en Indsø, a lake

en Å, a rivulet
en Klint, a cliff
en Bæk,* a stream, little river
en Bredde, a longitude
en Breddegrad, a degree of longitude
en Høide, a latitude
en Høidegrad, a degree of latitude
en Bro, a bridge
en Havn, a port, haven
et Landingssted, a landing place
et Værft, a wharf
en Kanal, a canal
et Told, custom, duty
et Toldhus, a custom-house
en Strand, a strand
en Krig, a war
en Orlogsflede, a fleet of men-of-war

et Orlogsskib, a line of battle ship
en Båd, a boat
et Bådleje, berth for a boat
Bådlejen, the boat-hire
et Bådskur, a boat-shed
en Åre, an oar
et Ror, a rudder
at lystre Roret, to obey (answer) the helm
at ro, to row
et Sejl, a sail
et Anker, an anchor
et Tovværk, ropes, lines
et Flag, a flag
en Flagstang, a flagstaff
en Vimpel, a pennant
en Kanon, a cannon
en Kanonkugle, a cannon ball
en Fæstning, a fortress
en Vold, a rampart.

FORTY-NINTH LESSON.

ON SOME PREPOSITIONS

Forholdsord).

I. Some prepositions have the effect of making the noun with which they are combined, take a final *e* when the compound word is used adverbially; as for example: *ilive*, alive; *itide*, in time; *tildøde*, to death; *tilskamme*, for shame's sake; *medrette*, in justice.

The final *e* is retained even when the preposition and noun are decomposed into distinct words; as for example: *ad Åre*, years to come; *til Skamme*; *i Tide*, etc.

In this form we have either a survival of an otherwise extinct Northern dative in *e*, or a modification of the known Icelandic dative terminations *i* and *u*.

II. According to some grammarians, the final *s* in nouns, governed by such prepositions as *ul* and *i*, is used either elliptically, or for purposes of euphony, rather than to show that the preposition governs the genitive directly. This assumed elliptical character of the *s* is also shown in the case of *hos*; as for example: *hos Generalens*, which may be assumed to mean *hos Generalens Familie*, with the General's family.

The following examples illustrate the distinctive meanings conveyed by the prepositions *i*, *på*, *om*, *ad*, and *til*, when used with nouns indicative of periods of time. Thus, while *i*, in conjunction with a noun in the genitive (or a noun having the termination *es* or *s*), always refers to a past period, *i* with a noun in the accusative, without the termination *s*, may imply the present, like *om*, or the future, like *på*. *Ad* and *til* are used in a special, but somewhat arbitrary manner, as will be seen below :—

i Mandags, on (last) Monday
i Sommers, last summer
i Morges, this recently past morning
i Morgen, to-morrow
i Dag, to-day
om Dagen, in the day-time
i Går Aftes, last evening
i Aften, this evening
i Nat, to-night, last night
om Natten, at night
til Natten, for the night

på Søndag, on (next) Sunday
om Morgen, in the morning
Morgendags, to-morrow's
om Tirsdagen, on Tuesdays
i År, this year
ad Åre, years to come
idag om et År, this day twelve-month
til Års, in years
År for År, year by year
engang om Året, once a year.

The word *Nat* affords an exception to the rule, that the noun following the preposition *i* must end in *s*, when a past period of time is indicated. Thus, for instance, we say *i Nat*, and never *i Nats*, to indicate the preceding night, and consequently the difference between *i Nat*, *this* night, and *i Nat*, *last* night, can only be shown by the general meaning of the context, as in the following examples :—

i Nat kunde jeg ikke sove, I could not sleep last night.
i Nat går jeg tidlig til Sengs, to-night I shall go early to bed.

The difference of meaning between *på* and *om*, when used

before the names of the days of the week, will be seen by the following examples :—

kommer han måske på Søndag ? will he be likely to come on Sunday ?
nej ! om Søndagen rejser han bestemt ikke, no ! on the Sunday (on Sundays) he will certainly not travel.

Om answers to the English *on, in, about*, when a slightly indefinite sense is to be expressed ; as for example :—

vi vente vor Fader om fjorten Dage, we expect our father in about a fortnight.
min Søster var her om Morgen, my sister was here in the morning

at synge, to sing
at besøge, to visit
at lande, to land
at være nødt til, to be obliged to
at beholde, to keep
at færdes (dep.), to travel
at besørges, to be frequented
at fortære, to consume
at forlade, to leave
at ligne, to be like
lige, just, like
ilgemåde, in the same manner
ligefrem, right onwards
en Bogholder, a bookkeeper

en Ild, a fire
en Ildløs } a conflagration
en Ildebrand }
en Flamme, a flame
en Balle, a ball, bale
(en) Bomuld, cotton
Bomuldsgarn, cotton yarn
(en) Jord, earth
jordisk, earthly
underjordisk, subterranean
forskellig, different
sildig, sent, late
en Sædvane, a custom
sædvanlig, usual.

READING.

To translate into English.

Uddrag af “De tre nordiske Rigers Historie,” af C. F. ALLEN.

(Extract from “The History of the three Northern Kingdoms,”
 by C. F. Allen).

Samtidige tillægge¹ Christian III et ualmindeligt² smukt Ydre³ og en Ynde⁴ i Væsen og Fremtræden,⁵ der gjorde, at han ligesom ved en Naturens Gave vandt⁶ Alle, med hvem han kom i Berørelse.⁷ Til Lærer eller som det kaldtes Tugtemester⁸ fik han, da han gik i sit 15de Ar, Wolf

¹ contemporaries
 ascribe

² uncommon

³ exterior

⁴ grace

⁵ in carriage and appearance

⁶ to win

⁷ contact

⁸ tutor

Utenhoff, der siden blev Kong Frederiks højt betroede Kanstler;¹ Johan Rantzau blev nogle År efter hans Hofmester.² Christian synes i sin Ungdom at have havt et glad og let Hjærte og Noget af en Spögefugl³ i sig. Det viser den bekendte Historie om hans Ophold⁴ på Rigsdagen⁵ i Worms 1521, hvor han ledsaget⁶ af Johan Rantzau var tilstæde⁷ og hørte Luther forsvare sin Sag⁸ for Kejseren og Tydsklands Fyrster⁹ og Herrer. En Dag hørte han en Munk¹⁰ af Gråbrödreordenen prædike¹¹ i Slotskirken. Prædikanten¹² talte med stor Salvelse¹³ og var meget hæftig i sine Lader og Fagter,¹⁴ så han snart hævede sig til sin hele Højde, snart sank så dybt ned, at han næsten blev borte for Tilhørerne.¹⁵ Ved den sidste Bevægelse hændte det sig, at Enden af det Reb,¹⁶ som Gråbrödrene pleje at bære om Livet, faldt ned i en Sprække,¹⁷ der tilfældigvis var på Bunden af Prædikestolen. Hertug Christian, som bemærkede det, greb hurtigt Rebet og slog en Knude¹⁸ derpå. Det Råb af Skræk, som Munken udstødte,¹⁹ da han mærkede, han ikke kunde rejse sig,²⁰ frembragte først nogen Uro og Forvirring²¹ blandt de Forsamlede;²² men da man mærkede, hvorledes det hang sammen, blev der en almindelig Munterhed.²³ Kejseren, som var tilstæde, slog ind i Spögen²⁴ og sagde, "den unge Herre bliver næppe Munkene god."²⁵

¹ trusted chancellor² master of the household³ wag⁴ sojourn⁵ diet⁶ accompanied⁷ present⁸ defend his cause⁹ princes¹⁰ monk¹¹ preach¹² preacher¹³ unction¹⁴ movements¹⁵ audience, hearers¹⁶ rope¹⁷ slit¹⁸ tied a knot¹⁹ uttered²⁰ raise himself²¹ confusion²² assembled²³ general merriment²⁴ took part in (fell into) the joke²⁵ "the young prince is not likely to prove himself a friend to the monks."

FORTY-NINTH EXERCISE.

I.

She sings from early morning till late in the evening. My son goes out in the country on a Saturday, as soon as he is able to leave the office. What does he do on a Sunday? On the Sundays he generally dines at his grandfather's, but he sometimes makes a little excursion by water. Can I keep the book, which I borrowed last Sunday from your daughter, till this evening? You may keep it till the day after to-morrow, if you like. Thank you, then I will bring it on Thursday. Do you know that there was a fire this evening? No, I have been all day in the country at the clergyman's, and I have only this moment come into town. Was it a large fire, and was any one injured? It was a frightful fire; Hansen's private house and both his warehouses with seven hundred bales of cotton were entirely consumed by the flames; but, as far as I know, there was no one injured.

II.

The first time we went to England we landed towards evening on a summer's day. Did you remain all the time in London, or in any one of the provincial towns? We remained only about a fortnight in London, but you would hardly believe (it is almost incredible) how much we managed to see in that short time. It is impossible in such an enormous place to get on very far on foot, the distances between the different parts of the town are too great; one is obliged to drive, or, at all events, to go by the underground-railway, which runs right under the principal and most frequented streets. I think it must be dreadful to travel on such a railway; I would rather go above the ground than under it.

FIFTIETH LESSON.

ON THE USE OF CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS
AND CONJUNCTIONS.

I. The words *af, efter, for, med, om, over, til, ved* are frequently found in Danish governing an infinitive preceded by the conjunction *at*, and used as a gerund; as for example:—

jeg er ked af at høre den Mand tale, I am tired of hearing that man talk.

efter at gøre sig megen Umage, ønsker man at få Tak, after taking so much pains, one wishes to be thanked.

han kom ikke for at undskyldte sig, he did not come to exculpate himself.

Bonden var ved at arbejde, da jeg så ham, the peasant was working when I saw him.

hun var hjertelig glad over at se ham, she was heartily glad to see him.
her er ingen Plads til at sidde på, there is no place here to sit on.

II. In simple sentences not modified by any secondary clause, or where the subject is not indicated, some prepositions, as *om, til, over*, may be dispensed with; thus we may say, either: *der er ingen Plads at sidde på*, or: *der er ingen Plads til at sidde på*; but the preposition is imperatively required whenever the subject is expressed, as: *han havde Møje med at vende sig om*, he had a difficulty in turning round.

When the infinitive is used in apposition to a noun, no preposition precedes it; as for example:—

den gode Skik at stå tidligt op, the good habit of getting up early.

at spørge efter, to enquire for
at indbyde, to invite
at foretage, to undertake
at forsyne, to provide
at vide, to know
at lave, to prepare, make
at læse, to fasten, lock
at søge, to seek
at tabe, to lose

at mistænke, to distrust
på...nær, excepting
langt fra, far from
et Spørgsmål, a question
en Prøve, a trial, rehearsal
et Beslag, a requisition
at lægge Beslag på Ens Tid, to engross one's time
en Udsigt, a prospect.

en Grund, a ground, reason
en Frokost, a breakfast
en Top,* a top, summit
netop, precisely
et Bud, a message, messenger

(*et*) *Befindende*, state, condition
en Tilstand, a condition
en Efterretning, news, information
et Universitet, a university.

READING.

To translate into English.

Uddrag af "De tre nordiske Rigers Historie," af C. F. ALLEN.

(Extract from "The History of the three Northern Kingdoms,"
 by C. F. Allen).

Staden¹ Lier, hvor Christiern den Anden, sköndt med en lang Afbrydelse² fra 1526—28, da han var i Tydskland, havde sit Ophold lige, til 1531, får af en Forfatter³ der ved Midten af samme Arhundrede forfattede⁴ en Beskrivelse af Nederlandene (L. Guicciardini) det Skudsmål,⁵ at det i Sandhed er en god og behagelig lille By, hvis Indbyggere⁶ ere godmodige, sindige,⁷ höflige og omgængelige.⁸ Den ligger, som sagt, ved Äen⁹ Nethe, der står i Forbindelse med Schelde, så at ved Højvande ikke ganske små Skibe kunne komme op til Byen. Den er rundtomkring omgivet¹⁰ af et frugtbart, af mange Älöb¹¹ gennemskåret¹² Sletteland¹³ med dansk Præg¹⁴ og Tone. Den kunde således minde¹⁵ de Danske, som Skæbnen her havde henkastet, om Næstved med Susåen eller en anden sjællandsk By med lignende Omgivelser,¹⁶ og, når ikke Andet havde været i Vejen, vilde have kunnet føle sig hjemlige og vel her blandt en Befolkning,¹⁷ der var så venlig og omgængelig. Sproget kunde ikke gøre store Vanskeligheder,¹⁸ da Indbyggerne den Gang talte flamsk,¹⁹ hvilket Tungemål²⁰ de endnu til vore Dage

¹ town

² although with a long interval

³ author

⁴ wrote

⁵ character (*lit.*: object aimed at)

⁶ inhabitants

⁷ orderly

⁸ courteous and sociable (*Omgang*, intercourse)

⁹ small stream

¹⁰ surrounded

¹¹ rivulets, water-runs

¹² intersected

¹³ flat-lands

¹⁴ character

¹⁵ remind

¹⁶ surroundings

¹⁷ population

¹⁸ difficulties

¹⁹ Flemish

²⁰ mother-tongue

med roesværdig Udholdenhed have hævdet¹ mod det mægtige franske Sprogs Påtrængenhed.² Kongen levede på den bedste Fod med Liers Indbyggere og var afholdt³ af dem, ikke blot for den Fordel,⁴ de havde af hans og hans talrige Følges Ophold⁵ hos dem, men også for den jævne og ligefremme Måde, hvorpå han omgikkes dem.⁶ Der var i denne som i de fleste nederlandske Byer på den Tid flere Skydegilder.⁷ Af et af dem, det såkaldte Colveniers-Gilde, var Kong Christiern Medlem⁸ og deltog⁹ i dets Skydefester.¹⁰ Ved en af de årlige Fugleskydninger nedskød¹¹ Kongen, som var en ypperlig Skytte¹² både med Bue og Bøsse,¹³ Fuglen, og blev således Gildets Fuglekonge for det Ar.

FIFTIETH EXERCISE.

I.

With the exception of the son, the whole family was ill. He had lost all he had with him on his journey, excepting a few pieces of money. As soon as he heard of his wife's illness, he went out into the country to her, and when he had seen her, and heard what the doctor thought of her condition, he came back to town to his little children. How is the poor woman now? From what I hear, she is not nearly as ill as was supposed, but if you wish to know what state she is in now, I will send a message to her husband to enquire how she is. I have been invited to take a part in a play. Have you settled upon any piece? No, not yet, for we do not know how many of our friends will help us. When is the first rehearsal to take place? Next week, if possible. Are

¹ praiseworthy persistence had maintained

² encroachment

³ esteemed

⁴ advantage

⁵ numerous followers' sojourn

⁶ plain, straightforward manner in which he associated with them (omgå, to go about with)

⁷ shooting guilds

⁸ member

⁹ took part

¹⁰ shooting festivals

¹¹ shot down

¹² capital shot

¹³ bow and gun

you well supplied with ladies? Yes, we are. I think our ladies will do us (great) credit; we have not been so fortunate with our gentlemen, and we shall have to put some of our musical friends in requisition, to help us in the opera.

II.

Does your father know that you are making this purse for him? He accidentally came down to breakfast this morning earlier than usual, while I was working at it. I cannot open the door, it is locked. Has your friend succeeded in obtaining the place at the university that he was seeking? No, I am very sorry that there is no prospect of his getting it. Have you lost anything? All my money has just been stolen from me in the street. What ground have you for suspecting any one? I am certain I saw the man standing close beside me, when I was putting my purse into my pocket.

FIFTY-FIRST LESSON.

ON THE USE OF CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

(*Bindeord*).

I. The conjunctions *at*, that; *hvis*, if; *ifald*, in case, if; *når*, when; *dersom*, if, may be omitted, when the second co-ordinate part of a compound sentence expresses the main idea; as for example:—

jeg så (at) han faldt, I saw that he fell.

vidste jeg det (dersom jeg vidste det), *spurgte jeg ikke derom*, had I known it (if I had known it), I should not have asked about it.

II. The proportional conjunction *jo* requires to be followed by *jo*, when it stands in a short and simple sentence, but in compound sentences, or in sentences consisting of several subordinate clauses, *jo* is more generally followed by *desto* or *des*; as for example:—

jo mere jo bedre, the more the better.

jo oftere jeg ser hende, jo mer holder jeg af hende, the oftener I see her, the more I like her.

jo mere han eftertænkte sin Forfatning — de få Venner han havde, og de mange Fjender der bestræbte sig for at tilintetgøre hans Lykke — desto mere blev han bestyrket i sit Forsæt, the more he considered his circumstances—the few friends he had, and the many enemies who endeavoured to destroy his happiness—the more he was confirmed in his resolution.

III. After correlative, or compound, conjunctions, the predicate may in ordinary conversation be omitted at the close of the secondary part of the sentence; as for example:—

han er lige så flittig som du (er), he is just as diligent as you are.

han er ikke alene flink i Norsk, men også i Tysk, he is not alone expert (well-versed) in Norwegian, but also in German.

IV. The repetition, or omission, of prepositions and copulative conjugations depends very much, as in English, upon the nature of the sentence, the repeated use of the preposition giving force or emphasis; as for example:—

Fuglene sang i Haverne, i Skovene, på Træerne, på Hegnene, overalt, the birds were singing in the gardens, in the woods, on the trees, on the hedges, everywhere.

at anfælde, to attack
at støde op til, to be next, to approach
at nedstøde, to knock down
at indeholde, to contain
at anrette, to cause, prepare
at tænde, to kindle
at straffe, to punish
at adoptere, to adopt
at bestå af, to consist in
at stride, to contend
at trættes, to dispute
at erstatte, to compensate
at give ud, to expend
at angå, to concern
at modsige, to contradict
at opnå, to obtain, attain

(*en*) *Prygl*, a beating
dygtig Prygl, a sound thrashing
en Landevej, a highroad
(*en*) *Fraværelse*, absence
en Ulykke, Skade, a mischief
en Straf,* a punishment
en Anstrængelse, labour, effort
en Ærgrelse, a vexation
en Kriger, a warrior
en Skribent, a writer
en Lue, a flame
en Bagatel,* a trifle
en Efterspørgsel, an investigation
at Forår, spring
gerrig, avaricious
nødvendig, necessary

READING.

To translate into English.

Uddrag af "Tilfjælds," af J. A. FRUUS.

Der var en Ridder¹ i Valders, som i lang Tid havde ligget i Strid² med Sandboridderen.³ Engang som Sandboridderen ikke var hjemme, tog Valdersridderen Lejligheden iagt,⁴ kom med sine Svende⁵ over Fjældet ned til Sandbo og afbrændte Gården. Ejeren,⁶ som straks efter kom hjem, samlede øjeblikkelig en Del Folk og satte efter Valdersen.⁷ Denne havde om Natten taget Kvarter⁸ på en Sæter, som hedder⁹ Fuglesæteren,¹⁰ og udstillet Vagter¹¹ rundt omkring. Sandboridderen og hans Folk red¹² hele Natten gennem, og da han mod Dagningen¹³ nærmede sig Sæteren, lod han sine Folk afhugge¹⁴ små Birketræer¹⁵ og holde disse foran¹⁶ sig og Hestene. I Begyndelsen mærkede Vagterne ikke Uråd,¹⁷ men da de tilslut¹⁸ tydeligt syntes, at Birkeskoven bevægede sig og kom nærmere, gjorde de Anskrig.¹⁹ Dog nu var det for silde. Sandboingerne faldt aver Valderserne og huggede dem ned, så samtlige²⁰ bleve på Valpladsen²¹ så nær som²² Valdersridderen selv og hans Våbendrager.²³ Disse undkom²⁴ tilhest og troede sig allerede reddede,²⁵ da de pludselig stødte²⁶ på Elven Sjoa, som med ubændig²⁷ Vildhed styrter²⁸ sig skummende²⁹ ned mellem bratte³⁰ Klippevægge.³¹ Fortvivlet³² standser Valdersridderen ved en Kløft, som tværs-

¹ knight² strife³ the knight of Sandbo⁴ at tage Lejligheden i
Agt, to take advantage of the opportunity⁵ serving men⁶ owner⁷ pursued the Valders knight⁸ quarters⁹ is called¹⁰ the Bird Sæter¹¹ posted guards¹² rode¹³ daybreak¹⁴ hew off¹⁵ birch¹⁶ before¹⁷ danger¹⁸ tilslut (Norw.), at length; (til Slutning, in the end)¹⁹ gøre Anskrig, give the alarm²⁰ one and all²¹ field of battle²² excepting²³ page, weapon bearer²⁴ escaped²⁵ saved²⁶ came upon²⁷ irrepressible²⁸ dash²⁹ foaming³⁰ steep³¹ rocky walls³² in despair

over¹ vistnok² ikke er mere end 8 Alen bred, men Stranden på modsatte³ Side er høj og Klippevægen aldeles glat.⁴ Dog de forfølgende⁵ Fjender give ham intet Valg,⁶ han hopper af Hesten, sætter i fuld Rustning⁷ tilsprangs⁸ over Gabet⁹ og er så heldig at få Fodfæste¹⁰ på den modsatte Side af dette Svælg,¹¹ som endnu den Dag i Dag¹² hedder "Ridderspranget." Våbendrageren springer efter, men tumler¹³ tilbage igen og styrter redningsløs¹⁴ i Afgrunden¹⁵ til Skræk og Advarsel¹⁶ for Enhver, der vilde forsøge Spranget.¹⁷ Valdersridderen undkom, men måtte senere afstå¹⁸ Hejmdalsvandet til Gjæslingerne,¹⁹ og det har siden i 700 Åar tilhørt Gården Sandbo, indtil det, Skam at fortælle,²⁰ for nogle Åar siden blev solgt til en Engelskmand for en Spotpris²¹ af så eller så mange Hundrede Speciedaler.²²

FIFTY-FIRST EXERCISE.

I.

If I am too late for the boat, I need not remain here. If he wishes to discover it, I will give him all the necessary directions. The warrior does battle with his sword, the writer with his pen. Will you take a seat here by the side of my wife and myself? He is a Frenchman by birth, but an American by adoption. They are only contending about a trifle, and not about anything important. If the boy should do that again, he will certainly get a sound thrashing. We came back over land and sea, mountains and rivers, and now we shall probably never make a long journey again. The more money an avaricious man

¹ right across

² certainly

³ opposite

⁴ smooth

⁵ pursuing

⁶ choice

⁷ armour

⁸ to make a spring
(Norw.)

⁹ chasm

¹⁰ foot-hold

¹¹ chasm

¹² to this day

¹³ to fall

¹⁴ without chance of
saving

¹⁵ abyss

¹⁶ warning

¹⁷ leap (Norw.)

¹⁸ give up

¹⁹ (the name of a family)

²⁰ shame to say

²¹ dead bargain

²² specie dollars

acquires, the less he spends. The more enquiries the lawyer made in reference to the stranger, who was attacked and ill-treated on the highroad near the royal castle at Birkelund last spring, the more contradictory was the information that he obtained concerning the man.

II.

How that man has travelled ! Why, he has been in England, in Scotland, in America, in France, in Spain, and in many other countries. I wish I could travel far and wide, as he has done. And he, perhaps, wishes that he had a happy home and dear children, as you have. I should not like to have so few friends as he has.

Sir Isaac Newton had a little dog which he called "Diamond." One day when Sir Isaac was called into an adjoining room, Diamond remained behind, and when he returned after only a few minutes absence, he had the vexation to see that some papers containing the almost completed work of many years' labour were in flames, owing to Diamond having knocked over a lighted candle. The loss was irreparable, but without punishing the dog, he only exclaimed : "Oh ! Diamond ! Diamond ! you little know what mischief you have done !"

FIFTY-SECOND LESSON.

ON THE USE OF CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS (*Bindeord*).

I. Some verbs, as *at håbe*, to hope ; *at tro*, to believe ; *at tænke*, to think ; *at forstå*, to understand ; *at mægte*, to be able ; *at ønske*, to wish ; *at bede*, to entreat, etc., may take another verb as an object, in which case the latter must be put in the infinitive, and be preceded by the conjunction *at* ; as for example :—

jeg håber at se Dig, I shall hope to see ye.
han forstår at spille på Klaver, he knows how to play the piano.

II. The conjunction *at* is not used before the infinitive, when the preceding and governing verb belongs either to the group of the auxiliaries, or to verbs of perception ; as for example :—

jeg tør ikke gøre det, I dare not do it.
han burde gå, he ought to go.
vi hørte ham sige det, we heard him say it.
de så hende give ham Bogen, they saw her give him the book.

III. Although, in Danish, the general rule is recognised, that the verb “to be,” or any other verb in a similar sense, should have the same case after as before it, an exception is made when the verb may be considered to be used as an impersonal ; as for example :—

det var mig, it was I.
er det dig ? is it thou ?
ja, det er mig, yes, it is I.

Through custom, more than on any sound grammatical grounds, the Danes have been led to accept as an established rule, that the objective case should always be used after the verb “to be” in such sentences as the following :—

hvis du var mig vilde du ikke gøre det, if you were *me* you would not do it.

at glemme, to forget
at banke, to knock
at være på Færde, to be about,
 to happen
hvad er der på Færde ? what is
 the matter ?
at rette sig, to conform to
at vinde, to win
at tabe } to lose
at miste }
at værges, to defend
passende, suitable

at stå op, to get up
at sy, to sew
taus, silent
et Råd, an advice
Tierne (pl.), tens
en Dame, the queen (in games)
en Makker, a partner (at cards)
et Kort, a card
*et Es,** an ace
*et Spil,** a game
en Verden, a world
en Rænke, a machination.

READING

to translate into English.

Uddrag af "To Tidsaldre," af Forfatteren til
 "En Hverdagshistorie."

(Extract from "Two Ages," by the author of "An Every-day Story.")

Ved Juletid¹ havde han det snilde Indfald² at bringe den lille Charles en hel Kurv fuld af Julegaver.³ Det barnlige Sind er næsten altid taknemmeligt.⁴ Den glade Dreng klyngede⁵ sig med Hjærtelighed til den milde Giver, der opstillede⁶ ham Huse, Træer, Soldater o. s. v. for at vise ham Brugen⁷ af de forskellige Herligheder,⁸ forklarede⁹ ham Billeder¹⁰ og især anviste¹¹ ham nogle små Spil og spillede dem med ham til en Prøve.¹² Dette var meget forstandigt beregnet¹³ på at trække¹⁴ Tiden ud. Charles jublede,¹⁵ og med moderlig og bedstemoderlig Interesse toge begge Fruentimmerne Del i deres Yndlings¹⁶ Glæde og Taknemmelighed.¹⁷ Det var Juledag. Den foregående¹⁸ Aften var i det simple Hus bleven festligholdt¹⁹ efter ringe Lejlighed.²⁰ Et lille Juletræ stod endnu i Stuen. Man oppyntede²¹ det påny²² med friske²³ Æbler, Kager og Lys, som man tændte²⁴ til Ære for den store Tilvæxt²⁵ af Julegaver. Baronens hjælp ved dette Arbejde. De to gamle Husvenner kom imidlertid²⁶ også og bragte deres lille Skærv.²⁷ De følte ingen synderlig²⁸ Fornøjelse ved at træffe²⁹ den uventede,³⁰ fornemme Gjæst, der også på sin Side ønskede dem til

¹ Christmas-time² ingenious idea³ Christmas presents⁴ grateful⁵ clung⁶ set up⁷ the use⁸ glorious things⁹ explained¹⁰ pictures¹¹ showed¹² by way of trial¹³ sensibly calculated¹⁴ draw out¹⁵ rejoiced¹⁶ darling¹⁷ gratitude¹⁸ preceding¹⁹ celebrated²⁰ humble means²¹ decorated²² again²³ fresh²⁴ to light²⁵ addition²⁶ in the meanwhile²⁷ mite²⁸ special²⁹ meet³⁰ unexpected

Bloksbjerg.¹ Men Husets Damer havde et så skönt Talent til at gøre Honneurs,² forenet³ med en så god Tone, at Enhver snart fandt sig på sin Plads. Baronen viste imidlertid de Nysankomne⁴ al Artighed,⁵ og de godmodige ældre Mænd kom snart i deres gamle Folder.⁶ Damerne bade Baronen at tage tiltakke⁷ hos dem, man satte sig om det tarvelige,⁸ men nette Bord i det bedste Lune,⁹ og tilbragte¹⁰ en Aften, der forekom¹¹ Enhver som et lyst Punkt¹² i Vinterens mørke¹³ Tid.

FIFTY-SECOND EXERCISE.

I.

Is it you, Mr. Svendsen, knocking at the door? Yes, it is I, if you will only let me come in, I will soon tell you what is the matter. Do you wish to speak to my father? No, I am not wanting to speak to him, but my nephew is, and he hopes to be able to see him as soon as possible. I do not know how that can be managed, because my father was not to get up to-day. I wish he could see your nephew, but I heard him say that he was far too unwell to be able to receive visits to-day. I hope to find him better the next time I call upon you; and I must say, if I were he, I would remain in bed a few days longer. I do not think he will do so, but I will, at all events, beg him to follow your advice.

II.

You ought to have won your game, as you had all the tens, kings, and queens, and three aces. I did think that we should have won the game, as my partner and I

¹ "wished them at Jericho"

² the honours

³ combined

⁴ newly arrived

⁵ civility

⁶ grooves, folds

⁷ be content with, make the best of

⁸ humble

⁹ temper

¹⁰ spent

¹¹ appeared to

¹² point

¹³ dark

had the best cards between us. Was it you, who saw him fall? No (it was not I), I saw him run away, but I did not see him fall. If he fell, it must have been after I lost sight of him. When my husband has to write in the evening, I dare not speak; I must sit silent at my sewing. We were obliged to wait three hours before we could see him; his servant did not know when he would be at home. Wheresoever I may go in the world, whether South, East, or West, I shall never forget my old home in the North. If I were in your place, I would never again go to that scoundrel, and I hope at all events that you will know how to defend yourself against his machinations. Your mother ought not to allow you to do it. It is an improper thing which should not be permitted

FIFTY-THIRD LESSON.

ON THE USE OF SOME OF THE AUXILIARIES.

I. The auxiliary *at have*, to have, may be omitted in Danish after the auxiliaries *burde*, *turde*, *kunne*, *ville*, *skulle*, *måtte*, when it indicates a past perfect, as for example:—

jeg kunde gjort det, I could (have) done it.

han burde været hjemme, he ought to (have) been at home.

The verb *at få* is often used by Norwegians, but scarcely ever by Danes, in the place of the auxiliary *at have*; as for example:—

når jeg får læst vil jeg gå ud, when I have (shall have) done reading,
I will go out.

II. The verbs *få*, *have*, *lade* admit of the verb which they govern being used in the active infinitive, as in English; as for example:—

jeg fik Lov til at gå, I got leave to go.
han har meget at bestille, he has a great deal to do.
hun lader Barnet gå, she lets the child go.

In some cases, however, the Danes employ the active infinitive after the above auxiliaries in a manner not admissible in English; as for example :—

min Broder lader et Hus bygge, my brother is having a house built.

III. The infinitive of verbs, whether active or passive, admits of being used in the sense of a nominative or objective noun; as for example :—

at elske sit Barn er en Moders største Pligt, to love her child is a mother's highest duty.
vi erhverve os vor Næstes Agtelse ved at være redelige, we gain the esteem of our neighbour by being upright.
at agtes er noget som Enhver skulde stræbe efter, to be esteemed is what every one should strive after.

The following examples will show the great similarity between English and Danish in regard to certain modes of using the infinitive :—

her er Plads nok til at stå, here is room enough to stand.
hun er god at arbejde for, she is good to work for.
det er vanskeligt at skrive om, that is a difficult thing to write about.
han er let at overtale, he is easy to persuade (talk over).
jeg har Intet at klage over, I have nothing to complain of.
det er ikke værd at græde for, it is not worth crying for.

at have i Sinde, to intend
at forlade sig på, to trust to
at spadseres, to take walks
at bedrage, to deceive
at indbilde sig, to imagine
at omgås, to associate with
at benægte, to deny
at afgøre, to settle
at ærgre sig, to worry oneself
at blande sig i, to meddle with
det er til ingen Nytte, it is of
 no use

behagelig, pleasant
et Løfte, a promise
en Næste, (Nabo) a neighbour
(et) Velbehag, pleasantness
et Anliggende, an affair, business
et Bud, a command, commandment
en Nægtelse, a denial
(en) Fornuft, sense
fornuftig, sensible.

READING

to translate into English.

Uddrag af "Fra Österland" (From the East), af P. Blom.

Ramazan er Mohammedanernes Fastemåned.¹ Den er en Efterabelse² af de Kristnes³ Fastetid, kun med den Forskel,⁴ at man for Dagens Forsagelser⁵ tager, sig rigeligt betalt i Nattens Forlystelser.⁶ Den falder i Arets* niende Måned. Mohamed valgte⁷ denne Måned til Fastemåned, fordi den Almægtige,⁸ som han sagde, havde forkyndt⁹ ham hans Sendelse¹⁰ på den niende Dag i denne Måned og Dagen derefter åbenbaret¹¹ ham Koranens første Kapitel.¹² I hele denne Måned, i hvilken det er befalet Profetens Tilhængere¹³ at faste hver Dag fra Dagbrækningen¹⁴ til Solnedgang,¹⁵ skulle de afholde¹⁶ sig fra at spise, drikke, ryge, og snuse Tobak,¹⁷ og fra at lugte på Essenser.¹⁸ Syge, Soldater i Krig og lidende Kvinder¹⁹ gøre en Undtagelse²⁰ herfra; men man forventer,²¹ at de indhente det Forsømte²² i en anden Måned. —

Blandt de forskellige Overtrædelser,²³ som gøre den daglige Faste ugyldig,²⁴ og som må afsnes²⁵ med overordentlig²⁶ Bøn og overordentlige Spegelser,²⁷ er Bagtalelse.²⁸

* Det mohammedanske År deles i 12 Månemåneder,²⁹ hvoraf seks indeholde trediv, og seks ni og tyve Dage. Således har Året 354 Dage, hvilket gør en Forskel af elleve Dage mellem vort og det mohammedanske. De mohammedanske Fester komme selvfølgelig³⁰ hvert År elleve Dage senere³¹ end det foregående.³²

¹ fasting month

² imitation, after-aping

³ Christians

⁴ difference

⁵ deprivations

⁶ amusements

⁷ chose

⁸ Almighty

⁹ announced

¹⁰ mission

¹¹ revealed

¹² chapter

¹³ enjoined upon the prophet's adherents

¹⁴ daybreak

¹⁵ sunset

¹⁶ abstain

¹⁷ take snuff, (snuff tobacco)

¹⁸ smell, inhale perfumes or essences

¹⁹ women

²⁰ exception

²¹ expect

²² atone for that which has been omitted

²³ transgressions

²⁴ invalid

²⁵ be atoned for

²⁶ extraordinary

²⁷ penance

²⁸ slander

²⁹ lunar months

³⁰ consequently

³¹ later

³² previous

Den daglige Fastes Begyndelse og Ende angives i Konstantinopel ved vældige Kanonskud¹ fra Batterierne ved Bosporus og det gyldne Horn. Når Ramazan falder i Sommertiden, er Fasten ofte såre pinlig.² Ikke at tale om, at det også er meget slemt for Tyrkerne at måtte undvære³ Tobak, da de i Regelen ere Slaver⁴ af den skadelige Tobaksrygning.⁵ — Man indtager det første Måltid⁶ straks efter Solnedgang og det sidste henimod Morgenens, da Fasten må være begyndt 20 Minutter før Bönnen i Dagbrækningen. Natten tilbringes af de Fornemme og Rige enten hjemme eller tilvogns, og af den lavere⁷ Klasse og de Fattige i Kaffe-husene, på Gaderne og de offentlige Pladse.⁸ I Kaffe-husene, hvoraf der gives en stor Mængde, musiceres,⁹ drikkes Kaffe og Scherbet, ryges Tobak og fortælles Nyheder¹⁰ og Historier.¹¹

FIFTY-THIRD EXERCISE.

I.

He ought to have taken the trouble to come to my house to-day. She should have trusted to her brother's promises. My master should have been here at ten o'clock to give me and my sisters our music lesson. We are wanting to go out for a walk, but now we are obliged to remain at home until we have played with him. To love God above all things, and one's neighbour as one self is the first (highest) commandment of Christianity. We shall secure God's approval if we are (by being) virtuous. The Swedish merchant is not so easily deceived (cheated). My cousin asks me about something of which it is somewhat difficult to speak. It is not at all agreeable to live with a person, who allows himself to be persuaded that he has a great deal to complain of. I am intending to let my little children learn dancing.

¹ loud firing of cannon

² sorely trying

³ dispense with

⁴ slaves

⁵ tobacco smoking

⁶ meal

⁷ lower

⁸ public places, squares

⁹ there is music

¹⁰ news

¹¹ tales

Is it true that your father is buying a pair of black horses and a handsome carriage? It is of no use for you to hurry; you will come too late to see the comedy. Do you imagine that her denial of her words has anything to do with the matter? The cause pending between her and me does not so easily admit of being decided.

II.

People often worry themselves when they ought not. Such a sensible person (lady) as you are, ought never to have worried yourself as you did yesterday. That is easily said, but no one knows where the shoe pinches, but he who wears it. Charles, have you done writing your French exercises? You ought to have written it this morning. Do not interfere in my affairs; I beg you will attend to your own concerns. I shall have my exercise written in good time; and if I do not, it is all the same to me. Who is upstairs? Where is Anna?—is it she, who is in the garden?—it is Charles. Is it he?—It is we—are you coming up to us? Was that you (thou)? Yes; it was I!

FIFTY-FOURTH LESSON.

ON THE USE OF THE PARTICIPLES (*Tillægsformerne*).

I. The present and past participles of most Danish verbs may be used in the sense of adjectives; as for example:—

en indbundet Bog, a bound book (a book that has been bound).

et fundet Ærme, a found sleeve (a sleeve that has been found)

en sørgende Enke, a sorrowing widow.

den overfyldte Vogn, the filled (over-full) carriage.

de brugte Pennes, the used-up pens.

A. When the present participle (*den handlende Tillægsform i Nutiden*) is used elliptically as a noun, it takes an *s*, to mark the genitive case; as for example:—

den Lidendes Tilstand, the suffering person's condition.
en Rejsendes Bagage, a travelling person's luggage.

B. This participle, which has been derived from the O.N. participle present in *andi*, corresponds in its varied modes of application both with the Latin active participle present in *ans*, *ens*, and the Latin future participle in *andus*, *endus*; as for example :—

jeg har ikke set ham i indeværende Måned, I have not seen him in the present month.
har I et Lyst til at høre den derover holdende Tale? do you wish to hear the speech which is to be made concerning it?

The use of the participle present as a gerund is not admissible in Dano-Norwegian, which requires some other mode of construction; as for example :—

on going up the hill, I..., *da jeg gik op ad Højen...*
 after listening to her singing, they..., *efter at de havde hørt på hendes medens hun sang...*
 in thinking over it, he..., *da han tænkte derpå...*
 by scolding her, *ved at skælde på hende.*

at udnævne, to nominate
at lide, to like, suffer
at afskedige, to discharge
at angre, beklage, to regret
at hente, to fetch
at redvare, to last
at skure, rense, to scour, clean
at ødelægge, to waste
at tilfredsstille, to satisfy
at levere, to deliver, give out
at søge, to seek
at fordærve, to spoil
gid han var her! would that he were here!
et Tæppe, a carpet

(en) *Post*, the post, mail
et Postbud, a letter carrier
et Posthus, a post office
tilværende, present, existing
langvarende, long-lasting
en Forgænger, a predecessor
en Landsby, a village
en Straf, Plage*, a scourge
nødtrængende, needy
en Ødeland, a spendthrift
ankommende, arriving
 (en) *Tøven*, delay
en Direktør, a director
langsomt arbejdende, dilatory
et Uheld, an accident.

READING

to translate into English.

Uddrag af "Tremasteren Fremtiden,"¹ af JONAS LIE.VRAGET.²

Det var en af de forfærdelige³ Novemberstorme i 1807, der siden stod som et Mærkeår i mangen gammel Sjømands Ungdomsminde,⁴ at Tremasteren "Fremtiden" en snetyk Vinterdag lå og drev som mastelöst Vrag udenfor Finmarkens Kyst. Skandseklædningen⁵ var brækket ind, og Tremasteren lå nu halv fyldt af Vand over til den ene Side.

Skibet tilhørte en af de københavnske Kompagnier, der endnu ejede Faktorer⁶ i Varangerfjorden, og var bestemt⁷ for Köllefjord. Udenfor Trondhjemsleden⁸ var det bleven overfaldet af en pålands Storm, der tvang⁹ dem til at sætte ud til Sjøs,¹⁰ og i flere Døgn¹¹ havde Havet gået om Tremasteren med Skumbjærge¹² og Bråt jævnhøje med Salingen.¹³ Nede i Sjøgangen¹⁴ lå det med fire grønne Bølgemure¹⁵ om sig og en Stump¹⁶ uvejrsgrå Himmel som Tag,¹⁷ indtil Bølgeryggen¹⁸ atter¹⁹ løftede dem op til den gamle trøstesløse Udsigt over Stillingen.²⁰ Skipperen var en Nat bleven slået af Bommen,²¹ han lå bevidstløs²² og droges med Døden,²³ og Fartøjet²⁴ var, — værgelöst²⁵ og uden Styring,²⁶ som det lå med det knagende Tømmerværk i Rullingerne,²⁷ — sprunget Læk²⁸ på flere Steder.

¹ three-master "The Future"

² the wreck

³ frightful

⁴ seaman's reminiscence of the days of his youth

⁵ bulwarks

⁶ owned factories

⁷ bound

⁸ coast-side

⁹ compelled

¹⁰ Sjø (Norw.), sea

¹¹ days and nights

¹² mountains of foam

¹³ surging, noisy waves

¹⁴ level with the cross trees of the masts

¹⁵ swell of the sea

¹⁶ wave-walls

¹⁷ small piece

¹⁸ roof

¹⁹ crests of the waves

²⁰ again

²¹ prospect before them

²² beam, yard

²³ unconscious

²⁴ to be in the last

²⁵ agony

²⁶ the vessel

²⁷ defenceless

²⁸ guidance

²⁹ creaking timbers in the breakers

³⁰ leak

Den fjerde Dag, da Vejret havde bedaget¹ sig en Smule,² og man troede at have Sigte³ af Land, havde Mandskabet, der indså,⁴ at det ikke længer magtede⁵ at holde det gående med Pumperne, resolveret at bjerge⁶ Livet i Storbåden for, om muligt, at nå ind etsteds⁷ på Kysten. Den syge Skipper var allerede bragt ned i den, og tilbage ombord⁸ var kun hans Hustru med det lille Barn — hun havde endnu ikke kunnet overvinde⁹ sin Ængstelighed¹⁰ for den farlige Nedstigning,¹¹ — da en truende Bræksjö¹² tvang dem, som vare nede i Båden, til at sætte fra.¹³

FIFTY-FOURTH EXERCISE.

I.

I could have done it if I had only known that my father wished me to have done it. He has been going about for a long time seeking a wife, but he has not yet found one. Mrs. Falsen gave me her son's letter to read, and I certainly ought to have read it on the spot (immediately). Have you the full basket or the empty one in the carriage?—The empty one. It is only the whim of an invalid (suffering person). While she was travelling she longed so much for her native land, but now that she has been able to return, it seems as if she regretted returning. You must make haste or you will not see your niece. The present clergyman at Orderup is a very dear friend of mine, and his predecessor (the one before him) was in like manner a dearly loved friend of my father's. There was lately a destructive illness in this village; but it was fortunately not a long-lasting scourge. Do you know the brewer Anderson, my new neighbour?—No! but I hear that he is a wasteful and at the same time needy man.

¹ cleared

² little bit

³ sight

⁴ perceived

⁵ have power

⁶ resolved to save

⁷ some place

⁸ onboard

⁹ overcome

¹⁰ fear

¹¹ dangerous descent

¹² threatening high-sea

¹³ to put off

II.

If you let that full cup fall, you will spoil the newly cleaned carpet with the coffee as it pours out. Has the servant fetched the letters from the post that has just come in? He says that the long-expected post has not come in yet. A person whom he met on the way told him that at the post office they knew no satisfactory cause for this unusual and somewhat alarming delay in the delivery of the day's letters. I trust no accident has happened to the train which is due. How do you like (what do you think of) our lately appointed post-director Svane? I do not like him much, but still I like him rather better than Blom, who was discharged because he was an inefficient, slow man.

NAMES OF MINERALS, ETC.

<i>en Diamant</i> , a diamond	(<i>et</i>) <i>Ler, Lerjord</i> , clay
<i>en Smaragd</i> , an emerald	(<i>en</i>) <i>Skifer</i> , slate
<i>en Rubin</i> , a ruby	<i>en Skifertavle</i> , a slate (to write on)
<i>en Ametist</i> , an amethyst	<i>et Skifertag</i> , a slate-roof
<i>en Beryl</i> , a beryl	<i>et Skiferbrud</i> , a slate quarry
<i>en Granat</i> , a garnet	(<i>en</i>) <i>Kalk</i> , lime
<i>en Edelsten</i> , a precious stone	<i>et Brud</i> , a quarry
<i>en Juvel</i> , a jewel	<i>en Grube</i> , a pit
<i>et Juvelsmykke</i> , a set of jewels	<i>en Ovn</i> , a kiln
<i>en Perle</i> , a pearl, bead	(<i>et</i>) <i>Kul</i> * (<i>Stenkul</i>), coal
(<i>en</i>) <i>Koral</i> , coral	<i>Trækul</i> * } charcoal
(<i>et</i>) <i>Rav</i> , amber	<i>Krudtkul</i> * }
<i>en Ravspids (Pibespids af Rav)</i> , an amber mouth-piece of a pipe	(<i>et</i>) <i>Bly</i> , lead
<i>et Mineral</i> , a mineral	<i>et Lød</i> , * a lead (nautical)
<i>et Metal</i> , a metal	<i>en Blyant</i> , a pencil
(<i>et</i>) <i>Jærn</i> , iron	(<i>et</i>) <i>Stål</i> , steel
(<i>et</i>) <i>Kobber</i> , copper	<i>en Stålpen</i> , * a steelpen
(<i>en</i>) <i>Messing</i> , brass	(<i>et</i>) <i>Svovl</i> , sulphur
(<i>en</i>) <i>Bronse</i> , bronze	<i>en Svovlkilde</i> , a sulphur-spring
(<i>et</i>) <i>Marmor</i> , marble	<i>en Svovlstikke</i> , a sulphur-match
(<i>en</i>) <i>Alabast</i> , alabaster	(<i>et</i>) <i>Salt</i> , salt
(<i>en</i>) <i>Ma'm</i> , ore	(<i>et</i>) <i>Kogsalt</i> , common salt
<i>en Sten</i> , a stone	<i>en Saltsø</i> , a salt-lake
	(<i>et</i>) <i>Saltrand</i> , (salt) sea-water

(et) *Glas*,* glass
 en *Rude*, a pane
 (et) *Sand*, sand
 (en) *Sanddyne*, downs
 en *Sandgrav*, a sandpit
 en *Sandslette*, a sandy plain
 et *Sandur*, an hour-glass
 (en) *Sandsten*, sandstone
 (en) *Granit*, granite
 en *Mine*, a mine
 en *Minebugger*, a miner
 en *Minegang*, gallery of a mine
 en *Minetragt*, a funnel, shaft
 of a mine

et *Mineralrige*, a mineral king
 dom
 en *Mineralog*, a mineralogist
 en *Syre*, an acid
 en *Gas*,* a gas
 en *Gasmåler*, a gasometer
 et *Pulver*, a powder
 (et) *Støv*, dust
 (et) *Krudt*, powder, gunpowder
 en *Krudtdamp*, a smoke of
 powder
 en *Krudtladning*, a charge of
 powder
 en *Krudtrende*, a train of gun-
 powder.

FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.

ON THE DIFFERENT FORMS OF VERBS.

Some Danish grammarians designate the first and second regular conjugations of verbs as *åbne*, open, or *svage*, weak, while they include the irregular verbs under the head of *lukte*, closed, or *stærke*, strong. This distinction, which was observed in O.N., and is still maintained in German, is based on the conception that a word which admits of being changed by mere alteration of its more unessential constituents, without external aid through composition, or the addition of syllables, possesses a certain innate strength, which is wanting in verbal roots, that can only be varied by the addition of foreign elements.

I. The weak (*svage*) mode of inflection, to which belong the two so-called regular conjugations (in *ede*, *et*, and *te*, *t*), includes the larger number of imported or foreign roots.

A. It would appear, that in the earlier forms of modern Dano-Norwegian, these two modes of conjugation were used indifferently, or, in other words, that both were included in

one group; hence we may assume that the present distinctive characteristics of the first and second conjugations have become established through usage only, or from considerations of euphony, emphasis, or other requirements of speech.

Many verbs still admit of being conjugated according to either form; as for example:—

at brøle	brølede	or	brølte,	to bellow
at ile	ilede	"	ilte,	to hasten
at lyne	lynede	"	lynte,	to lighten
at navne	navnede	"	navnte,	to name
at øse	øsede	"	øste,	to bale, draw water
at prale	pralede	"	pralte,	to boast
at ramme	rammede	"	ramte,	to hit
at spøge	spøgede	"	spøgte,	to haunt, joke
at tale	taledede	"	talte,	to talk.

II. Where the verb can be used both in a transitive and an intransitive sense, it usually follows the regular (weak) mode of inflection in the former case, and the irregular (strong) mode of inflection in the latter; as for example:—

han hængte Kjolen op, he hung up the coat.

Frugten hang på Træet, the fruit hung on the tree.

hun brækkede Benet, she broke her leg.

Grenen brak, the bough broke.

III. Modern Dano-Norwegian is deviating more and more widely from the O.N. in disregarding distinctions of number in verbs, and using the singular form for all persons; as for example: *jeg*, or *vi véd*, instead of *vi vide*. The O.N. termination *t* is still used in poetry for the second person, as *du vilt*. More frequently, however, *st*, which is rarely found in O.N. is employed in poetry.

The Old Northern termination *st* had originally no reference to the second person singular, but was a mere corruption of *sk* contracted from *sik* (*sig*), one self, himself, which still survives in the *s* of the passive form of Dano-Norwegian verbs, as for example: *at høre*, to hear; *at høres*, to be heard, make one self heard.

READING

to translate into English.

ET FJÆLDVAND.

Jeg sad en Aften i en liden Båd
 på et af disse dybe, stille Vande,
 der ligge, som et Øje blankt¹ af Gråd,²
 imellem Norges Fjælde. Let og varm
 stod Aftenhimlen om de mørke Strande,
 og sænkte sig i Söens klare Barm,³
 så Båden syntes let ophængt⁴ at svæve⁵
 mid⁶ i et Lufthav, hvor der ej⁷ var Bund,⁸
 men lige dybt foroven og forneden,
 som Jordens Kugle⁹ mid i Evigheden.¹⁰
 Dødstilhed hvilte¹¹ over Sö og Lund.¹²
 Der fandtes ej en Fugl, som vilde leve,
 som vilde synge her en Aftenstund.¹³
 Ingen romantisk Klang¹⁴ om Fjældet drog¹⁵
 på klare Vinger, som i Tyrols Dale; —
 den norske Fjældegn¹⁶ ejer¹⁷ ingen Tale
 undtagen Ensomhedens¹⁸ stille, Sprog.
 De tause¹⁹ Rorsfolk dypped Åren blot,
 og lydlöst²⁰ i de kolde, klare Vover.²¹
 Jeg smelted²² hen i denne Stilhed sødt;
 det var som om min Sjæl²³ gled sagte²⁴ over,
 og tabte sig i inderlig Forening²⁵
 med Fjældnatures dybe, dunkle Mening.²⁶

A. MUNCH.

- ¹ polished
² weeping
³ bosom
⁴ suspended
⁵ float
⁶ midst
⁷ not, never
⁸ bottom
⁹ sphere, ball

- ¹⁰ eternity
¹¹ rested
¹² grove
¹³ one evening hour
¹⁴ sound
¹⁵ to pass, wander
¹⁶ Fjælds' district, spot
¹⁷ owns
¹⁸ excepting solitude's

- ¹⁹ silent
²⁰ soundless
²¹ billows (poet.)
²² to melt away
²³ soul
²⁴ softly
²⁵ inmost union
²⁶ meaning, signifi-
 ficance

FIFTY-FIFTH EXERCISE.

LETTER.

I.

PARIS, 6th September, 1877.



Dear Robert.

In consequence ¹ of the general stagnation ² of trade here, and owing to some very considerable losses ³ which my father has recently had (suffered), I have determined to seek a situation, and provide for myself. As I know how many acquaintances you (thou) have in London, it has occurred to me that you would be likely to hear ⁴ of something that might suit me.

You know that I have always kept my father's books, ⁵ and that I must, therefore, have acquired a good deal of useful information. ⁶ I have also been studying ⁷ English during the last two years, and have made considerable progress. ⁸ I should be extremely glad if it were possible for me to get a situation in an English house of business (Counting House). I should, of course, prefer one which has business relations with France (has a French correspondence), as I should be able to undertake ⁹ a French correspondence.

I have not yet spoken to my father of my intentions ¹⁰ as I am well aware (know) that he would like to keep me at home. I should not, however, be much missed, ¹¹ as my brother Richard can take my place. When you write, be good enough to address your letter

¹ som en Fölge² Standsning

Tab

⁴ Kundsakab⁵ at före Böger, to keep
books, book-keeping⁶ Kundsakaber⁷ lagt mig efter⁸ Fremgang⁹ overtage¹⁰ Forehavende¹¹ savnet

to me *Poste Restante*, as I do not wish my father to know anything of this correspondence,¹ until I have secured a situation.

Believe me

Yours most truly,²

.

NOTE.

II.

Mr. Campbell begs that Mr. Green will not give himself the trouble of coming to him to-morrow, as he is going into the country. Mr. Campbell will be happy to see Mr. Green, at any time most convenient³ to himself, the day after to-morrow.

Thursdag morning.

¹ Brevveksling, *inter-*
change of letters

² hengivne, (*devoted*);
oprigtige, *sincere*

³ belejligt

FIFTY-SIXTH LESSON.

ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS (*Uregelmæssige Udsagnsord*).

The strong (*stærke*) mode of inflection includes all the Danish irregular verbs, and to this more ancient class, which still numbers upwards of 100 verbs, belong almost all the simple verbal roots in the language. Modern Dano-Norwegian manifests a tendency to incorporate some of these verbs into one or other of its two recognised regular conjugations, as may be seen in many words, which are in a transition stage, and admit of being used in the past of the indicative in two distinct forms; as for example:—

at briste, bristede (brast), to burst
at gale, galede (gøl), to crow
at grave, gravede (grav), to dig
at veje, vejede (væg), to weigh
at væve, vævede (vov), to weave.

The irregularities of the Dano-Norwegian verbs admit in most instances of being reduced to some definite method, and may generally be referred to one or other of the following groups :—

I. Verbs which retain the same radical vowel in all their parts, and do not take any terminal letters to mark the past tense; as for example : *faldt, falden*, from *at falde*, to fall.

II. Verbs which change the radical vowel in the past tense only; as for example : *gik*, from *at gå*, to go.

III. Verbs which change the radical vowel both in the past tense and in the participle past; as for example : *bandt, bunden*, from *at binde*, to bind.

These distinctive differences have led grammarians to arrange irregular verbs in several classes, such as the following; which, although not sufficiently comprehensive to include every aberrant verbal form, will be found of great use for the comparison of the prominent differences and affinities between Danish and English irregular verbs.

1st CLASS.

Verbs which retain the radical vowel of the infinitive in all their parts :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at græde, to weep	græd	har grædt	
at hedde, to be called	hed	har hedd	
at holde, to hold	holdt	har holdt	er holdt, ere holdte
at hugge, to hew	hug or huggede	har hugget	er huggen, t, ere hugne
at komme, to come	kom		er kommen, ere komne
at løbe, to run	løb	har løbet	er løben, ere løbne
at sove, to sleep	sov	har sovet	

A. *Holden* is used as an adjective in the following manner : *en holden Mand*, a man well to do, a man of substance; *hél og holden*, safe and sound.

B. *At holde* is used in the following manner: *det vil holde hårdt*, it will be difficult (hard work); *Vognen holder for Døren*, the carriage is at the door; *at holde op*, to hold up, leave off; *at holde af*, to care for, to like; *at holde en Avis*, to take in a paper.

READING

to translate into English.

KONG¹ KRISTIAN.

(*Words sung to the Danish National Anthem.*)

Kong Kristian stod ved højen Mast
 I Røg² og Damp.
 Hans Værge³ hamrede⁴ så fast,
 At Gothens Hjælm og Hjerne⁵ brast,⁶
 Da sank hvert fjendtiligt Spejl⁷ og Mast
 I Røg og Damp.
 Fly,⁸ skreg de, hver som flygte kan,
 Hvo står mod Danmarks Kristian
 I Kamp?

Niels Juel⁹ gav Agt på Stormens Brag,¹⁰
 Nu er det Tid!
 Han hejsede¹¹ sit røde Flag,
 Og slog på Fjenden Slag i Slag;¹²
 Da skreg de højt blandt Stormens Brag:
 "Nu er det Tid!"
 Fly, skreg de, hver, som véd et Skjul,¹³
 Hvo kan bestå¹⁴ mod Danmarks Juel
 I Strid?¹⁵

¹ King

² smoke

³ weapon

⁴ to hammer

⁵ the Goths' (Swedes')
 helms and heads

⁶ burst

⁷ stern of ship

⁸ to flee

⁹ "Niels Juel," a Dan-
 ish naval hero

¹⁰ crash

¹¹ hoist

¹² blow for blow

¹³ hiding-place

¹⁴ exist, stand

¹⁵ strife

O, Nordhav,¹ Glimt² af Vessel³ brød⁴

Din tykke Sky;

Da tyede⁵ Kæmper til dit Skød,⁶

Thi med ham lynte Skræk og Død,

Fra Valen⁷ hörtes Vrål,⁸ som brød

Din tykke Sky.

Fra Danmark lyner Tordenskjold;⁹

Hver give sig i Himlens Vold,¹⁰

Og fly!

Du Danskes¹¹ Vej til Ros¹² og Magt,

Sortladne¹³ Hav!

Modtag din Ven, som uforsagt¹⁴

Tör möde Faren med Foragt,¹⁵

Og kæk¹⁶ som du, mod Stormens Magt,

Sortladne Hav!

Og rask igennem Sang og Spil¹⁷

Og Kamp og Sejer¹⁸ för¹⁹ mig til

Min Grav!

EWALD.

¹ German Ocean
(*lit.*, Northern Ocean)

² gleam

³ "Vessel," a great
Danish naval com-
mander, generally
known under his
title, Tordenskjold.

⁴ broke, pierced

⁵ sought refuge

⁶ lap

⁷ battle-ground

⁸ roar

⁹ *see* ⁸

¹⁰ submit to heaven's
power

¹¹ the Danes

¹² praise

¹³ blackish

¹⁴ undaunted

¹⁵ contempt

¹⁶ bold

¹⁷ sport

¹⁸ victory

¹⁹ lead

FIFTY-SIXTH EXERCISE.

LETTER.

I.

Thursday Morning.

My dear Charles,

We are proposing¹ to represent² an
English play during the holidays,³ and need your help.

¹ ere ifærd med,

² bringe istand,

³ Ferien.

We have not yet decided upon any piece, because we do not know how many of our friends will help us. I have written to all those among my friends who are acquainted with ¹ English, and a general meeting ² is to be held at my house next Thursday evening. You must, of course, ³ not fail us, and if you have any friend who is half as clever ⁴ as you are, we should be delighted to see him, ⁵ and for your sake he will receive a hearty welcome.

We are sufficiently well provided ⁶ with ladies, for my own sisters and both the Miss Bangs have kindly ⁷ offered their services. You know how clever and persevering ⁸ they are, and, therefore, you will not doubt that they will do us great credit; I wish you would bring your catalogue of English plays with you to help ⁹ us in making our choice ¹⁰ (of a piece), as we propose to have ¹¹ our first rehearsal ¹² next week, if possible. There is no time to lose. ¹³ We are anxious that the whole thing should go off as well as possible, ¹⁴ and we, therefore, also intend to put our musical friends under requisition. ¹⁵ Oblige me by doing the same by yours, and believe me always ¹⁶

Yours very truly,

.

(In haste.) ¹⁷

¹ have noget Kendskab

² Generalforsamling

³ selvfølgelig

⁴ flink

⁵ se ham

⁶ forsyne

⁷ velvillig

⁸ ndholdende

⁹ være behjælpelig

¹⁰ Valg

¹¹ holde

¹² Prøve

¹³ spille (to waste)

¹⁴ gentilt *

¹⁵ lægge Beslag på

¹⁶ Levvel

¹⁷ I Hast

* The Danes use the word *gentilt* for "in good keeping," "successfully," "suitably," and pronounce the word as the French *gentil*, with *t* added to it.

NOTE.¹

II.

ROSENBLUND, THE STRAND ROAD.

Mr. & Mrs. Palmblad present their compliments² to Mr. & Mrs. Young, and request the pleasure³ of their company⁴ to dinner on Thursday, the 24th inst., at 7 p. m.

June 3rd, 1877.

¹ Billet

² Hilsen

³ Ære (Fornøjelse)

⁴ Nærværelse

FIFTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

ON THE DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

(Continued.)

2nd CLASS.

Verbs which change the long radical *i* of the infinitive into long *e* in the past tense and the past participle:—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at blive, <i>to remain</i>	blev		er bleven, t, ere blevne
at drive, <i>to drive, urge</i>	drev	har drevet	er dreven, t, ere drevne
at glide, <i>to glide</i>	gled	har gledet	er gleden, ere gledne
at gnide, <i>to rub</i>	gned	har gnedet	er gneden, ere gnedne
at gribe, <i>to seize</i>	greb	har grebet	er greben, ere grebne
at knibe, <i>to pinch</i>	kneb	har knebet	er kneben, ere knebne
at pibe, <i>to pipe, whistle</i>	peb	har pebet	
at rive, <i>to tear</i>	rev	har revet	er reven, ere revne
at skrige, <i>to cry</i>	skreg	har skreget	er skregen, ere skregne
at skrive, <i>to write</i>	skrev	har skrevet	er skreven, ere skrevne
at stige, <i>to mount</i>	steg		er stegen, ere stegne
at stride, <i>to stride, contend</i>	stred	har stredet	er stredet, stridt ere stredne, stridte
at vige, <i>to give way</i>	veg		er vegen, t, ere vegne
at vride, <i>to wring</i>	vred	har vredet	er vreden, ere vredne.

3rd CLASS.

Verbs in which the radical long *i* is changed to *e* only in the past tense :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at bide, <i>to bite</i>	bed	har bidt	er bidt, ere bidte
at lide, <i>to suffer</i>	led	har lidt	er lidt, ere lidte
at slide, <i>to drudge, wear out</i>	sled	har slidt	er slidt, ere slidte
at smide (Norw.), <i>to forge</i>	smed	har smidt	er smidt, ere smidte.

4th CLASS.

Verbs in which the radical short *i* and *y* are changed to *a* in the past tense, and to *u* in the participles :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at binde, <i>to bind</i>	bandt	har bundet	er bunden, t, ere bundne
at drikke, <i>to drink</i>	drak	har drukket	er drukken, t, ere drukne
at finde, <i>to find</i>	fandt	har fundet	er funden, t, ere fundne
at spinde, <i>to spin</i>	spandt	har spundet	er spunden, t, ere spundne
at springe, <i>to spring</i>	sprang	har sprunget	er sprungen, t, ere sprungne
at syngre, <i>to sing</i>	sang	har sunget	er sungen, t, ere sungne.

The verb, *pibe*, can only be used in the past participle in combination with some preposition or conjunction, as for example: *Stykket er pebet ud*, the piece has been hissed. *At stige* can only be used in the past when conjoined with a preposition, as for example: *han er steget op på Bjærgtet*, he has ascended (up) the mountain.

READING

to translate into English.

GAMLE NORGE.

Der ligger et Land mod den evige Sne,
i Revnerne ¹ kun er der Vårliv ² at se.
Men Havet går til med Historie-Dön, (Norw.) ³
og elsket er Landet som Mor ⁴ af Sön.

¹ crevices

² spring-life

³ the ocean moves with the
swell of its history

⁴ Moder (mother)

Hun ¹ tog os i Fanget, ² dengang vi var små,
og gav os sin Saga ³ med Billeder ⁴ på.
Vi læste, så Øjet blev stort og vådt;
da smilte den Gamle og nikked ⁵ blot.

Vi sprang ned til Fjorden og stirrede ⁶ mod
den askegrå ⁷ Bautasten, ⁸ gammel den stod;
hun stod der end ældre, så Ingenting;
men stensatte Hauger ⁹ lå rundt i Ring.

Hun tog os ved Hånden, og Følge hun gav ¹⁰
bort derfra til Kirken så stille og lav, ¹¹
hvor Fædrene ydmygt ¹² har bøjet ¹³ Knæ,
og mild'lig hun sagde: gör I som de!

Hun strødde ¹⁴ sin Sne over fjældbratte Li, ¹⁵
bød så sine Gutter ¹⁶ at stå den på Ski, ¹⁷
Hun knuste ¹⁸ med Stormhånd det Nordhavs Spejl, ¹⁹
bød så sine Gutter at hejse Sejl. ²⁰

Hun satte de vakreste Jenter ²¹ i Rad ²²
at følge vor Idræt ²³ med Smil og med Kvad, ²⁴
og selv sad hun højt i sin Sagastol
og Måneskinskåben ²⁵ op under Pol.

Da lösned ²⁶ Begejstringens ²⁷ rullende Form, ²⁸
da døbtes vi af hendes mægtige Ånd, ²⁹
da stod over Fjældet et Syn ³⁰ i Glød, ³¹
der siden os maner ³² indtil vor Død.

B. BJÖRNSSON.

¹ "Gamle Norge"

² in her arms

³ Saga (myth)

⁴ pictures, illustrations

⁵ nodded (approval)

⁶ looked earnestly

⁷ ash-gray

⁸ memorial stones over
graves of old North-
men

⁹ stone-planted
mounds (Norw.)

¹⁰ give an escort

¹¹ low

¹² humbly

¹³ bent

¹⁴ strewed

¹⁵ steep Fjæld slope

¹⁶ boys, sons (Norw.)

¹⁷ cross it on snow-
shoes

¹⁸ crush

¹⁹ mirrow

²⁰ hoist sail

²¹ maidens (Norw.)

²² in a row

²³ actions

²⁴ song

²⁵ the moonlight cloak

²⁶ was loosened

²⁷ inspiration

²⁸ flowing numbers

²⁹ spirit

³⁰ vision

³¹ in glowing flames

³² appeal to, conjure

FIFTY-SEVENTH EXERCISE.

LETTER.

To Messrs. A. & B.

COPENHAGEN, May 6th, 1877.

Gentlemen,

Having heard ¹ that you require a clerk,² able to conduct³ your French and English correspondence,⁴ I take the liberty of offering⁵ you my services. A long experience⁶ in a first class firm⁷ has made me thoroughly conversant with business matters,⁸ and I flatter⁹ myself that I am thoroughly competent to carry on¹⁰ your foreign¹¹ correspondence. I have the most unexceptionable¹² references, and can give security¹³ to any amount.¹⁴ If you should desire to have further¹⁵ information (in regard to me), you will perhaps do me the honour of sending¹⁶ me a few lines.

I have the honour, Gentlemen, to remain,

Your obedient servant,¹⁷

.

NOTES.

I.

Friday, Morning.

If Mr. Nutt should have a few minutes to spare¹⁸ to-morrow morning, he would greatly oblige Mr. Smith, if he would come to him about ten o'clock. Mr. Smith hopes to see Mr. Nutt at that hour, when he will explain the reason¹⁹ why he makes this request.²⁰

¹ bragt i Erfaring

² Kommiss

³ forestå

⁴ Korrespondance

⁵ tilbyde

⁶ Övelse

⁷ ansét Hus's Kontoir

⁸ Handelsanliggender

⁹ smigre

¹⁰ före

¹¹ udenlandsk

¹² udmærket

¹³ stille Sikkerhed

¹⁴ Beløb

¹⁵ yderlig

¹⁶ Godhed at bære

¹⁷ højagtelsesfuld, ær-

bødigst

¹⁸ tilovers

¹⁹ forklare Grunden

²⁰ Anmodning

II.

Mr. & Mrs. Wilson request¹ the honour of Mr. & Mrs. Sørensen's Company on Saturday evening at 8 o'clock to meet² a few friends.

No. 4, HIGH STREET.

Thursday afternoon.

III.

GROVE LANE, 1st February, 1878.

Mrs. Bell requests the pleasure of the Misses Dale's company at a small party on Monday evening the 3rd instant.³

IV.

The Misses Dale have the honour of accepting Mrs. Bell's polite invitation⁴ for the 3rd instant.

V.

The Misses Dale regret extremely that an earlier engagement⁵ prevents⁶ their accepting Mrs. Bell's kind⁷ invitation for the 3rd instant.

VI.

LONDON, March 3rd, 1878.

Gentlemen,

We have received⁸ your circular⁹ of the 4th instant, and beg to inform you that we shall be happy to open an account¹⁰ with your firm.

We are,

Yours obediently,

.

¹ udbede sig

² ville træffe

³ d. M. (denne Måned)

⁴ Indbydelse

⁵ Forpligtelse

⁶ forhindre

⁷ forekommende

⁸ modtage

⁹ Cirkulære

¹⁰ knytte en Forbindelse

FIFTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

(Continued.)

5th CLASS.

Verbs which change the radical vowel *e* or *æ* of the infinitive to *a* in the past tense :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at bede, to bid, beg	bad	har bedet	er bedt, ere bedte
at gælde, to avail, be worth	gjaldt	har gældt	
at hænge, to hang (intr.)	hang	} har hængt	er hængt, ere hængte
at hænge, to hang (tr.)	hængte		
at knække, to crack	knak	har knækket	er knækket, ere knækkede
at kvæde, to sing	kvad	har kvædet	er kvædet, ere kvædede
at smække, to taste	smak or smækkede	har smækket	er smækket, ere smækkede
at være, to be	var	har været	

6th CLASS.

Verbs which change the short *æ* of the infinitive to short *a* in the past tense, and to *u* in the participles ; and the long *æ* of the infinitive to long *a* in the past tense, and to *â* in the participles :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at brække, to break	brak	har brukket	er brukken, t, ere brukne
at bære, to bear	bar	har båret	er bårn, ere bårne
at hjælpe, to help	hjalp	har hjulpet	er hjulpen, t, ere hjulpne
at stjæle, to steal	stjal	har stjålet	er stjålen, t, ere stjålne
at træffe, to hit, meet	traf	har truffet	er truffen, t, ere truffne

7th CLASS.

Verbs which change the long *y* of the infinitive into long *ö* in the past, and into long *u* or *ø* in the participles, although the latter occasionally retain the long *y* :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at bryde, <i>to care about</i>	bröd	har brudt	er brudt, ere brudte
at gyde, <i>to pour</i>	göd	har gydt	er gydt, ere gydne
at lyde, <i>to sound</i>	löd	har lydt	er lydt, ere lydte
at skyde, <i>to shoot</i>	sköd	har skudt	er skudt, ere skudne.

8th CLASS.

Verbs which change the *a* of the infinitive into long *o* in the past tense :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at erfare, <i>to experience</i>	erfor	har erfaret	er erfaret, ere erfarede
at jage, <i>to chase</i>	jog or jagede	har jaget	er jagen, t, ere jagne
at slå, <i>to slay</i>	slog	har slået	er slået (slagen).

9th CLASS.

Verbs which change the *i* of the infinitive into *a* in the past tense :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at give, <i>to give</i>	gav	har givet	er given, t, ere givne
at klinge, <i>to resound</i>	klang	har klinget	
at sidde, <i>to sit</i>	sad	har siddet	
at tie, <i>to be silent</i>	tav or taug	har tiet	

10th CLASS.

Verbs which take *o* or *æ* in the past tense, while they retain the radical vowel of the infinitive in the participles :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at le, <i>to laugh</i>	lo	har lét	
at ligge, <i>to lie (down)</i>	læ	har ligget	
at se, <i>to see</i>	så	har sét	er sét, ere sete
at æde, <i>to eat (of animals)</i>	æd	har ædt	er ædt, ere ædte.

READING

to translate into English.

GURRE.

Hvor Nilen vander Ægypterens Jord
 i Afrikas brændende Lande,
 der mødtes to Fugle, de kom fra Nord,
 de talte om Danmarks Strande:
 "O! husker du Sjölund,¹ den deilige Ö,
 hvor de vilde Skovduer kurre,²
 de duftende Böge, den stille Sö,
 husker du Gurre?"³
 "Ja, der jeg bygged en Sommerdag;"
 — så talte den lille Svale; —
 "jeg havde min Rede⁴ ved Bondens Tag,
 jeg hørte ham synge og tale:
 Jeg tror, der er skönnest i Danmark!"

Ved Gurresö⁵ lå Kong Valdemars Borg,
 den så ham med Tovelille,⁶
 den kændte hans Lykke, den kændte hans Sorg.
 — Ak,⁷ Tröstens Harpe⁸ hang stille!
 Hans Glæde blev skrinlagt⁹ bag Kirkens Mur,
 hvor de vilde Skovduer kurre;
 — om Tovelille sang Guds Natur
 deiligst i Gurre!
 Der havde de vandret hver lønlig Sti¹⁰
 Naturen blev her til hende;
 hun kunde ei gå en Blomst forbi,
 den sagde: "kan du mig kende?"
 — Jeg tror, der er skönnest i Danmark!

¹ rememberest thou
 Seeland

² wood-pigeons coo

³ Gurre: a country
 palace occupied by
 King Valdemar

⁴ nest

⁵ lake of Gurre

⁶ the name of Valde-
 mar's mistress

⁷ alas!

⁸ harp

⁹ enshrined

¹⁰ secluded way

Ved Guresö holdt Kong Valdemar Jagt,
 smukt Hornet lød gennem Skoven ;
 den stod i sin rigeste Sommerpragt,
 og Stjærnerne funkled ¹ foroven ;
 da råbte Kongen så lystelig, ²
 hvor de vilde Skovduer kurre :
 "Lad Gud beholde sit Himmerig, ³
 har jeg kun Gurre !" ⁴
 — Det er så deilig en Sommerdag,
 men deiligst i Nattens Stille,
 naar Stjærnerne blinke og Drosdens Slag ⁴
 fortæller om Tovelille !
 Jeg tror, der er skønnest i Danmark !

H. C. ANDERSEN.

¹ sparkled, ² merrily, ³ Kingdom of Heaven, ⁴ thrush's note.

FIFTY-EIGHTH EXERCISE.

I.

A person ¹ petitioned ² Frederick the Second to give him an office. The king asked him where he was born. "I was born in Berlin," he answered. "Off with you then ! ³" said the monarch, "no Berliners are worth anything !" "I beg pardon, Your Majesty," answered the candidate, "there are some good Berliners, and I know of two." "Who are these two ?" enquired the king ; "the first," answered the candidate, "is Your Majesty, and I am the second." The king could not forbear ⁴ laughing at this answer, and granted ⁵ the petition. ⁶

¹ Kandidat

² ansøgte

³ så gå blot

⁴ bare sig for

⁵ bevilligte

⁶ Andragende

II.

LADY MONTAGUE IN TURKEY.

I went to see the Sultana,¹ and was led into a large room with a sofa the whole length of it covered² with blue velvet,³ embroidered with silver, with cushions⁴ of the same. Her dress was something so surprisingly⁵ rich, that I cannot forbear describing it (to you). She wore a vest⁶ called *donalma*, which differs from a *caftan* in having longer sleeves.⁷ It was of purple cloth, straight⁸ to her shape,⁹ and set on each side down to her feet and round the sleeves, with beautiful pearls.¹⁰ This dress was tied at the waist with two large tassels¹¹ of smaller pearls, and embroidered round the arms with large diamonds.¹²

Her chemise¹³ was fastened with a great diamond; her girdle,¹⁴ as broad as the broadest English ribbon, entirely covered with diamonds. Round her neck she wore three chains which reached to her knees; one of large pearls, at the bottom of which hung a fine, coloured emerald¹⁵ as big as an egg; another consisting of two hundred large emeralds of the most lively green; and another of small emeralds perfectly round. But her earrings eclipsed¹⁶ all the rest.¹⁷ They were two diamonds shaped¹⁸ exactly like pears, as large as a big hazelnut.¹⁹

(To be continued.²⁰)

¹ Sultaninden

² betrukken (*trække*, to draw over)

³ et Fløjel

⁴ en Pude

⁵ forbavsende

⁶ et Klædebon

⁷ et Ærme

⁸ sluttet

⁹ et Liv

¹⁰ en Perle

¹¹ en Kvast

¹² en Diamant

¹³ en Chemise

¹⁴ et Bælte

¹⁵ en Smaragd

¹⁶ fordunklede

¹⁷ Övrige

¹⁸ af Form

¹⁹ Hasselnöd

²⁰ fortsættes

FIFTY-NINTH LESSON.

ON PASSIVE AND DEPONENT VERBS.

Passive and deponent verbs are distinguished by the following characters :—

I. The passive (*Lideformen*) of verbs requires :—

A. That all persons of both numbers in the simple tenses shall have the letter *s* added to the active form (*Handlende Form*) of the corresponding parts of the verb ; as for example :—

Active : *jeg bringer, vi bringe*, I bring, we bring.

Passive : *jeg bringes, vi bringes*, I am brought, we are brought.

Active : *han bragte, de bragte*, he brought, they brought.

Passive : *han bragtes, de bragtes*, he was brought, they were brought.

B. That the compound tenses shall be conjugated with the auxiliaries *at være* or *at blive* ; as for example :—

jeg er bragt, han bliver bragt, I am brought, they are brought.

han var bragt, de bleve bragte, she was brought, they were brought.

II. The Deponent (*Genvirkende Form*) requires :—

A. That the participle past shall always end in *ts*, which is a survival of the O.N. *sk* or *sik*, reflective pronoun *sig* ; as for example :—

det har lykkets mig, I have been lucky.

de havde skændts, they had wrangled.

B. That the compound tenses shall be conjugated with the auxiliary *at have* ; as for example :—

jeg har bluets, I am ashamed.

det havde syntts, it had appeared.

han har længts, he has longed.

The tendency in modern Dano-Norwegian is to disregard these distinctions, and to allow the more genuine Northern forms of the deponents to be merged in those of the passive verbs, whose softer terminations are rapidly superseding the characteristic *ts* of the O.N.

III. Active verbs may, as a rule, be made to assume a passive form ; as for example :—

vi slå, we strike.

vi slås, we fight.

IV. Neuter verbs do not admit of a passive form.

V. The reciprocal action expressed in some deponents may be rendered by using the active form of the verb with a reciprocal pronoun, such as *hinanden* or *hverandre* ; as for example :—

de se hinanden i Spejlet, they see each other in the glass.

Hundene bide hverandre i Benet, the dogs bite each other in the leg.

A. The repetition of the pronoun in the accusative case gives, as in English, a *reflective*, and not a reciprocal, meaning ; as for example :—

vi se os i Spejlet, we see ourselves in the glass.

Hundene bide dem i Benet, the dogs bite themselves in the leg.

VI. A difference of meaning is conveyed ; whether we use a deponent verb, or an active verb with a reciprocal pronoun ; as for example :—

<i>vi ses i Aften på Komediën</i>	} we shall meet to-night	
<i>vi se hinanden i Aften på Komediën</i>		
		at the theatre.

By the former mode of construction we convey the meaning that we shall meet in close proximity, either in the same box, etc. ; while by the latter we simply imply that we shall both be present on that evening in some part or other of the theatre, but not necessarily at the same part. Thus, again in the case of the expressions *de slås*, *de slå hinanden*, the first would convey the meaning that they—two people—were fighting, and the latter that they—some persons—were striking one another. The deponent thus expresses some inner or more proximate relation, while the active verb, with the pronoun, expresses an extraneous, or more general relation.

READING

to translate into English.

"NÅR DU VIL PÅ FJÆLDESTI."

Når du vil på Fjældesti
 og skal Nisten snøre,²
 læg så ikke mere i,
 end du let kan føre.
 Drag ei med dig Dalens Tvang³
 i de grønne Lier,
 skyl den i en freidig⁴ Sang
 ned ad Fjældets Sider.

Fugle hilser dig fra Grøn,
 Bygdesnakket viger,⁵
 Luften bliver mere ren,
 højere du stiger.
 Fyld dit glade Bryst og syng,
 og små Barneminder
 nikke vil blandt Busk og Lyng⁶
 frem med røde Kinder.

Standser, lytter du engang,
 vil du få at høre
 Ensomhedens store Sang
 bruse⁷ til dit Öre.
 Straks en Fjældbæk risler kvikt,⁸
 straks en Småsten ruller,
 føres hid din glemte Pligt
 med en Verdens Bulder.⁹

Bæv,¹⁰ men bed, du bange Sjæl,
 mellem dine Minder !
 Gak så frem : den bedre Del
 du på Toppen finder.
 Der som før går Jesus Krist,
 Elias og Moses ;
 ser du dem, skal ganske vist
 Farten¹¹ evig roses.¹²

B. BJÖRNSON.

¹ mountain-path² buckle on a knapsack³ restraint⁴ pour it forth in a
fearless⁵ town-chatte departs
(vanishes)⁶ heather⁷ sound⁸ trickles merrily (quickly)⁹ crash¹⁰ tremble¹¹ excursion¹² be praised

FIFTY-NINTH EXERCISE.

LADY MONTAGUE IN TURKEY.—(Continued.)

Round her *kalpac* she had four strings¹ of pearl, the whitest and most perfect in the world, fastened² with two roses, consisting of a large ruby³ for the middle stone, and round them twenty drops of pure⁴ diamonds to each. Besides this, her head-dress⁵ was covered with pins⁶ of emeralds and diamonds. She wore large diamond bracelets, and on her fingers she had five rings, the largest I ever saw in my life. It must be left to⁷ jewellers to compute the value of those things; but according to the estimation⁸ of jewels in our part of the world, her whole dress must be worth a hundred thousand pounds sterling.

She gave me a dinner of fifty dishes of meat, which, after their fashion,⁹ were placed on the table but one at a time, which was extremely tedious.¹⁰ But the magnificence of her table answered very well to that of her dress. The knives were of gold, and the hafts¹¹ set with diamonds. But the piece of luxury¹² which grieved my eyes was the table cloth¹³ and napkins,¹⁴ which were all gauze,¹⁵ embroidered with silk and gold, in the finest manner, in natural flowers. The sherbet, which is the liquor they drink at meals, was served in china bowls,¹⁶ with covers¹⁷ of massive gold. After dinner, water was brought in gold basins, and towels of the same kind as the napkins; and coffee was served in china cups with gold saucers.¹⁸

¹ en Snor² sammenhæftet³ en Rubin⁴ rene⁵ en Hovedpynt⁶ en Nål⁷ det tilkommer⁸ en Vurdering⁹ en Skik¹⁰ kedsommelig¹¹ et Skæft¹² en Luksusgenstand¹³ en Dug¹⁴ en Serviette¹⁵ en Gase¹⁶ Porcellainaskål¹⁷ et Låg¹⁸ en Underkop

SIXTIETH LESSON.

ON THE USE OF THE AUXILIARIES "AT VÆRE" AND "AT HAVE."

I. The auxiliary *at have*, to have, should be used :—

A. In the compound tenses of all deponents ; as for example :—

han har altid nøjets med lidt, he was always satisfied with a little.

B. In cases where a persistent action, or permanent condition, is implied ; as for example :—

han har længe gået omkring i Haven, he has been walking for a long time about the garden.

han har boet mange År i Huset, he has lived for many years in the house.

C. In the narration of events which imply action on the part of, or in regard to the subject ; as for example :—

der havde nær skét Mord i mit Hus, murder had nearly happened in my house.

II. The auxiliary *at være*, to be, should be used :—

A. To indicate a change of action or condition ; as for example :—

han er kommen ind i Huset, he has come into the house.

han er kørt ud på Landet, he has driven out into the country.

B. To express a temporary condition or action ; as for example :—

når er han falden ned? when did he fall down ?

han er kommen ridende, he came on horseback.

C. The auxiliary *at være* is used with verbs of motion ; as for example :—

de ere komne, they have come.

det er gået på det bedste, it went off admirably.

The auxiliary *at have* was formerly in general use in the conjugation of all intransitive verbs in Danish, as it still is in Swedish, and in the ordinary speech of the Norwegians. A tendency has, however, been gaining ground in modern Danish to discard it for the auxiliary *at være*, which, in accordance with German usage, is now frequently employed as a simple auxiliary, without reference to action or condition.

It should, however, be borne in mind, that this practice is wholly at variance with the spirit of the O.N., which restricted the use of *at være* to cases, in which no direct agency was implied on the part of the subject, and where a condition rather than an action was to be expressed; while *have* carried with it a sense of direct action, or independence on the part of the subject.

READING

to translate into English

JEG GIK MIG UD EN SOMMERDAG.

Jeg gik mig ud en Sommerdag at høre
Fuglesang, som Hjærtet monne røre,¹
i de dybe Dale,
blandt de Nattergale,
blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale.

Den allermindste Fugl af dem, der vare,
sang fra Træet ned i Toner klare,
i de dybe Dale
blandt de Nattergale,
blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale.

Den sang: "Mens² Ungersvenden³ går så ene,
længes En imellem Løv⁴ og Grene,
i de dybe Dale,
blandt de Nattergale,
blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale.

¹ might move ² while ³ young man (swain) ⁴ foliage

Hen under Lövet gå de lune ¹ Vinde,
 der du skal din Hjærtenskjære finde,
 i de dybe Dale,
 blandt de Nattergale,
 blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale."

Hav Tak, du lille Fugl, for du har sjunget !
 ellers var mit Bryst af Længsel ² sprunget,
 i de dybe Dale,
 blandt de Nattergale,
 blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale.

Hav Tak, du lille Fugl, der sang med Ære,
 stillede min Længsel og Begjære, ³
 i de dybe Dale,
 blandt de Nattergale,
 blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale.

Af større Ve ⁴ kan Verden ikke trænges, ⁵
 end at skilles, ⁶ når man såre længes,
 i de dybe Dale,
 blandt de Nattergale,
 blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale.

En større Fryd ⁷ kan Verden ikke bære,
 end at samles med sin Hjærtenskjære,
 i de dybe Dale,
 blandt de Nattergale,
 blandt de andre Fugle små, som tale.

— Da nu min Hjærtenskjæreste var funden,
 sang og blomstrede det rundt i Lunden, ⁸
 både dybe Dale,
 og de Nattergale,
 og de andre Fugle små, som tale.

H. HERTZ.

¹ genial
² longing
³ desire

⁴ anguish (woe)
⁵ suffer
⁶ part

⁷ joy
⁸ grove

SIXTIETH EXERCISE.

LETTER.

MARSEILLES, *May 10th*, 1878.

My dear Sister,

When I last wrote to you, I was on the point of setting off for Marseilles, where I arrived the day before yesterday. I did not find the journey so agreeable as that from Paris to Lyons. The roads are excessively dusty, and the country rocky and mountainous; the weather, however, is very fine though somewhat hot.

I have already paid several visits, and seen a great part of the town, which I like very much, particularly that called *the new town*; the streets are very clean and well paved; the principal one is elegant, and leads directly to the port, which is very capacious, and frequented by ships of all nations.

You will, perhaps, ask how I can be so well acquainted with these things two days after my arrival. I will tell you. Our friend Mr. H. has been kind enough to act as my guide, and to describe to me everything worthy of notice. He has also asked me to dine with his family, at his country-house, on Sunday.

You do not say, in your last letter, whether you have received a little parcel I sent you from Lyons; do not fail to let me know in your next. If I continue to like Marseilles, I shall stay some time; therefore your next letter will, in all probability, find me still here. Pray, send me all the news you can, and give my kind remembrances to our dear friends.

Believe me always, dear Anna,

Your Affectionate Sister.

SIXTY-FIRST LESSON.

ON THE USE OF THE POTENTIAL MOOD, etc.

I. The use of the optative or potential mood (*den ønskende Måde*) is limited to solemn appeals, adjurations, or conventional expressions; as for example:—

Vor Herre være os nådig! the Lord have mercy on us!
Kongen leve! long live the king!
Gud bevare! Goodness! God preserve us!

II. Where an optative, or conditional sense is to be expressed in ordinary conversation, defective expletives, such as *gid*, and *mon*, or *bare*, are used to convey this meaning; as for example:—

gid jeg må komme godt fra det! if I only may come well out of that!
mon han skulde være blevet syg? could he have fallen ill?
bare han kommer! if only he would come!

A. *Gid*, used in this form, is supposed to be an abbreviation of the full exclamation *Gud give!* may God grant! and it is probable that the defective verb *at gide*, to prevail upon one self, may be identified with the more common form *gid*.

B. *Mon* (*monstro*, Norw.) is accepted in Dano-Norwegian as an adverb, meaning “whether,” “if,” etc., and it may generally be translated as “I wonder whether,” “if,” etc. There is, however, a definite auxiliary *at monne*, which admits of being translated as *do*, *did*, *may*, *might*; as for example:—

hun ser hvordan det monne lade, she is seeing how it may turn out.

This is the derivative of the O.N. auxiliary *munu*, will, would. The use of *at monne* in Danish is now, however, nearly limited to poetry, although *mon*, as an expletive, retains its full force in the language.

C. *Bare* is an adverb, meaning “only,” “merely,” etc.

III. The irregular verb *at lade*, to let, may be used exactly as in English in the sense of an auxiliary; as for example:—

lad ham være! let him be!

and like the other auxiliaries *ville, skulle, måtte, kunne, turde, burde*, it precedes the infinitive of the governing verb, without the intervention of the conjunction *at*, to; as for example:—

han lod hende stå, he let her stand.

det lader sig ikke sige, that cannot be said.

READING.

To translate into English.

TONEN.—(Af "Arne.")

I Skogen ¹ Smågutten ² gik Dagen lang,
gik Dagen lang;
der havde han hørt slig en underlig Sang,
underlig Sang.

Gutten en Fløite ³ af Selje ⁴ skar,
af Selje skar, —
og prøved, om Tonen derinde var,
derinde var.

Tonen, den hvisked og nævnte sig,
og nævnte sig;
men bedst som han lytted, den løb sin Vej,
den løb sin Vej.

Tit, når han sov, den til ham smög, ⁵
den til ham smög,
og over hans Pande med Elskov strög, ⁶
med Elskov strög.

Vilde den fange og vågned brat, ⁷
og vågned brat;
men Tonen hang fast i den blege ⁸ Nat,
den blege Nat.

¹ wood (Norw.);

² small boy (Norw.)

³ flute

⁴ willow

⁵ crept

⁶ touch (stroke)

⁷ suddenly

⁸ pallid

“ Herre, min Gud, tag mig derind,
tag mig derind ;
thi Tønen har fåt mit hele Sind,¹
mit hele Sind ! ”

Herren, han svared : “ Den er din Ven,
den er din Ven,
skjønt aldrig en Time du ejer ² den,
du ejer den.

Alle de andre dog lidt forslår,³
dog lidt forslår,
mod denne, du søger, men aldrig når,⁴
— aldrig når ! ”

B. BJÖRNSON.

SIXTY-FIRST EXERCISE.

LETTER.

LYONS, *June 3rd*, 1878.

Dear Sir,

An opportunity of going to London has just presented itself to me. As you have been there several times, and are, no doubt, acquainted with the different modes of travelling and living there, I take the liberty of applying to you for information, and a little advice on these subjects.

I intend to be as economical as possible, but at the same time to see all I can. I shall stay, perhaps, six weeks or two months, and should like to know in what part of the town it would be most advantageous for me to stay. Perhaps you could also give me an idea how much the journey would cost me, and whether I had better procure English money before I leave home. I should like to take a few trifling presents for some friends to whom I am recommended, and shall feel much

¹ mind, heart

² own

³ avail, suffice

⁴ attain

obliged if you will tell me what you think would prove most acceptable. I intend to set off in about a week, and I shall therefore feel especially grateful to you, if you will kindly give me a prompt reply to my enquiries.

I am, yours faithfully,

.

SIXTY-SECOND LESSON.

ON THE POSITION OF WORDS IN A SENTENCE, etc.

I. The arrangement, or position of words in a sentence depends very much in Danish, as in English, upon the idea to be expressed, and the prominence to be given to certain parts of the sentence. As a general grammatical rule it may, however, be observed that where the predicate is an active transitive verb, the *personal object* must precede the *thing-object* (Dan., *Ting-Objekt*) ; as for example :—

min Fader har igår lovet mig en Bog til Foræring, my father promised me a book yesterday.

II. In passive verbs, used in their compound tenses, the personal object is often placed between the auxiliary and the participle ; as for example :—

Brevet blev mig sendt, the letter was sent to me.
det blev ham sagt, it was told him.

Notwithstanding the generally absolute rule that the verb must agree in number with its subject, the Danes, as has already been stated, habitually disregard the plural after *vi*, *we*, *de*, *they*, in ordinary conversation, as for example :—

vi har ikke i Sinde, we are not disposed.
de er ikke her, they are not here.

In composition, however, and even in speaking, where it is desired to give emphasis to the words spoken, this neglect of the plural is not considered admissible.

III. In a primary simple sentence the subject precedes the predicate ; as :—

Ferskenes ere en fortræffelig Frugt, peaches are an excellent fruit.

EXCEPTIONS to this rule are afforded in Danish :—

A. In interrogative sentences, unless the pronouns *hvo*, *hvem*, who, what, *hvad*, *hvilken*, which, are used, as for example :—

skriver han ? is he writing ?

but : *hvem skriver ?* who is writing ?

B. In optative, conditional sentences ; as for example :—

gjorde Du blot dette ! if thou wouldst only do that !

havde jeg skrevet ham et Brev, var min Fader vist bleven vred, if I had written him a letter, my father would certainly have been angry.

C. In all secondary clauses, and wherever an adverb, conjunction, or other part of speech, besides the nominative noun, is brought prominently forward in a sentence ; as for example :—

var han min Ven, så hjalp han mig i min Nød, if he were my friend, he would help me in my need.

gør du blot dette, er jeg tilfreds, if only you will do this, I shall be contented.

desårsag kan jeg ikke agte Dem, for that reason I cannot esteem you.

IV. In reflective verbs governing an accusative, the verb must always stand, as in English, between the pronouns ; as for example :—

jeg bader mig, I bathe myself.

vi skynde os, we are hurrying ourselves.

I understå Jer, you dare.

V. In an expanded sentence (*udvidet Sætning*), where a verb is used in a compound tense, the adverb, or other word qualifying the verb, generally requires to be placed between the auxiliary and the verb ; as for example :—

jeg har ofte set Deres Mand, I have often seen your husband.

READING

*to translate into English.*BERGMANDEN.¹

Bergvæg,² brist med Drön og Brag³
 for mit tunge Hammerslag !
 Nedad må jeg Vejen bryde,
 til jeg hörer Malmen⁴ lyde.

Dybt i Fjældets öde Nat
 vinker mig den rige Skat,⁵ —
 Diamant og Ædelstene
 mellem Guldets röde Grene.

Og i Dybet er der Fred, —
 Fred og Ör⁶ fra Evighed ;—
 bryd mig Vejen, tunge Hammer,
 til det Dulgetes⁷ Hjertekammer !

Engang sad som Gut jeg glad
 under Himlens Stjernerad,⁸
 trådte Vårens⁹ Blomsterveje,
 havde Barnefred i Eje.

Men jeg glemte Dagens Pragt
 i den midnatsmørke Schakt,¹⁰
 glemte Liens Sus¹¹ og Sange
 i min Grubes Tempelgange.¹²

Dengang först jeg steg herind,
 tænkte jeg med skyldfrit Sind :
 Dybets Änder skal mig råde¹³
 Livets endelöse Gåde.¹⁴

¹ miner
² rocky wall
 din and crash
⁴ ore
⁵ treasure

⁶ a desert
⁷ concealed
⁸ rows of stars
⁹ the spring
¹⁰ shaft

¹¹ revel
¹² aisles
¹³ solve
¹⁴ riddle

End har ingen Ånd mig lært,
hvad mig tykkedes så sært ; ¹
end er ingen Stråle runden,
som kan lyse op fra Grunden.

Har jeg fejlet ? ² Fører ej
Frem til Klarhed denne Vej ?
Lyset blinder jo mit Øje,
hvis jeg søger i det Høje.

Nej, i Dybet maa jeg ned ;
Der er Fred fra Evighed.
Bryd mig Vejen, tunge Hammer,
til det Dulgtes Hjertekammer ! --

Hammerslag på Hammerslag
indtil Livets sidste Dag,
Ingen Morgenstråle skinner ;
ingen Håbets Sol oprinder. ³

H. IBSEN.

¹ seemed so strange

² err

³ rise

SIXTY-SECOND EXERCISE.

LETTER.

LONDON, *April 4th*, 1878.

Gentlemen,

Having this day formed ¹ a mercantile establishment, ² under the firm ³ of Blain Brothers, we take the liberty of waiting upon you with our circular ⁴ and ⁵ of requesting the favour of your orders. ⁶ We flatter ourselves that our general knowledge of business, and our extensive connections, ⁷ will offer peculiar advantages to our correspondents ; and by a strict attention

¹ etableret

⁴ Cirkulære

⁶ udstrakte Forbindelser

² Handelsforretning

⁵ at beståes med Deres

⁷ specielle Fordele

³ Firma

Ordre

to their interest, we shall endeavour to merit their confidence. We beg to refer you for further particulars, regarding our newly-established firm, to Messrs. Blain & Thornton, of London.

We have the honour to be,

Your obedient servants,

JOHN & ANDREW BLAIN.

Mr. and Mrs. A. beg the favour of Mr. F.'s company to play a friendly rubber with them this evening.

Wednesday, 11 a.m.

Mr. F. presents his best compliments to Mr. and Mrs. A., and is extremely sorry he cannot have the pleasure of accepting their friendly invitation, as he is confined to his room by a severe cold.

Mr. P. begs to inform Mr. J. that he has returned from his excursion, and will be glad to resume his lessons. Mr. P. hopes to see Mr. J. on Wednesday next at 10 a.m. as usual.

Monday evening.

SIXTY-THIRD LESSON.

ON THE APPPOSITION OF WORDS.

I. When two nouns are placed in appellative or designative apposition to each other, the special follows the more general appellation, while the latter takes the definite substantive-article; as for example :—

Hunden Hektor, the dog Hector.

Byen Bergen, the town of Bergen.

Forbjærget Nordkap, the promontory of Northcape.

II. In descriptive apposition the distinctive characteristic precedes the general designation; as in :—

Nordkap, Northcape.

Dampbåd, steamboat.

III. In titular or other designations used as cognomina, the words stand in simple apposition without the article; as for example :—

Dronning Margrete, Queen Margaret.

Valdemar Sejrr, Valdemar the Conqueror.

A. Titles ending in *e* lose the final *e* when used before the patronymics or personal names to which they belong; as for example: *Kong Kristian*, *Fyrst Reuss*, *Grev Solmers*, *Herr Als*, *Fru Smidt*, *Madam Olsen*, instead of *Konge*, *Fyrste*, etc. An exception to this rule is, however, afforded by those feminine designations which end in *inde* and *esse*; as for example: *Admiralinde Rothe*, *Baronesse Falsen*. When the designation “Mr.” is to be used for more than one individual in the sense of “Gentlemen,” “Messrs.,” it is written *DHrr*.

IV. As a rule, the names applied to places, or periods of time, are usually placed in simple apposition with the nouns which they designate; as for example :—

Kristiania Fjord, Christiania Fjord.
Stavanger By, the town of Stavanger.
Bornholm Ø, the island of Bornholm.
St. Hans Aften, St. John's eve.
Juli Måned, the month of July.
Tirsdag Morgen, Tuesday morning.

This rule is occasionally set aside for the sake of euphony as for example :—

Drammens Fjord, Drammen Fjord.
St. Birgits Dag, Saint Bridget's day.

READING

to translate into English.

I.

MED EN VANDLILJE.

Se, min bedste, hvad jeg bringer ;
 Blomsten med de hvide Vinger.
 På de stille Strømme båret
 svam den drømmetung ¹ i Våren.²

Vil du den til Hjemmet fæste,
 fæst den på dit Bryst, min bedste ;
 bag dens Blade da sig dølge ³
 vil en dyb og stille Bølge.⁴

Vogt ⁵ dig, Barn, for Tjernet's ⁶ Strømme ;
 farligt, farligt der at drømme !
 Nökken ⁷ lader som han sover ;—
 Liljer leger ovenover.

Barn, din Barm ⁸ er Tjernet's Strømme.
 Farligt, farligt der at drømme ;—
 Liljer leger ovenover ;—
 Nökken lader som han sover.

H. IBSEN.

dream-weighted
² the spring
³ conceal

⁴ billow
⁵ take heed
⁶ mountain-tarn

⁷ water-sprite (Norw.)
⁸ bosom

II.

LÆNGSEL¹

Jeg kunde slet ikke sove
 for Nattergalens Røst,²
 som fra de dunkle Skove
 sig trængte³ til mit Bryst.
 Jeg åbnede Vinduet stille,
 og stirred⁴ i Mulmet⁵ hen,
 og lod hver Elskovstrille⁶
 mig synge om dig igjen.

Et Posthorn i det Fjærne,⁷
 et Suk⁸ af Nattens Vind,
 et Glimt af en ensom Stjerne
 vakte mit stille Sind;
 dit Billed sagte hensvæved⁹
 paa Nattens Baggrund huldt;¹⁰
 mit Hjærte sitred og bæved¹¹
 længsel- og smertefuldt.

Min Tanke jeg dig sendte,
 jeg sendte dig mit Blik;
 ak, hvor mit Hjærte brændte,
 at intet Svar jeg fik!
 kun Pust¹² af Nattevinden,
 fra Grenen hist et Vink,
 den kolde Dugg¹³ fra Linden,
 og Stjernens kolde Blink.

Du tænker vel, jeg har glemt dig?
 men tro mig, om du kan,
 jeg har i Hjærtet gæmt¹⁴ dig,
 og skal over Gravens Rand,¹⁵

¹ Longing² voice³ penetrated⁴ gazed⁵ gloom⁶ love-cadence⁷ distance⁸ sigh⁹ softly floated¹⁰ calm, gentle¹¹ vibrate and tremble¹² breath¹³ dew¹⁴ hidden¹⁵ margin

trods Dødens bitre Kulde,
hinsides Livets Kyst
bære dit Navn, det hulde,
prentet¹ dybt i mit Bryst.

C. WINTHER.

¹ engraven.

SIXTY-THIRD EXERCISE.

There sat the young woman half snowed-down, her eyes closed in death¹ while the child had still life in it. The mother held it as before in her arms² under her cloak, holding it moreover³ round its body with her folded and now stiffened hands.

Isack took it carefully⁴ up between his large rough⁵ hands, and stood for a while, apparently embarrassed⁶ what to do with the child he had found.⁷ He looked about him with an irresolute⁸ air, but as it was obvious that there was no help to be expected from any one else, he seated himself carefully on the deck with his burden⁹ still in his hands. Then with a good deal of trouble¹⁰ he drew off one of his heavy sea boots, put¹¹ the child down into it, and carried it in that way by the straps,¹² hobbling¹³ upon his one stocking-foot over the sloping¹⁴ deck to the side¹⁵ where the boat was lying.

Then he stepped carefully down with his burden in his hands, laid the sea-boot in the hold¹⁶ at the stern of the boat,¹⁷ with his coarse cloth jacket¹⁸ over it, and remained sitting in expectation¹⁹ of the coming of the other two men.

¹ brystne Øjne

² Favn

³ fremdeles

⁴ varsomt

⁵ barkedede

⁶ øjensynlig forlegen

⁷ sit Fund

⁸ rådvild

⁹ Byrde

¹⁰ Besvær

¹¹ puttede

¹² efter Stroppene (Norw.)

¹³ hinkende

¹⁴ skrå

¹⁵ Ræling

¹⁶ Rum

¹⁷ Agtertoft

¹⁸ Vadmels Kuffe

¹⁹ på Vænt (Norw.)

APPENDIX.

EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF DANISH PREPOSITIONS.

Vi gik opad Bjærgen.	We went up the mountain.
Lad os gå ovenpå.	Let us go upstairs.
En Mand med sin Kone.	A man with his wife.
Han har et Hus med Have til.	He has a house with a garden.
Han leverede mig Bogen tilbage med mange Taksigelser.	He returned me the book with many thanks.
Jeg vil ikke have Noget at gøre med Dem.	I will not have anything to do with you.
Han blev forbauset over (slået ved) dette Svar.	He was struck with this answer.
Han dræbte sig med en Dolk.	He stabbed himself with a dagger.
Jeg skriver med en Stålpenn.	I write with a steel-pen.
Indenfor Murene.	Within the walls.
Det står ikke i min Magt.	It is not in my power.
Vi ere ikke ti Mile fra Stedet.	We are not ten miles from the place.
De må være her inden en Time.	You must be here within an hour.
Hvad er Livet uden en Ven?	What is life without a friend?
Han finder Noget at udsætte derpå.	He finds something to object to in it.
På min Risiko.	At my risk.
På min Befaling.	At my command.
Hvad hedder det på Engelsk?	What is that called in English?
Svar på mit Spørgsmål.	Answer my question.
At være vred på Nogen.	To be angry with one.
Det er klart af den hellige Skrift.	It is clear from Scripture.
Af Had. Af Overbevisning.	From hatred. From conviction.
At tabe af Sigte.	To lose sight of.

Der var Ingen uden disse to.

Jeg har ingen Penge hos mig.
De ere ved Bordet.
At være ved Hånden.
Ved hans Afrejse.
Ved alle Lejligheder.
Under Dødsstraf.
At stå i Gunst hos En.
Han er ret hendes Yndling.
Indtil dette Øjeblik.
En Mand mellem 30 og 40 År.

Fra Top til Tå.
Det var henimod Aften.
At være ifærd med Noget.
I Slaget ved Hastings.
Efter Skik og Brug.
At sé efter; søge efter.
Med et Ord.
At handle med Noget.
Med gyldne Bogstaver.
At klæde sig på Moden.
Ifølge (overensstemmende med)
Deres Befaling.
At sælge alenvis; efter Vægt.
Efter min Mening.
Ved Bordet.
Det er ude med ham.
At sove under åben Himmel.
På den Betingelse.
Det følger af sig selv.
Selvfølgelig; naturligvis.
Han blev greben af Skræk.
Han bor i Paris.
Han er ikke hjemme.
På samme Tid.
At tage Mål til en Dragt.
At tage til Kone.
At sidde godt til Hest.
Daphne blev forvandlet til et
Laurbærtræ.

There was nobody besides these two.

I have no money about me.
They are at table.
To be at hand.
At his departure.
On all occasions.
On pain of death.
To be in favour with one.
He is a great favourite of hers.
Till this moment.
A man from thirty to forty years of age.

From top to toe.
It was towards evening.
To be about a thing.
At the battle of Hastings.
According to usage.
To look for.
In one word.
To deal in something.
In letters of gold.
To dress in the fashion.
According to your orders.

To sell by the yard; by weight.
In my opinion.
At table.
It is all over with him.
To sleep in the open air.
On condition.
That is a matter of course.
Of course.
He was seized with terror.
He lives in Paris.
He is not at home.
At the same time.
To take measure for a dress.
To take to wife.
To sit well on horseback.
Daphne was transformed into a laurel tree.

Jeg synes meget godt om den unge Mand.	I am very much pleased with the young man.
Jeg har hørt det af forskellige Personer.	I have heard it from several persons.
Jeg kommer hjemmefra.	I come from home.
Maleriet hænger på Væggen.	The picture hangs against the wall.
Der er Nogen ved Døren.	There is somebody at the door.
Ved Enden af Året.	At the end of the year.
Jeg kender ham på Talen.	I know him by his speech.
Han hindrede mig i at skrive.	He hindered me from writing.
Tingen i og for sig selv.	The thing of itself.
Hvad er Grunden dertil?	What is the reason of it?
London ligger ved Themsen.	London lies on the Thames.
Vi have nu i åtte Dage ikke været udenfor Døren.	We have not been out of doors this week.
Han var placeret udenfor Linierne.	He was placed without the lines.
De kom uden nogen Indbydelse.	They came without any invitation.

DANISH IDIOMS IN COMMON USE.

Jeg har ikke Råd til det.	I cannot afford it.
At være rask til Fods.	To be a quick walker.
Det er rav galt.	It is sheer nonsense.
Rede Penge.	Ready money.
Gøre sig til Regel at...	To make it a rule to...
Det ser ud til Sne, Vind, o.s.v.	It looks like snow, wind, etc.
At rejse.	To raise; to travel.
At rejse Vildt.	To start game.
At rejse en Trætte.	To stir up strife.
En Storm rejser sig.	A storm is rising.
At skrive rent.	To make a copy.
Den rene Matematik.	Pure Mathematics.
Den rene Sandhed.	The plain truth.
Der var sådant et Rend efter Aviserne.	There was such a run on the papers.

At udlåne Penge på Rente.

Rentekammeret.

Rentefod.

Reserve-Vogn ; Hest, o.s.v.

At komme tilpas.

Han har Ret.

Ret Dem efter mig.

Vær De kun rolig.

At skulke af Skole.

Skudår.

På Skud.

At trække på Skuldrene.

At sætte sit Segl under....

At træffe En hjemme.

Denne Maler træffer godt.

At lære (kunne) Noget udenad.

At göra store Öjne.

At få et blåt Öje.

Det er ham en Torn i Öjet.

Under fire Öjne.

Efter Vægt.

At lægge Vægt på.

Jeg er ham ikke voksen.

At være stærk i Mathematiken,
o.s.v.

Hvad fattes Dem ?

Jeg tager Fejl.

Hvad fejler Dem ?

Den fine Verden.

Vi ses nok igen.

Hun véd det på Fingrene.

Den flade Hånd.

At have Fluer i Hovedet.

For stedse.

Gud forbarme sig !

Det er forbi med ham.

Jeg forgår af Kulde, Sult, o.s.v.

At bringe i Forslag.

To put money out at interest.

The exchequer.

Rate of interest.

Spare carriage ; horse, etc.

To come in the nick of time.

He is right.

Guide yourself by me.

Make yourself easy ; be quiet.

To shirk school.

Leap year.

Within gunshot.

To shrug one's shoulders.

To put one's seal to....

To find a person in ; at home.

That painter hits off a likeness well.

To learn (to know) anything by heart.

To be astonished.

To get a black eye.

It is an eyesore to him.

Between ourselves, confidentially.

By weight.

To lay stress on ; attach importance to...

I am not equal to him.

To be well versed (strong) in mathematics, etc.

What ails you ?

I am mistaken.

What ails you ?

The fashionable world.

We shall meet again.

She has it at her fingers' ends.

The palm of the hand.

To have a bee in your bonnet ; a screw loose.

For ever.

Good Gracious !

It is all over with him.

I am perishing of cold, hunger, etc.

To propose ; make a motion in Parliament.

At forsømme en Musik-, Fransk	To miss a music, (French, etc.)
(o.s.v.) Time.	lesson.
Trække frisk Luft.	To get fresh air, an airing.
At være fuld.	To be drunk.
At föje sig i.	To accommodate oneself to.
At föle sig.	To have a good opinion of oneself.
At före Kården, Pennen, o.s.v.	To wield the sword, pen, etc.
Skibet gik under.	The ship went down.
Dören står på Klem.	The door stands ajar.
Blive gal.	To go mad.
Gammelt Bröd.	Stale bread.
Han gik alt Ködets Gang.	He went the way of all flesh.
At have sin Gang i et Hus.	To have the run of a house.
Gråt (Kardus) Papir.	Brown paper.
Det er alt for grovt (galt).	That is too bad.
At slå En gul og blå.	To beat one black and blue.
At komme i Gæld.	To run into debt.
At gøre sin Bön.	To say one's prayers.
Indskrive sig som Medlem, o.s.v.	To enter oneself as a member, etc.
At begrave, stede til Jorden.	To bury.
Jordemoder.	Midwife.
At vidne imod Nogen.	To give evidence against any one.
Det vidner om stor Flid.	That indicates great industry.
Det vil bekomme Dem vel.	That will do you good.
Det bekom ham ilde.	He came off badly.
At tage Benene på Nakken.	To take to one's heels.
At vide god Besked med.	To be well-acquainted with any-thing, (posted up), be up to.
At have at bestille med.	To have to do with.
Hvad skal det betyde?	What is the meaning of that?
At se flau ud.	To look sheepish.
Jeg er ganske flau.	I feel quite faint.
Den blinde Makker (i Whist).	Dummy (at Whist).
En blind Dør (Vindue), o.s.v.	A false door (window), etc.
At före til Bogs.	To make an entry; to book.
Skyde Bom; at bomme.	To miss the mark.
En Bov; et Bovstykke.	The shoulder of an animal.
Bringe; Bringestykke.	Breast of an animal.
Han bryder sig ikke om det.	He does not care about it.
Selskabet brød tidlig op.	The company broke up early.
At sende Bud efter En.	To send for any one.

De ti Bud.

Byrd, Byrdsadel, Byrdsbrev.

At have trådt sine Börneako.

På anden Hånd.

Han er ikke et Hår bedre end
Broderen.

På et hængende Hår.

At hakke på.

Over Hals og Hoved.

Slutte en Handel.

At drive Handel med Ost, Speseri,
Sko, o.s.v.

Hartkorn.

Denne Gård står højt i Hartkorn.

Havblik; havareret.

Her og Hisset.

Ligge for Döden.

At drages med Döden.

At få Hjemlov.

Hundedage; Hundevagt.

At føre et stort Hus.

At holde Hus.

At drikke Ens Skål.

At fordrive Tiden.

At drive Spot (Spøg) med En.

At være Dus med En.

Dövstum; Dövstummeanstalt.

Hvidetirsdag; Langfredag.

Hvirvel, Hvirvelben; Hvirveldyr.

At fægte med Hælene.

At hæve Pengene på en Anvisning.

En høj Sö. En høj Mand.

Ved höjlys Dag; höjmælet.

Höjtidsdragt; Höjild.

Jegharen Höne at plukke med Dem.

The Ten Commandments.Birth, nobility by birth, certificate
of birth.To be past childhood, (trodden out
one's child-shoes).

At second hand.

There is not a pin to choose be-
tween him and his brother; he
is not a whit better than his
brother.

Within a hair's breadth.

To cavil at.

In desperate haste.

To strike a bargain.

To trade in cheese, spices, shoes,
etc."Hartkorn," the Danish standard
of land-tax.

This farm is rated high.

Dead calm; damaged by seawater.

Here and hereafter (this world and
the next.)

Be at death's door.

To be in the last agonies of death.

To get a furlough.

Dogdays; middle watch at sea.

To live in great style.

To make a racket.

To drink to one; drink one's health.

To while away the time.

To ridicule, make fun of.

To say thou (as between most inti-
mate friends).

Deaf-and-dumb; institution for..

Shrove Tuesday; Good Friday.

Vertebra; vertebrate animals.

To take to one's heels.

To cash a cheque.

A heavy sea. A tall man.

In broad daylight; loud-tongued.

Festive dress; bonfire.

I have a crow to pick with you.

At høre for noget.	To be blamed for something.
At høre på En.	To listen to a person.
At høre med; høre sammen.	To belong to, be one with.
Døgnet's Smag, Dögn (24 hours).	Fashion of the moment.
Dögnliv.	A trivial, ephemeral life.
Et egent Menneske.	An eccentric person.
Ej alene; ej engang.	Not only, not even.
En sølle Mand.	A poor, silly fellow.
At stå Fadder til et Barn.	Stand godfather to a child.
Faddersladder.	Gossip.
Det er ikke i mit Fag.	It is out of my line.
Kjolen falder, (sidder), ikke godt i Ryggen.	The dress (the coat) does not fit well in the back.
At falde om.	To fall down.
Det kunde aldrig have faldet mig ind.	That never would have occurred to me.
Hvorledes er det fat med ham?	What is the matter with him?
Kan jeg få fat på hende?	Can I find (get hold of) her?
At holde Bryllup.	To be married.
At stå Brud.	To go through the marriage ceremony (in speaking of a woman).
At gifte sig.	To marry; to be married.
At vie.	To perform the marriage ceremony.
Brud; Brudgom.	Bride; bridegroom.
Kæreste; Forlovede.	Engaged man, or woman.
Hvedebrødsdage. ¹	Honeymoon.
At ønske En til Lykke.	To congratulate one.
At ønske Lykke på Rejsen.	To wish one a pleasant journey.
Han er Faderen op ad Dage.	He is the very image of his father.
Hun gav ham en Kurv.	She refused (rejected him).
At samle Affald i en Have.	To gather windfalls.
At rette Maden an.	To serve up a meal.
Lad mig være! Slip mig!	Leave me alone! Let me go!
At dyrke Videnskaberne.	To devote oneself to science.
At dyrke Gud.	To worship God.
At have Sans for Musik, (Poesi).	To have a taste for music, (poetry).

¹ "Wheaten-bread days," in reference probably to the time when wheaten bread was used only at special festivities, rye and barley being the cereals in ordinary use in Scandinavian bread-stuff, till a comparatively recent period.

At lege med en Dukke.

At lege med Börn, som et Barn.

At lege.

Spille på Klaver, Fløjte, o.s.v.

At spille Skak, Biljard, Kort, o.s.v.

At have en Skrue løs.

Han er for længe siden død og borte
(begraven).

At holde Jul.

Jævnårig.

At brænde Kaffe.

At lægge i Kakkellovnen.

Kammerfrue; Kammerfrøken.

Kammerherre; Kammerjunker.

Drikke, (løbe), om Kap.

Jeg kan ikke blive klog derpå.

Det klæder Dem ilde.

Tiden er for knap.

Jeg finder det koldt.

Han kommer sig godt.

Det kommer an på, om han er der.

Hun er kommen sig af sin Sygdom.

At fatte sig kort.

At være i Kost hos En.

Så lang han var.

Langt ud på Natten.

Han er rent af Lave.

At lave Mad.

At le i Skægget.

Et lyst Hoved.

Jeg har Lyst til.

Hvad De lyster.

Det ligger mig på Læberne.

At læse sin Lektie op.

Lysen løber.

Jeg har aldrig sét Magen.

To play with a doll.

To play (with children), as a child.

To play at games, etc., where no
skill or special effort is required.

To play on the piano, flute, etc.

To play on instruments or at games
of skill, as chess, billiards,
cards, etc.

To have a screw loose.

He has long been dead and gone.

To keep Christmas.

Contemporary; the same age.

To roast coffee

To light (make) a fire in the stove.

Lady of honour; maid of honour.

Chamberlain; gentleman in wait-
ing.

To drink, (run a race), for a wager.

I cannot make it out.

That is unbecoming in (to) you.

There is not time.

I think it is cold.

He is improving.

That depends upon whether he is
there.

She has recovered from her ill-
ness.

To be brief.

To board with any one.

At full length.

Far on in the night.

He is quite out of his mind.

To cook, prepare food.

To laugh in one's sleeve (beard).

A clear head.

I am inclined to.

Whatever you like.

It is on the tip of my tongue.

To say one's lesson.

The candle drips (runs).

I never saw anything like

Majgrevinden ; Majstang.
 At finde sin Mand.
 Vil De være med ?
 At lade sig nøje.
 Et Kort over Danmark.
 Pak Dig !
 Pas Dem selv !
 Passiar.
 At være Pebersvend.
 En Peberkage.
 Et Pennehus.
 Et Persontog.
 Han er i Perlehumør.
 Småpenge.
 At skære en Pen.
 At tage Patent på.
 Regnen pisker på Ruderne.
 En Pladsmand (Norw.).
 En Plejefader (Moder), o.s.v.
 En Plejeskole.
 At praje et Skib.
 Med omgående Post.
 Post Frimærke.
 Postpenge.
 Barnet begynder at sanse.
 En Sansekage.
 Mellem os sagt.
 Det er sagtens ikke sandt !
 Drengen er splittergal.
 Det er lutter Sniksnak.
 Det er pære engelsk.
 Hun taler ram lavtysk.
 Han radbrækker det engelske
 Sprog.
 At lære på Ramse.
 At ransage (*Ran*, robbery).
 At sidde øverst i Klassen.
 At sidde øverst ved Bordet.
 At rende En omkuld.
 At råbe Navnene op.
 At slå til Ridder.
 Ridder af Hosebåndet.

The May-queen ; Maypole.
 To find one's equal.
 Will you go too ?
 To be content.
 A map of Denmark.
 Be off with you !
 Mind your own business !
 Nonsense.
 To be a bachelor.
 Gingerbread.
 Pen-case.
 A passenger train.
 He is in the best of tempers.
 Small change.
 To make (mend) a pen.
 To take out a patent.
 The rain is beating on the windows.
 A cotter ; small farmer.
 A foster father (mother), etc.
 A charity school.
 To hail a ship.
 By return of post.
 Postage stamp.
 Postage.
 The child begins to take notice.
 A box on the ear.
 Between ourselves.
 That is surely not true !
 The boy is stark mad.
 It is sheer nonsense.
 That is ultra English.
 She speaks genuine Low German.
 He murders the Queen's English.
 To learn by rote.
 To ransack.
 To be at the head of the class.
 To sit at the head of the table.
 To run over, upset one.
 To call out the names.
 To create (dub) a knight.
 Knight of the Garter.

At komme til Roret.
 Rigsdag.
 Rigsdagsmand.
 Sangværk.
 At slå Rynker i Panden.
 At rage i Ilden.
 At rage sig.
 At ride en Hest til.
 Skibet rider Stormen af.
 At sejle i rum Sö.
 At före noget til Regning.
 At have en Rus.
 At sove Rusen ud.
 At blive rört af Slag.
 De må se ind til mig.
 Se efter Börnene !
 Han bor på anden Sal til Gaden.

At stå i lys Lue.
 At stå på Grund.
 Hvorledes står det til ?
 Hun sætter meget på Stads.
 At tælle Stemmerne.
 En Stiftsådame.

En Stiftskirke.
 Bunden Stil.
 Ubunden Stil.
 At stille et Ur.
 At stille Kaution.
 En Stipendiat.
 At sætte et Stævne.
 At støde i en Trompet.
 Det suser for mine Ören.
 Et ægte Geni.
 Mine övrigte Dage.
 Enden på Bogen.
 At knytte Næven.
 At se nøje til.
 At lade sig nøje.
 At dreje Nöglen om to Gange.

To come into power.
 The diet (Parliament).
 Member of Parliament.
 Chime of bells.
 To knit the brows.
 To stir the fire.
 To shave.
 To break in a horse.
 The ship is riding out the storm.
 To sail in an open sea.
 To put down to one's account.
 To be intoxicated.
 To sleep one self sober.
 To have a stroke (paralysis).
 You must come and see me.
 Look after the children !
 He lives on the second floor to the front.
 To be in flames.
 To be aground.
 What are the rights of it ?
 She spends much on finery.
 To count the votes.
 A lady belonging to an asylum, or endowed lay-convent.
 A cathedral.
 Verse.
 Prose.
 To set a watch.
 To give security.
 An exhibitioner, bursar.
 To make an appointment with one.
 To blow a trumpet.
 My ears are tingling
 A true-born genius.
 The rest of my days.
 The end of the book.
 To clench one's fist.
 To look narrowly into.
 To be content with.
 To double-lock the door.

For ingen Pris.
 En Pris Tobak.
 At puste Lyset ud.
 At prøve et Par Sko.
 At nedgrave sit Pund.
 At ågre med sin Tid.
 Der blev pebet.
 Ondt Vejr.
 At byde En til Dans.
 At byde En Godmorgen.
 At falde sine Venner til Byrde.
 At føje sig efter Loven.
 At fæste Tjenestefolk.
 At blive forlovet.
 At love sig ud.
 At være ilde til Mode.
 At være ved godt Mod.
 Glædelig Jul !
 Lykkeligt Nytår !

Not on any account.
 A pinch of snuff.
 To blow out the candle.
 To try on a pair of shoes.
 To hide one's talent.
 To make the most of one's time.
 The people hissed.
 Bad, hard weather.
 To ask one to dance.
 To wish one good morning.
 To become a burden to one's friends.
 To conform to the law.
 To engage servants.
 To be engaged (betrothed).
 To make an engagement.
 To be uneasy, uncomfortable.
 To be of good heart, at ease.
 Merry Christmas !
 Happy New Year !

ABBREVIATIONS OF COMMON OCCURRENCE.

<i>d. A.</i> , dette År.	This year.
<i>d. M.</i> , denne Måned.	The present month, "instant."
<i>f. M.</i> , forrige Måned.	Last month.
<i>f. T.</i> , for Tiden.	For the time being.
<i>s.</i> , se.	See.
<i>l.</i> , læs.	Read.
<i>smig.</i> , sammenligne	} Compare.
<i>jvfr.</i> , jævnfør	
<i>ff.</i> , følgende.	} As follows.
<i>o. s. fr.</i> , og så fremdeles	
<i>o. s. v.</i> , og så videre	} Et cetera, and so on.
<i>o. dsl.</i> , og deslige.	
<i>d. v. s.</i> , det vil sige	} The same.
<i>d. s.</i> , o.; det er	
<i>Udg.</i> , Udgave, Udgiver.	} That is to say.
<i>Bd.</i> , Bind.	
<i>Kpt.</i> , Kapitel.	Edition, editor (publisher).
<i>S.</i> , Side.	Volume.
<i>No.</i> , Nummer.	Chapter.
<i>Anm.</i> , Anmærkning.	Page.
<i>Tlg.</i> , Tillæg.	Number.
<i>Bl.</i> , Blad.	Observation.
<i>Dl.</i> , Daler.	Supplement.
<i>Rdl.</i> , Rigsdaler.	Plate, leaf.
<i>Kr.</i> , Krone.	Dollar.
<i>Ø.</i> , Øre.	Rixdollar.
<i>Mk.</i> , $\frac{1}{2}$, Mark.	Crown.
<i>Sk.</i> , β , Skilling.	Øre ($\frac{1}{100}$ Crown).
<i>Hs. Maj.</i> , Hans Majestæt.	Mark.
<i>Hds. Maj.</i> , Hendes Majestæt.	Skilling.
<i>K. H.</i> , Kongelige Højhed.	His Majesty.
<i>Hr.</i> , Herr.	Her Majesty.
<i>F.</i> , Fru.	Royal Highness.
<i>Frk.</i> , Frøken	Sir, Mr.
<i>Jmf.</i> , Jomfru	Madame, Mrs.
	} Miss.

APPENDIX II.

THE ALPHABET.

CALLED.	PRONOUNCED.
A <i>Ah</i>	like <i>a</i> in far, barn, rather.
B <i>Bey</i>	like English <i>b</i> .
C <i>Sey</i>	like English <i>k</i> before <i>a, o, u</i> ; like <i>s</i> before <i>e, i</i> , in words of foreign origin.
D <i>Dey</i>	like English <i>d</i> at the beginning of words; like <i>th</i> in the middle ¹ or at the end of a word, as <i>beder</i> , <i>beg</i> , as in <i>bather</i> ; <i>lad</i> , let, as in <i>lath</i> .
E <i>Aye</i>	when long or close, like <i>a</i> in <i>baby</i> ; when short or open, like <i>e</i> in <i>bell</i> .
F <i>Eff</i>	like English <i>f</i> .
G <i>Ghey</i>	hard, like <i>g</i> in <i>go</i> , <i>gain</i> .
H <i>Haw</i> ²	like English <i>h</i> aspirated, except before <i>j</i> and <i>v</i> , when it is not sounded.
I <i>Ee</i>	when long, like <i>e</i> in <i>eel</i> ; when short, like <i>i</i> in <i>bit</i> .
J <i>Yodth</i>	like <i>y</i> in <i>yellow</i> .
K <i>Kaw</i>	like English <i>k</i> . (In Sweden, and some parts of Norway, <i>k</i> before <i>j</i> or certain vowels, has the sound of <i>ch</i> .)
L <i>Ell</i>	like English <i>l</i> .
M <i>Em</i>	like English <i>m</i> .

¹ The Norwegians do not give so strongly marked a *th* sound to the *d* in the middle, and at the end of words as the Danes.

² The Scandinavian tongues have retained the old Northern combination of *hv* in pronouns and other words which we write in English with *wh*; thus, for example, the Dano-Norwegian forms *hvo*, *hvem*, *hvad*, *hvis* (Icelandic *hvar*, *hveim*, *hvat*, *hves*) answer to the English *who*, *whom*, *what*, *whose*. In these combinations the *h* is not aspirated.

CALLED.	PRONOUNCED.
N <i>En</i>	like English <i>n</i> .
O <i>O</i>	when long or close, like <i>o</i> in fore; when short or open, like <i>o</i> in for.
P <i>Pey</i>	like English <i>p</i> .
Q <i>Coo</i>	like English <i>k</i> , and <i>qu</i> .
R <i>Er</i>	like English <i>r</i> in its weak sound.
S <i>Ess</i>	like English hard <i>s</i> .
T <i>Tay</i>	like English <i>t</i> .
U <i>Oo</i>	when long or close, like <i>oo</i> in school, cool; when short or open, like <i>u</i> in fulsome.
V <i>Vay</i>	like <i>v</i> in veil, and <i>w</i> in scowl.
Y <i>U (French)</i>	when long, like French <i>u</i> in <i>dure</i> , <i>futais</i> ; when short, like French <i>u</i> in <i>dur</i> , <i>nul</i> .
Ä <i>i</i> <i>Awe</i>	like <i>aw</i> in awful. This is written <i>aa</i> in all works printed before the beginning of this century, and is still much used in this double form by printers and writers.
Æ <i>æ</i> <i>Eh</i>	when long, like <i>a</i> in ale; when short, like <i>e</i> in net.
Ö <i>ö</i> (<i>Eu French</i>)	when long or close, like French <i>eu</i> in <i>seule</i> ; when short or open, like French <i>eu</i> in <i>peut</i> .

Till recently it has been customary to distinguish these two sounds by distinct characters, as *æ* and *ö*, the former having been used to denote the sound of French *eu fermé*, in *peu*, as *Øre*, ear; while the latter was reserved for words having the sound of French *eu ouvert*, in *veuve*, as *Örn*, eagle.¹

¹ It seems to be nearly as difficult for native-born Scandinavians, as for foreigners, to appreciate any greater difference of sound between these two letters than between various sounds of one and the same vowel under different positions in regard to other letters; and hence there is a general and very widely spreading tendency perceptible amongst writers of the present day to use only one sign—the *ö*—for all modifications of the Danish *eu* sound. The mixed Danish, Swedish, and Norwegian Commission, which met at Stockholm in 1869, to decide upon the system of orthography to be followed in the three countries, was opposed to the rejection of two distinct types for these sounds. It was, however, unanimous in its opinion “that if only one sign were to be retained in Dano-Norwegian, it should be the *Ö ö* instead of the *Ø ø*, the former having more affinity with the sign in use in Swedish.”

ON THE USE OF THE LETTERS.

In accordance with the requirements of modern Dano-Norwegian orthography, the letters *c*, *g*, *w*, *x*, and *z* should be wholly expelled from the alphabet, or, if admitted, should be regarded as mere alien characters, admissible only where a foreign word cannot be accurately represented without their aid.

C occurs in Old Northern, or Icelandic MSS., but it is in the character of a foreign letter; *k* expresses in the vernacular all the hard sounds of this letter, and *s* its softer sounds, while *kv* represents the sound of *qu* or the *qv* of the later Scandinavian peoples.

W occurs only in foreign names of places or persons, and is not a Scandinavian letter.

The sounds of *x* and *z* were in Old Northern rendered by the use of *ks*, and by *s* or *ts*.

Modern orthography has reverted to these ancient usages, and words derived from foreign sources, or others in which these letters were formerly used, are now written as follows: *en Kandidat*, a candidate; *en Kvinde*, a woman; *et Eksempel*, an example; *at sitre* (*zittre*), to tremble.

D is not pronounced after *l*, *n*, *r*, as *Guld*, gold (*gul*), *Land*, land (*lann*), *Ord*, word (*ore*).

Final *e* is always pronounced in Danish like the French *e* in *de*, *le*, as *en Have*, a garden (*hav'e*).

Fj has the sound of *i* in "idle," as *Vej*, way (*vie*), *stejl*, steep (*stîle*).

G often loses its distinctive sounds when preceded by a vowel, as *Negl*, finger-nail (*nîle*); *Nøgle*, key (*noyl'e*); *jeg*, I (*yêi*); *Steg*, roast (*sty*); *Leg*, play (*lie*). It must be observed, that in the last two words (but never in *jeg*, which is invariably pronounced *yêi*), and in many others in which *g* is preceded, either in a monosyllable or dissyllable by *e*, the *g* may be sounded where emphasis is to be given, as in poetry, etc. Thus *meget*, much, may in ordinary parlance

be called *meyet*, or in more impressive appeals *meyet*; at *lege*, to play, may similarly be pronounced at *ley'e* or at *layg'e*.¹ *Vogn*, carriage, is always pronounced *voun*, but *Sogn*, parish, may be sounded with or without the distinct *g*.

J has the sound of *i* in the middle and at the end of words, when preceded by *e*, as at *eje*, to own (*eye'e*); *Vej*, way (*vie*). When preceded by *ö* it becomes *oye*, as *Öjne*, eyes (*oyn'e*).

Modern orthography rejects *j* after *k*, where it has no distinctive sound, as in *kjær*, dear; *Kjöbenhavn*, Copenhagen, etc.; and these words are now written: *kær*, *Köbenhavn*, etc.

Sk in words such as *et Skud*, a shot, has the sound of *sg*, or *sch* in "school." It must be borne in mind, however, that this remark applies to the language spoken by Danes, rather than to that heard in Norway. In the latter country *sk* has often the sound of *sh*, as among Swedes; thus the word *Skyds* (conveyance by carriages and horses) is pronounced by Norwegians as *Shyts*; *en Skilling* (a small coin) as *en Shilling*, etc.

V has somewhat of the sound of English *w*, when preceded by *a*, *e*, *i*, as *tavs*, silent (*towes*); *Evropa*, Europe (*eweropa*); *Tviul*, doubt (*tweew'el*).

The letter *ä* which has been substituted in the modern spelling of Dano-Norwegian for double *a* (*aa*) has long been used by the Swedes, and is to be found in Danish and Norwegian MSS. of the 14th century.

Its restoration to the written language of the people has met with the approval of all the best writers of Denmark and Norway, but this character may nevertheless be said still to lack a fixed place in the alphabet. Thus, while in some dictionaries it is made to precede the single ordinary *a*, in others it follows *y*. The sound of the letter *ä* (Engl. *aw*) very nearly approximates to that of short, or open Danish *o*, as in *koge*, to cook.

Æ, which may be compared to English *e* in "verse," "terse," resembles open Danish *e*, in such words as: *Herre*, master, gentleman.

¹ The Norwegians are more careful than the Danes to give the sound of *g* to words such as *Leg*, *Steg*, etc.

ON ACCENTUATION.

Attempts have often been made by native writers to reduce the pronunciation of the Danish vowels to definite rules of accentuation, and various methods have been suggested for the arrangement of the vowel-accent (Tonehold, Tonefald) under definite groups of sounds. However important and valuable such systems may be, there is none, as far as we know, that can lay claim to any special authority among native-born Danes, or as being adapted to afford much practical help to the foreign student.¹

The following general rules may, however, be accepted as aids towards the pronunciation of Danish words.

I. In words of genuine Northern origin, the accent (*Tonehold*) falls on the first radical syllable, as: *betydelig*, considerable; *Ubetydelighed*, insignificance; *kongelig*, kingly; *forglemmelig*, forgettable; *uforglemmelig*, not to be forgotten.

II. In words of foreign origin, the accent generally falls on the last syllable, as: *Telegram*, telegram; *Karakter*, character; *Natur*, nature; *Inspektør*, inspector.

III. In compound words the accent is generally laid on the syllable which indicates the special character of the compound, or the predominant idea associated with it, as: *Spisesal*, dining-room (*at spise*, to dine; *Sal*, room); *Kirkegård*, churchyard (*Kirke*, church; *Gård*, yard, court).

IV. In compound names of places, the syllable which expresses the predominant character of the spot generally receives the accent, as: *Kristiansborg*, the castle of Christian; *København*, Copenhagen (the merchants' *haven*); *Frødensborg*, the castle of peace (that palace having been built to commemorate a peace).

¹ The advanced student in Danish, who is desirous of enlarging his knowledge of the mode in which the question of the vowel-accent is treated by native philologists, may with advantage consult a paper entitled "Det danske Sprogstørelse," by L. L. Hommel, in the *Tidsskrift for Philologi og Pædagogik*, Kjøbenhavn, 1868-69.

V. The vowels *e*, *o*, *i*, *u*, and *y* usually receive the accent, or in other words, maintain their close sound in monosyllables, as : *at le*, to laugh ; *en By*, a town ; or in the first syllable of a dissyllable ; as : *roliq*, quiet ; *Frihed*, freedom.

VI. Where a syllable ends in one or more consonants, the accent is seldom strongly marked, as : *Kongen*, the king ; *fandt*, found ; in some words, however, the vowel has a marked accent, as : *Ord*, word ; *Nord*, north.

VII. Words of foreign origin ending in *e* mute are pronounced in accordance with the rules of the language to which they belong, the *e* not being sounded, as : *en Scene*, a scene ; *en Façade*, often written *Fassad*, etc.

ON THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

The following may be accepted as general rules :—

I. A consonant standing between two vowels should be joined to the latter of the two, as : *at ma-le*, to paint ; *en Va-ne*, a custom.

II. When two consonants stand between two vowels, they must be separated, as : *Læs-ning*, reading ; *flit-tig*, industrious.

An exception to this rule is afforded by some words in which the second consonant is *r*, as : *at er-o-bre*, to conquer ; but where the *r* is preceded by *g* or *v*, the two consecutive consonants are generally separated, as : *at flag-re*, to flutter, flicker ; *Hav-re*, oats.

III. *Sk* and *st* usually remain inseparable, and form one syllable with the vowel, which they precede, as : *at hu-ske*, to remember ; *He-ste*, horses.

IV. Vowels that combine with one another, or with *j*, to form one sound, do not admit of separation, as : *nøj-e*, exact ; *Vej-e*, ways.

V. Where vowels do not coalesce with one another, or with *j*, they form separate syllables, as: *u-e-gentlig*, inappropriate; *at be-ja-e*, to confirm by an affirmative.

SPELLING AND MODE OF WRITING.

A complete revolution in spelling and in writing has, as already remarked, been in operation in Denmark and in Norway since the year 1869. As the question of the causes which led to this movement has already been considered in the Introduction to the present work, where attention was drawn to the numerous advantages presented by the new over the older system of spelling, we need here only recapitulate in a general form the main objects aimed at by the originators of the movement, and the most important orthographical changes which the system was intended to effect.

These changes were:—

I. To reject all foreign elements from the spelling of Dano-Norwegian, and to bring the latter back to the forms of the Old Northern, as far as existing conditions would allow of such a reversion.

II. To establish greater uniformity in the spelling of Swedish and Dano-Norwegian, in order to facilitate the comprehension of the literature of Scandinavia by all its three peoples.

III. The rejection of all the superfluous letters, together with a more exact determination of the vowel-sounds.

IV. The adoption of Latin characters in the place of the Gothic or German letters, which had previously been almost universally employed both in writing and printing; and the rejection of capitals for the initials of nouns.

The following examples, which are given with the view of exhibiting some of the most characteristic differences between the two modes of spelling will be found to indicate the leading features of the principles of conciseness and simplicity on which the modern system is based.

OLD FORM.—Drengen saae ham slaae Faaret med smaae graae Steene.

NEW FORM.—Drengen så ham slå Faaret med små grå Stene.

The boy saw him strike the sheep with little gray stones.

Hun har et blaaet Baand paa Haanden.

Hun har et blåt Bånd på Hånden.

She has a blue band on her hand.

Kongen faaer iffe Armeen paa Beenene.

Kongen får ikke Armeen paa Benene.

The king will not be able to raise the army.

Beenaaren er faaret.

Siin.

Siinaand.

Benåren er såret.

Vin.

Vinånd.

The vein of the leg is wounded.

Wine.

Spirits of wine.

Hver Viismand har iffe Viisdomsaanden.

Hver Vismand har ikke Visdomsånden.

Every wiseacre has not the spirit of wisdom.

Min kjære Ven kommer snart igjen til Kjøbenhavn.

Min kære Ven kommer snart igen til København.

My dear friend will come soon again to Copenhagen.

Hun har forffjellige Fugle paa Gaarden i Aar.

Hun har forskellige Fugle på Gården i År.

She has different kinds of birds on the farm this year.

Qvæget faaer strax dets Qvældsmad.

Kvæget får straks dets Kvældsmad.

The cattle will immediately get their evening meal.

Qvindens Character.

Det quiddrende Chor.

Kvindens Karakter.

Det kviddrende Kor.

Woman's character.

The twittering chorus.

Min Kammerat og Kollega Hansen er Commandant.

Min Kammerat og Kollega Hansen er Kommandant.

My comrade and colleague, Hansen, is a commandant.

Commandeuren gaar paa Comedie i Aften.

Kommandören går på Komedie i Aften.

The commodore is going to the theatre this evening.

Rebacteuren er Cabinetssecretair, men ikke Cancellist.

Redaktören er Kabinetssekretær, men ikke Kansellist.

The editor is a private secretary, but not a clerk in a government office.

Seer De Huusets Façade ?

Viinen er suur.

Ser De Husets Fasád ?

Vinen er sur.

Do you see the front of the house ?

The wine is sour.

Rjööbet er i Rjöffenet.

At fjöre.

Rjön.

Ködet er i Kökkenet.

At köre.

Kön.

The meat is in the kitchen.

To drive.

Sex.

Mit Uhr og min Kæde ere hos Uhmageren.

Mit Ur og min Kæde ere hos Urmageren.

My watch and my chain are at the watchmaker's.

Begelviis.

At bore.

Bægt

Vekselvis.

At vokse.

Vækst.

Alternately.

To grow.

Growth.

Gruubruun.

At gruüne.

Gruul.

Gulbrun.

At gulne.

Hul.

Yellow-brown.

To turn yellow.

Hollow.

Soble.

At jittre.

Wilhelm.

Sobel.

At sitre.

Vilhelm.

Sable.

To tremble.

William.

APPENDIX III.

RECAPITULATION OF GRAMMATICAL RULES

ETYMOLOGY (*Formlære*).

Two genders are recognised in Danish, viz. : the common gender, *Fælleskøn* (*fælles*, common; *Køn*, sex); and the neuter gender, *Intetkøn* (*intet*, nothing; *Køn*, sex).

All nouns belong to one or other of these genders.

Articles, adjectives, and pronouns must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer.

There are three articles in Danish: the indefinite article, *det ubestemte Kendeord*; and the definite article, *det bestemte Kendeord*, which is used under two distinct forms, viz. : as an affix, when it is known as "the substantive's article," and as an independent word, when it is known as "the adjective's article."

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE (*det ubestemte Kendeord*).

The indefinite article is: *en*, a, common gender; *et*, a, neuter gender.

I. The indefinite article, *en*, *et*, precedes the noun directly; as *en Mand*, a man; *et Barn*, a child.

II. Where the noun is qualified by an adjective, the indefinite article precedes the adjective directly, as: *en god Mand*, a good man; *et godt Barn*, a good child.

EXCEPTIONS to this rule are afforded, as in English, by the use of certain adjectives, adverbs, etc., which in most in-

stances are the same in both languages, as : *mangen en Gang*, many a time ; *sådan et Barn* ! such a child ! *for god en Mand*, too good a man ; *hvor stor en Ære*, how great an honour.

III. The indefinite article is omitted before titles, designations of profession, business, etc., or other characteristic specifications, as : *han er General*, he is a general ; *er han Præst eller Jurist* ? is he a clergyman or a lawyer ? *er hun Protestant eller Katholik* ? is she a Protestant or a Catholic ?

IV. The indefinite article may be used to express an approximative quantity, in the sense of "about," "nearly," as : *jeg så en tyve, tredive Mænd* ; I saw about twenty or thirty men.

The Old Northern had no indefinite article. The *en, et*, used in the modern Scandinavian tongues are simply adaptations of the numeral *én, ét*, one, without the accentuation of the vowel by which the latter are distinguished.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLES (*de bestemte Kendsord*).

The two forms of the Danish definite article are :—

1. The affix ...*en, ...et* (or ...*n, ...t*) pl. ...*ene* (or ...*ne*).
2. The independent article, *den, det* ; pl., *de*.

I. The former, which is known as the substantive's article, is added to, and incorporated with the word, which it directly defines, as :—

c.g. *Mand*, man ; *Manden*, the man ; *Mænd*, men ; *Mændene*, the men.
n.g. *Barn*, child ; *Barnet*, the child ; *Børn*, children ; *Børnene*, the children.

Here the affixes ...*en, ...et, ...ene*, are used because the nouns end in a consonant ; but where the noun ends in an *e*, this vowel is dropped in the affix, as :—

c.g. *Kone*, woman ; *Konen*, the woman ; *Koner*, women ; *Konerne*, the women.
n.g. *Værelse*, room ; *Værelset*, the room ; *Værelser*, rooms ; *Værelserne*, the rooms.

This form of the definite article is the representative of the Old Northern demonstrative pronoun *hinna, hinn* ; pl. neuter, *hin*, that ; which was originally made to follow in an independent form the noun to which it referred. In process of time the *h* was dropped, and the remaining *inn* (or *in*), *itt*, etc., of the pronoun was amalgamated with the noun which it indicated ; the original, *Madr-hinn, Dyr hinn*, of the Old Northern becoming finally changed in modern Danish into *Manden*, the man ; *Dyret*, the animal.

II. The second, or independent form of the definite article—c.g., *den* ; n.g., *det* ; pl., *de*, the—is used to precede the adjective which qualifies the noun, as :—

<i>den gode Mand</i> , the good man	<i>det gode Barn</i> , the good child,
<i>de gode Mænd</i> , the good men	<i>de gode Børn</i> , the good children.

This article is an adaptation of the demonstrative pronoun, *dén, dét, dé*, this, that, these, those ; without the accentuation of the *e*.

THE NOUN (*Navneord*).

All nouns belong either to the common gender (*Fælleskøn*), or the neuter gender (*Intetkøn*).

In the older forms of the Scandinavian language there were three genders, the masculine, feminine, and neuter ; but in process of time, words belonging to the two former fell under one common gender, while the original sexual differences in the terminations of articles and adjectives, etc., disappeared from the language spoken by the educated classes, although some traces of these triple distinctions of sex may still be met with in rural dialects.

I. As a general rule, nouns which indicate individual beings belong to the common gender, as :—*en Dreng*, a boy ; *en Pige*, a girl ; *en Fader*, a father ; *en Moder*, a mother ; *en Læser*, a reader ; *en Student*, a student ; *en Ko*, a cow ; *en Tyr*, a bull ; *en Fugl*, a bird ; *en Fisk*, a fish.

EXCEPTIONS to this rule are :—*et Mandfolk*, a male ; *et Fruen-*

timmer, a woman (Germ. *Frauentimmer*); and numerous words which indicate a class as well as an individual, as:—*et Folk*, a people; *et Barn*, a child; *et Menneske*, a person; *et Dyr*, an animal.

A. A distinctive feminine meaning is conveyed by the addition to the noun of such terminations as *inde*, *ske*, as: *en Sangerinde*, a female singer (masc. *Sanger*); *en Forførserske*, a temptress (masc. *Forfører*).

B. In some instances, distinctions of sex are expressed by the use of a characteristic noun or pronoun, as: *en Bonde- mand*, a peasant; *en Bondekone*, a peasant woman (*Bonde*, peasant); *en Hankat*, Tom-cat; *en Hunkat*, a female cat (*Kat*, cat; *han*, he; *hun*, she).

C. The feminine of national designations is formed by the addition of *inde* where the noun consists of two or more syllables, as: *en Engländer*, an Englishman; *en Engländerinde*, an Englishwoman; *en Russer*, a Russian; *en Russerinde*, a Russian woman. Where the designative noun consists of only one syllable, as *en Dansk*, a Dane, it may imply a person of either gender, or the distinctive feminine must be otherwise conveyed, as: *en dansk Dame*, a Danish lady; *en dansk Pige*, a Danish girl.

II. To the common gender belong the names of most trees and flowers, as: *en Bøg*, a beech; *en Rose*, a rose. (The word *Træ*, tree, is, however, of the neuter gender.)

III. To the common gender belong numerous words expressive of quality or character, ending in *e*, *de*, *dom*, *hed*, *skab*, as: *en Varme*, a warmth; *en Højde*, a height; *en Barn- dom*, a childhood; *en Dumhed*, a stupidity; *en Ondskab*, a badness.

IV. Also various nouns expressive of action, derived from verbs, and ending in *en*, *else*, *ing*, *st*, *t*, as: *en Løben*, a running; *en Læsning*, a reading; *en Opfindelse*, a discovery; *en Fangst*, a capture; *en Vækst*, a growth.

To the neuter gender belong:—

I. The names of countries, metals, and letters, as:

England, England; *Tyrkiet*, Turkey; *Guld*, gold; *Sølv*, silver; *et A*, an A; *et B*, a B.

II. Many words derived from foreign sources, which end in *at*, *et*, *eri*, *ti*, as: *et Kvadrat*, a square; *et Kabinet*, a cabinet; *et Krammeri* (*Skramleri*), lumber; *et Politi*, police.

III. Many nouns of one syllable formed from verbs by dropping the final *e* of the infinitive, as: *et Skrig*, a cry (*at skrige*, to cry); *et Digt*, a poem (*at digte*, to compose poetry).

REMARKS.—The gender of nouns has in some instances been changed in the course of time, this change having originally been more general from the neuter to the common gender, as: *en Sommer*, a summer; *en Vin*, a wine, etc., which in the older forms of the language were neuters. In later times the change has been more frequently in the opposite direction, as: *et Sted* (formerly *en Sted*), a place; *et Bogstav* (formerly *en Bogstav*), a letter of the alphabet. This earlier form of gender is still to be traced in certain compound and other words, as: *ingensteds*, nowhere; *efter Bogstaven*, according to the letter.

Some words may be said to be still passing through this process of change; as: *Slags*, kind; *Helbred*, health; *Minut*, minute; *Punkt*, point; which occur with either gender.

Some words have different meanings according to the different gender to which they belong, as: *en Bord*, a border; *et Bord*, a table.

(For a list of such words, see p. 123, *Twenty-ninth Lesson*).

Compound words follow the gender of the last word of the group, as: *en Landmand*, a countryman, farmer; *et Bøgetræ*, a beech-tree.

Nouns may be classed under three heads:—

I. Those which form their plural by the addition of *s* to the singular, as: *et Hus*, a house, pl. *Huse*.

REMARK.—The words belonging to this class were originally nearly all of the masculine gender, but it now includes a large number of neuters.

For a full list of words ending in *e* in the plural, see pp. 111—113, *Twenty-sixth Lesson*, where words, which double the final consonant in inflection, are marked by an asterisk, as : *en Ryg*, a back, pl. *Rygge*.

II. Those which form their plural by the addition of *er* to the singular, as : *en Sø*, a sea, pl. *Søer*.

To this class, which is the most numerous, belong words of foreign origin, and more especially those which are derived from Latin or Greek, as : *et Fotografi*, a photograph ; *et Telegram*, a telegram ; *en Kandidat*, a candidate.

This class may also be said generally to include nouns ending in *hed*, and *skab*, and many in *ing*, as : *en Menighed*, a community ; *en Egenskab*, a property ; *et Venskab*, a friendship ; *en Mening*, an opinion.

(For a list of words belonging to this class, see pp. 116—117, *Twenty-seventh Lesson*).

III. Those which remain the same in the plural as in the singular, as : *et År*, a year ; *ti År*, ten years.

REMARK.—The majority of words in this class belong to the neuter gender.

(For a list of words belonging to this class, see pp. 119—120, *Twenty-eighth Lesson*).

THE DECLINATION OF NOUNS (*Navneordets Bøjning*).

I. As in English, nouns are not modified by any case, except the genitive, which is formed by the addition of *s*, or *es*, according to the termination of the word ; as for example :—

SINGULAR.—Nom., Dat., Obj.

<i>et Skib</i> , a ship,	<i>Skibet</i> , the ship,	<i>det store Skib</i> , the large ship.
<i>en Ko</i> , a cow,	<i>Koen</i> , the cow,	<i>den store Ko</i> , the large cow.

Genitive.

<i>et Skibs</i> , of a ship,	<i>Skibets</i> , of the ship,	<i>det store Skibs</i> , of the large ship.
<i>en Koes</i> , of a cow,	<i>Koens</i> , of the cow,	<i>den store Koes</i> , of the large cow.

PLURAL.—Nom., Dat., Obj.

<i>Skibe</i> , ships,	<i>Skibene</i> , the ships,	<i>de store Skibe</i> , the large ships.
<i>Køer</i> , cows,	<i>Køerne</i> , the cows,	<i>de store Køer</i> , the large cows.

Genitive.

<i>Skibes</i> , of ships,	<i>Skibenes</i> , of the ships,	<i>de store Skibes</i> , of the large ships.
<i>Køers</i> , of cows,	<i>Køernes</i> , of the cows,	<i>de store Køers</i> , of the large cows.

The genitive *es* occurs as a rule in words ending in any vowel but *e*; as *en Bro*, a bridge, gen. *Broes*; and in *y*, *s* or *sk*; as for example: *en By*, a town, gen. *Byes*; *en Tjavs*, a rag, gen. *Tjaveses*; *en Laks*, a salmon, gen. *Lakses*.

II. After proper names ending in *s*, 's is sometimes used instead of *es*, as *Lars's Hest*, the horse of Lars; *Judas's Pung*, Judas's purse.

III. Where several words are used to indicate the noun standing in the genitive, it is only the last, as in English, which takes the *s*, as: *Kongen af Danmarks Børn*, the king of Denmark's children.

IV. As in English, the genitive case may be indicated by the use of the preposition *of* (Danish *af*, *til*); as: *Mælken af Koen*, the milk of the cow; *hun er Søster til Soldaten*, she is the sister of the soldier.

V. The genitive always precedes the word governing it, as: *for Guds Skyld*, for God's sake.

VI. The genitive of nouns, to which the substantive-article has been affixed, is formed both in the singular and plural by the addition of *s*; as for example: *Markens Grænse*, the boundary of the field; *Børnenes Legetøj*, the children's playthings.

VII. The genitive termination may be wholly dispensed with, where the sense of quantity is conveyed by the noun governing the word; as for example:—

en Mængde Mennesker, a number of men
et Pund Kød, a pound of meat
en Hob Penge, a heap of money.

A similar ellipsis may occur in regard to the names of places; as for example:—

Odense By, the town (of) Odense.

Where the designation of a person or thing is derived from the name of a place, no such elliptical form is used, and the

name is made to assume the form of an adjective, terminating in *er* for both genders and numbers ; as for example :—

en Hamborger K  bmand, a merchant of Hamburg
et Londoner Hus, a London-house
to Pariser Damer, two ladies of Paris.

ON ADJECTIVES (*Till  gsord*).

I. Adjectives retain their abstract form when they stand between the indefinite article *en*, a c.g., and the noun which they qualify, as for example :—

en god Dreng, a good boy
en smuk Pige, a pretty girl.

But when an adjective stands between the indefinite article *et*, a n.g., and the noun which it qualifies, it takes a *t* at the end of the word (except in cases to which reference will be made), as for example :—

et godt Barn, a good child
et smukt B  nd, a pretty ribbon.

EXCEPTIONS.—This rule is not followed where the adjective ends in *e*, *o*, *es*, *s*, *sk*, *t*, *u*, *y*, as for example :—

et bange Dyr, a timid animal
et tro H  rte, a true (faithful) heart
et stakkels Fruentimmer, a poor (miserable) woman
et norsk Ord, a Norwegian word
et let Arbejde, a light labour
et   dru Menneske, a sober person
et bly Barn, a shy child.

II. Adjectives are made to end in *e* :—

1. When they stand between the definite, independent article, *den*, *det*, *de*, and the noun which they qualify, as : *den gode Broder*, the good brother ; *det store Tr  *, the large tree ; *de gode Marker*, the good fields.

2. When they are used as representative nouns, and are preceded by the definite, independent article, *den*, *det*, *de*, as : *den Gode*, the good person ; *de Gode*, the good persons ; *det Sl  tte*, the bad thing.

8. When they are used as plural representative nouns, without being preceded by an article, as : *Rige*, rich (people); *Kære*, dear (ones).

III. Adjectives follow the same rules, in regard to cases, as nouns, undergoing no change except in the genitive, where they take *es* or *s*, according to the terminal letter of the word; as for example :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.— <i>en Rig</i> , a rich man	Nom.— <i>Rige</i> , rich men
Gen.— <i>en Rigs</i> , of a rich man.	Gen.— <i>Riges</i> , of rich men.
Nom.— <i>den Gode</i> , the good man	Nom.— <i>de Gode</i> , the good men
Gen.— <i>den Godes</i> , of the good man.	Gen.— <i>de Godes</i> , of the good men.

IV. The adjective follows the noun, instead of preceding it, when it constitutes a surname, or distinctive appellation ; as :

Karl den Store, Charles the Great
Gorm den Gamle, Gorm the Old
Kristian den Anden, Christian the Second.

V. Some adjectives, which express value, or obligation, follow the noun ; as :—

han er mig mange Penge skyldig, he owes me a great deal of money
De er den Ære værdig, you are worthy of the honour.

REMARKS.—Exceptions to the general rule, that an adjective must agree in number with the noun which it qualifies, are afforded by the plurals *alle*, *mange*, which may be used with a singular noun ; as :—

tager fat alle Mand! take heed all ye men !
Klokken er mange, it is late (the clock is many [hours]).

The adjective *hel*, all, whole, in combination with a numeral, conveys a difference of meaning in accordance with its place in the sentence ; as :—

ti hele År, ten complete years
hele ti År, as much as ten years.

VI. Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, or *er*, lose the *e* before *l*, *n*, *r*, when they are preceded by the definite, independent article *den*, *det*, *de*, or when they are used as nouns. Thus for example :—

ædel, noble, changes to *ædle*, *den ædle Mand*, the noble man
moden, ripe, „ *modne*, *den modne Pære*, the ripe pear
mager, meager, thin, „ *magre*, *den magre Hest*, the thin horse.

VII. Adjectives of one syllable, or those in which the last syllable is short, double the final consonant; as:—

<i>slem</i>	} bad {	<i>slemme</i>	<i>fornem</i> , distinguished, <i>fornemme</i>
<i>slet</i>		<i>slette</i> .	<i>let</i> , light, easy, <i>lette</i> .
<i>tør</i> , dry, <i>tørre</i>			<i>krum</i> , crooked, <i>krumme</i> .

VIII. In regard to the terminations of adjectives, the following may be accepted as general rules:—

1. That *agtig* and *lig* express resemblance to, or affinity with an object, and may generally be rendered in English by the particle “ish,” as *sortagtig*, blackish; *syrlig*, sourish;

2. That *bar* (derived from *at bære*, to bear) corresponds to the English “ful,” “able;” as *frugtbar*, fruitful; *ærb*, honourable;

3. That *som* conveys a sense of action, while *lig*, when joined to a word referring to properties of the mind, implies a possible rather than an existing action; as: *tænksom*, thoughtful, meditating; *tænkelig*, conceivable; *følsom*, feeling; *følelig*, perceptible.

ON THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(*Tillægsordenes Gradforhøjelse*).

I. In Dano-Norwegian the comparative of the adjective is formed by adding *ere* to the positive, except when the word ends in *e*, in which case it takes only *re*; while the superlative is formed by adding *est* to the positive, except when the word ends in *e*, *ig*, or *som*, in which cases it takes only *st*, as for example:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>blød</i> , soft	<i>blødere</i>	<i>blødest</i>
<i>grov</i> , coarse	<i>grovere</i>	<i>grovest</i>
<i>stille</i> , quiet	<i>stillere</i>	<i>stillest</i>
<i>gruelig</i> , horrible	<i>grueligere</i>	<i>grueligst</i>
<i>virksom</i> , active	<i>virksommere</i>	<i>virksomst</i> .

REMARK.—It will be observed that in the last example the *m* is doubled in the comparative. This is done because the last syllable *som* in *virksom* is unaccentuated, and the doubling of the final consonant is required in the comparative and superlative of words consisting of one short, unaccentuated syllable, as for example :—

<i>grön</i> , green	<i>grönnere</i>	<i>grönnest</i>
<i>tör</i> , dry	<i>törrere</i>	<i>törrest</i>
<i>let</i> , light (easy)	<i>lettere</i>	<i>lettest</i>
<i>smuk</i> , pretty	<i>smukkere</i>	<i>smukkest</i> .

II. Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, drop the *e* in the comparative and superlative, as for example :—

<i>ædel</i> , noble	<i>æd_lere</i>	<i>æd_lest</i>
<i>døven</i> , idle	<i>døv_nere</i>	<i>døv_nest</i>
<i>sikker</i> , certain	<i>sik_rere</i>	<i>sik_rest</i> .

III. As in English, the comparative and superlative may be expressed by the adverbs *mér*, *mere*, more; and *mest*, most; as for example :—

<i>våd</i> , wet	<i>mere våd</i>	<i>mest våd</i>
<i>fattig</i> , poor	<i>mere fattig</i>	<i>mest fattig</i> .

The use of *mér* or *mere*, and *mest* is imperative :—

1. For adjectives, derived from the participles of verbs.
2. For adjectives, compounded of another adjective and a noun.

3. For adjectives, ending in unaccentuated *et*, *ed*, *s*, *sk*; as :

<i>ophidset</i> , excited	<i>mere ophidset</i>	<i>mest ophidset</i>
<i>skæbvenet</i> , crooked-legged	<i>mere skæbvenet</i>	<i>mest skæbvenet</i>
<i>fremmed</i> , strange	<i>mere fremmed</i>	<i>mest fremmed</i>
<i>fælles</i> , mutual, common	<i>mere fælles</i>	<i>mest fælles</i>
<i>malerisk</i> , picturesque	<i>mere malerisk</i>	<i>mest malerisk</i> .

IV. The comparative and superlative of the diminutive degree are expressed by *mindre*, less, and *mindst*, least.

V. The superlative may be made additionally forcible by the use of the word *aller*, all, most of all, as for example: *det allergrønneste Træ*, the greenest tree of all.

VI. *End*, than, is used as in English to characterise a comparative; as for example :—

min Pære er sødere end hendes, my pear is sweeter than hers.
hun er mindre ophidset end min Broder, she is less excited than my brother.

Many adjectives form their comparative degrees irregularly, as : *god, good, bedre, better, bedst, best.*

REMARK.—For a list of such adjectives, and the changes to which they are subjected, see p. 43, *Twelfth Lesson*. For defective adjectives, see p. 44, same Lesson.

The Danish Cardinal Numbers are:—

<i>én</i>	1	<i>elleve</i>	11	<i>tredive</i>	30
<i>to</i>	2	<i>tolv</i>	12	<i>fyrretyve</i>	40
<i>tre</i>	3	<i>trættten</i>	13	<i>halvtreds, or halvtredsindstyve</i>	50
<i>fire</i>	4	<i>fjorten</i>	14	<i>tresindstyve</i>	60
<i>fem</i>	5	<i>femten</i>	15	<i>halvfjærds, or halvfjærdsindstyve</i>	70
<i>seks</i>	6	<i>seksten</i>	16	<i>firsindstyve</i>	80
<i>syv</i>	7	<i>sytten</i>	17	<i>halvfems, or halvfemsindstyve</i>	90
<i>åtte (otte)</i>	8	<i>atten</i>	18	<i>hundrede (et Hundrede)</i>	100
<i>ni</i>	9	<i>nitten</i>	19	<i>tusinde (et Tusinde)</i>	1000
<i>ti</i>	10	<i>tyve</i>	20	<i>en Million</i>	1,000,000

Up to one hundred the lesser numeral precedes the greater; after one hundred it follows it, as for example: *én og tyve, to og tredive, tre og fyrretyve, 21, 32, 43; hundrede og én, tusinde og to, 101, 1002.*

REMARK.—For an explanation of the differences between the Danish and Norwegian modes of numeration, see p. 190, *Forty-Fourth Lesson*.

The Danish Ordinal Numbers are:—

<i>den første</i>	1st	<i>den ellefte</i>	11th	<i>den tredivte</i>	30th
<i>„ anden</i>	2nd	<i>„ tolvte</i>	12th	<i>„ fyrretyvende</i>	40th
<i>„ tredje</i>	3rd	<i>„ trættende</i>	13th	<i>„ halvtredsindstyvende</i>	50th
<i>„ fjerde</i>	4th	<i>„ fjortende</i>	14th	<i>„ tresindstyvende</i>	60th
<i>„ femte</i>	5th	<i>„ femtende</i>	15th	<i>„ halvfjærdsindstyvende</i>	70th
<i>„ sjette</i>	6th	<i>„ sekstende</i>	16th	<i>„ firsindstyvende</i>	80th
<i>„ syvende</i>	7th	<i>„ syttende</i>	17th	<i>„ halvfemsindstyvende</i>	90th
<i>„ åttende</i>	8th	<i>„ attende</i>	18th	<i>„ hundrede</i>	100th
<i>„ niende</i>	9th	<i>„ nittende</i>	19th	<i>„ tusinde</i>	1000th
<i>„ tiende</i>	10th	<i>„ tyvende</i>	20th		

I. The only ordinal number which is modified by gender is *anden*, which makes *andet* in the neuter.

II. As in English, it is only the second of two composite numbers that is declined, as for example: *den én og tyvende,*

the one and twentieth; *den syv og tredivte*, the seven and thirtieth.

III. Numerals immediately precede the noun; and those of the ordinal numbers which are declinable must agree in number and gender with the noun; as for example:—

Damen har tabt tre Öre, the lady has lost three öre.

jeg mödte ham på anden Sal, I met him on the second floor.

han tog den første Lejlighed at öve sig i Udtalen, he took the first opportunity of perfecting (exercising) himself in the pronunciation.

IV. In speaking of large combinations, a singular noun may sometimes be employed with the plural numeral; as for example:—

Generalen faldt ind i Landet med femten tusinde Mand, the general invaded the country with fifteen thousand men.

REMARK.—For terms of quantity, and the manner in which these are made to precede the noun to which they refer, without the intervention of a preposition (as: *et Glas Vand*, a glass of water), see pp. 36—37, Tenth Lesson.

ON ADVERBS (*Biord*).

We pass directly from adjectives to adverbs, in order the better to draw attention to the close association which exists between these two parts of speech, as may be seen in the following groups.

I. Some adverbs are identical with adjectives, especially where the latter end in *s*, *ig*, etc., as: *fælles*, mutual, mutually; *indvortes*, internal, internally; *evig*, eternal, eternally; *rigtig*, right, rightly:

II. Some adverbs are identical with the neuter singular of adjectives, as: *smukt*, prettily (c.g. *smuk*); *vildt*, wildly (c.g. *vild*); *tyndt*, thinly (c.g. *tynd*); *godt*, well (c.g. *god*); *klogt*, cleverly (c.g. *klog*):

III. Some adverbs are formed from nouns, or adjectives, by the addition of certain affixes, viz., *vis* (Engl. "wise"), *ledes*, etc., as: *stykkevis*, piecewise; *lykkeligvis*, happily;

sandsynligvis, probably; *anderledes*, otherwise; *ligeledes*, likewise; *således*, suchwise.

IV. Some adverbs of time are formed by adding *lig* (identical with English "ly") to the noun from which they are derived, as for example: *årlig*, yearly; *daglig*, daily; *ugentlig*, weekly.

Many adverbs of time and place are formed, however, by prefixing a preposition to the noun which they indicate, as for example: *i år*, this year; *til års*, in years; *ifjor*, last year; *imorgen*, to-morrow, etc.; *undervejs*, underway, on the way; *til søs*, by sea.

REMARK.—It must be observed that, in accordance with the rules of modern spelling, these words should be written separately, as: *i Fjor*, *under Vejs*, etc.

For a list of irregular adverbs, and certain words used adverbially, see p. 70, *Seventeenth Lesson*.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

(*Biordenes Gradforhøjelse*.)

Danish adverbs admit, like adjectives, of various modes of comparison:—

I. By dropping the final *t*, and taking *ere* or *re* in the comparative, and *est* or *st* in the superlative, as for example:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>klogt</i> , cleverly	<i>klogere</i>	<i>klogest</i>
<i>slem</i> <i>t</i> , badly	<i>slemmere</i>	<i>slemmest</i>
<i>morsomt</i> , amusingly	<i>morsommere</i>	<i>morsomst</i>
<i>nydeligt</i> , charmingly	<i>nydeligere</i>	<i>nydeligst</i>
<i>ofte</i> , often	<i>oftere</i>	<i>oftest</i> .

The comparative and superlative are the same in adverbs as in adjectives, where the former have been derived from the latter; as: *klogt* from *klog*, *slem**t* from *slem*, etc.

For the manner in which some adverbs form their comparative and superlative, see p. 74, *Eighteenth Lesson*.

II. Some adverbs of place indicate motion towards a spot, by the absence of a terminal *e*; and repose at a spot, by the addition of an *e*; as for example:—

<i>at gå ud</i> , to go out	<i>at være ude</i> , to be out
<i>at gå hjem</i> , to go home	<i>at være hjemme</i> , to be at home
<i>at gå op ad Trappen</i> , to go up the stairs	
<i>at være oppe på Bjergene</i> , to be up on the mountain.	

Thus it will be observed that a condition of rest is expressed by the addition of *e*.

III. Some adverbs are formed by the addition of an *s* to an adjective, and sometimes to a noun, and are in such cases generally used in combination with a preposition; as:—

<i>tværs</i> , på <i>tværs</i> , across,	from <i>tvær</i> , cross
<i>til Sengs</i> , to bed,	„ <i>en Seng</i> , a bed.

ON PRONOUNS. (*Stedord*.)

The Danish personal pronouns (*Personlige Stedord*) are: sing. *jeg*, I; pl. *vi*, we; sing. *du*, thou; pl. *I*, ye; sing. *han*, he, *hun*, she, *det*, it; pl. *de*, they.

For the manner in which these and the possessive pronouns are declined, see p. 51, *Thirteenth Lesson*.

REMARK.—It must be observed that *jeg*, I, is written with a small initial letter, unless when it begins a sentence; *du*, thou, is used, as in German, among near relatives and friends, in prayer, etc.; *I*, ye, is used in addressing numbers; *han*, he, and *hun*, she, are still employed in rural districts in addressing an individual of inferior rank; *de*, they, written with a capital *D*, as *De*, is used with the verb in the singular in the sense of “you” in addressing one individual, as: *Har De Deres Hat med Dem?* have you your hat with you?

The possessive pronouns (*Ejestedord*), as will be seen by referring to p. 51, are inflected, and must be made to agree in gender and number with the noun, as: *min Fader*, my father; *dit Barn*, thy child; *vore Venner*, our friends.

For the distinctive differences between the pronouns *hans*, his, and *sin*, his own, see p. 52, *Thirteenth Lesson*; and p. 188, *Forty-fourth Lesson*.

The demonstrative pronouns (*Påpegede Stedord*) are :—

Singular.		Plural.	Singular.		Plural.
COMMON G.	NEUTER G.		COMMON G.	NEUTER G.	
<i>den</i> , that	<i>det</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>slig</i> , such	<i>sligt</i>	<i>slige</i>
<i>denne</i> , this	<i>dette</i>	<i>disse</i>	<i>sådan</i> , such	<i>sådant</i>	<i>sådanne</i>
<i>hin</i> , that	<i>hint</i>	<i>hine</i>	<i>samme</i> , same	<i>samme</i>	<i>samme</i> .

Selv, pl. *selve*, self, admits, as in English, of being added to pronouns for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, for example: *jeg selv*, I myself; *selvsamme Mand*, the self-same man.

Begge, both, is used directly before the numeral *to*, two; as *begge to*, both of them.

A. The demonstrative pronouns *den*, *det*, *de* are, in point of fact, the component parts of the independent definite (adjective) article used as pronouns, and distinguished, when thus employed, by a special intonation of the *e*, as *dēt Bord*, that table; *dēn Stol er min*, that chair is mine.

B. *Hin*, *hint*, *hine*, that, those, used in opposition to *denne*, *dette*, *disse*, this, these, are similarly mere adaptations of the Old Northern independent definite article.

C. *Slig*, *slige*, such, are used very much the same in Danish as in English. In the singular, *slig* must precede the indefinite article, as *slig en Mand*, such a man; in the plural, *slige* precedes the substantive directly; as, for example, *slige Koner*, such women.

D. *Sådan*, *sådant*, *sådanne*, such, may be used both before and after the indefinite article; as, for example, *en sådan Mand*, *sådan en Mand*, such a man.

E. *Samme*, same, is the defective form of an Old Northern demonstrative pronoun, and is used very much as its English equivalent; as, for example, *den selv samme Mand*, the self-same man; *den samme Aften*, the same evening.

The RELATIVE PRONOUNS (*Henvisende Stedord*) are :—

	Singular.		Plural.
	COMMON GENDER.	NEUTER GENDER.	
Nom., Acc.,	<i>hvilken</i> , which	<i>hvilket</i>	<i>hvilke</i>
" "	<i>som</i> , which, that	<i>som</i>	<i>som</i>
only used in Nom.,	<i>der</i> , which, that	<i>der</i>	<i>der</i> .

I. *Hvem*, objective of *hvo*, who ; is used instead of *hvilken*, when the relative applies to a *person*.

II. *Hvad*, *hva* for *en*, what ; is used instead of *hvilket*, where the relative is taken in a general sense, and refers exclusively to a neuter singular.

III. *Hvis*, whose, which ; is used as the genitive of all the above given demonstrative pronouns.

These three last are used as interrogative pronouns, see p. 60, *Fifteenth Lesson* ; where, and at p. 61, the indefinite and irregular pronouns will be found, together with explanations of the manner in which they are respectively used. See also pp. 188, 189.

VERBS. (*Udsagnsord*.)

The auxiliaries, *at have*, to have ; *at være*, to be ; *at blive*, to become ; *at skulle*, shall ; *at ville*, will ; *at måtte*, may ; *at få*, to get, are all used in the conjugation of verbs.

For complete paradigms of the verbs *at have*, and *at være*, see pp. 23—25, *Appendix* to *Sixth Lesson* ; for those of *at skulle*, and *at ville*, see pp. 49, 50, *Appendix* to *Twelfth Lesson*.

At skulle and *at ville* serve to express the future tenses ; as do also *at blive* and *at få*.

REMARKS.—The auxiliary *at have* is used (1) in the compound tenses of active verbs, as : *jeg har elsket*, I have loved ; (2) in the conjugation of all deponents, as : *han har nøjets med lidt*, he was satisfied with little. The auxiliary *at være* is used (1) with neuter verbs, as : *han er bleven*, he has become ; (2) with verbs of motion, as : *hun er kommen*, she has come.

At være and *at blive* are also used in the conjugation of passive verbs.

Skal and *vil* (present indicatives of *at skulle* and *at ville*) are not used precisely as their English representatives "shall" and "will," since the first implies, in Danish, an obligation or intention on the part of the agent, while the second expresses futurity without any action of the will ; as for example :—

Jeg spørger om De skal rejse, I am asking whether you are going to travel (will travel).

jeg tror at jeg vil være altfor træt, I think that I shall be too tired.

REGULAR VERBS. (*Regelrette Udsagnsord.*)

Danish regular verbs admit of being grouped under two heads :—

I. Those which take *ede* in the past tense of the indicative, and *et* in the past participle, as *at elske*, to love.

II. Those which take *te* in the past tense of the indicative, and *t* in the past participle, as *at tænke*, to think.

For paradigms of these two modes of conjugation see pp. 64—66, *Sixteenth Lesson* ; and for examples of verbs conjugated in accordance with these two typical forms, see p. 78, *Appendix to Eighteenth Lesson*.

Some verbs admit of being conjugated according to both forms, see p. 79.

PASSIVE VERBS. (*Lidsformen.*)

The passive is formed by adding *s* to the infinitive and the simple tenses of the active form of the verb, both in the singular and plural ; as : *at elske*, to love ; *at elskes*, to be loved ; *jeg elsker*, I love ; *jeg elskes*, I am loved ; *vi elskede*, we loved ; *vi elskedes*, we were loved.

REMARKS.—In the present indicative, as will be observed, the final *r* of the singular is changed into an *s*; as: *han elsker* becomes *han elskes*, he is loved. The *s* of the passive is the representative of the reflective pronoun *sig*, self.

For a paradigm of the passive forms of the regular verbs *at elske*, to love (Conjugation I.), and *at tænke*, to think (Conjugation II.), see p. 89, *Twenty-first Lesson*; and for the manner in which the passive may be rendered by the help of *at være* and *at blive*, and its impersonals may be formed, see the same Lesson, p. 88.

REMARKS.—Neuter verbs cannot be put in a passive form. Passive verbs cannot be conjugated with the auxiliary *at have*, to have, but must, as already observed, take *at være*, to be; while certain tenses may be formed by the help of *at blive*, at *få*, etc., see p. 88.

DEPONENT VERBS. (*Genvirkende Formen.*)

Deponents, or passive verbs having an active sense, require to be conjugated with the verb *at have*, to have, while they take *ts* in the participle past; as: *det har lykkets mig* (*at lykkes*, to succeed, be lucky), I have succeeded.

The reciprocal action expressed in some deponents may be rendered by using the active form of the verb with a reciprocal pronoun, such as *hinanden* or *hverandre*; as for example:—

de se hinanden i Spejlet, they see each other in the glass.

de gør hverandre stor Skade, they do each other great injury.

REMARK.—The repetition of the pronoun in the accusative case gives, as in English, a *reflective*, and not a reciprocal meaning; as for example:—

vi se os i Spejlet, we see ourselves in the glass.

de gør dem stor Skade, they do themselves great injury.

For the difference of meaning conveyed by the use of a deponent, or of an active verb with a reciprocal pronoun, as:—

<i>vi ses i Aften på Komædien</i>	} we shall meet to-night at the
<i>vi se hinanden i Aften på Komædien</i>	

see p. 256, *Fifty-ninth Lesson*.

IRREGULAR VERBS. (*Ureglerette Udsagnsord.*)

The irregularities of Danish verbs admit, to some extent, of being reduced to definite rules, and to be classed under distinct heads, as in the following :—

I. Verbs which retain the same radical vowel in all their parts, and which do not take any terminal letters to mark the past; as for example: *faldt, falden*, from *at falde*, to fall.

II. Verbs which change the radical vowel in the past only; as for example: *gik*, from *at gå*, to go.

III. Verbs which change the radical vowel both in the past tense and in the participle past; as for example: *bandt, bunden*, from *at binde*, to bind.

These three groups admit of being subdivided into various lesser groups, or classes, as will be seen by the following examples :—

1st CLASS.

Verbs which retain the radical vowel of the infinitive in all their parts :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at græde, to weep	græd	har grædt	
at hedde, to be called	hed	har hedt	
at holde, to hold	holdt	har holdt	er holdt, ere holdte
at hugge, to hew	hug, or huggede	har hugget	er huggen, t, ere hugne
at komme, to come	kom		er kommen, ere komne
at løbe, to run	løb	har løbet	er løben, ere løbne
at sove, to sleep	sov	har sovet	

2nd CLASS.

Verbs which change the long radical *i* of the infinitive into long *e* in the past tense and the past participle :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at blive, to remain	blev		er bleven, blevet, ere blevne
at drive, to drive, urge	drev	har drevet	er dreven, t, ere drevne
at glide, to slide	gled	har gledet	er gleden, t, ere gledne
at gnide, to rub	gned	har gnedet	er gneden, t, ere gnedne
at gribe, to seize	greb	har grebet	er greben, t, ere grebne
at knibe, to pinch	kneb	har knebet	er kneben, t, ere knebne
at pibe, to pipe, whistle	peb	har pebet	
at ride, to ride	red	har redet	er reden, t, ere redne
at rive, to tear	rev	har revet	er reven, t, ere revne
at skride, to step, advance	skred	har skredet	er skreden, t, ere skredne
at skrige, to cry	skreg	har skreget	er skregen, t, ere skregne
at skrive, to write	skrev	har skrevet	er skreven, t, ere skrevne
at stige, to mount	steg		er stegen, t, ere stegne
at stride, to strive, contend	stred	har stredet	er stredet, stridt, ere stredne, stridte
at svide, to scorch	sved	har svedet	er sveden, t, ere svedne
at vige, to give way	veg		er vegen, t, ere vegne
at vride, to wring	vred	har vredet	er vreden, t, ere vredne.

3rd CLASS.

Verbs in which the radical long *i* is changed to *e* only in the past tense:—

at bide, to bide	bed	har bidt	er bidt, ere bidte
at lide, to suffer	led	har lidt	er lidt, ere lidte
at slide, to drudge, wear out	sled	har slidt	er slidt, ere slidte
at smide, to forge	smed	har smidt	er smidt, ere smidte
at trine, to tread	tren	har trinet	er trint, ere trinte.

4th CLASS.

Verbs in which the radical short *i* and *y* are changed to *a* in the past tense, and to *u* in the participles:—

at binde, to bind	bandt	har bundet	er bunden, t, ere bundne
at briste, to burst	brast		er brusten, t, or bristet, ere brustne
at drikke, to drink	drak	har drukket	er drukken, t, ere drukne
at finde, to find	fandt	har fundet	er funden, t, ere fundne
at rinde, to run, flow	randt	har rundet	er runden, t, ere rundne
at slippe, to slip	slap	har sluppet	er sluppen, t, ere slupne
at spinde, to spin	spandt	har spundet	er spunden, t, ere spundne
at springe, to spring	sprang	har sprunget	er sprungen, t, ere sprungne
at svinde, to vanish	svandt		er svunden, t, ere svundne
at svinge, to swing	svang	har svunget	er svungen, t, ere svingne
at synge, to sing	sang	har sunget	er sungen, t, ere sungne.

5th CLASS.

Verbs which change the radical vowel *e* or *æ* of the infinitive to *a* in the past tense:—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at bede, to bid, beg	bad	har bedet	er bedt, ere bedte
at gælde, to avail, be worth	gjaldt	har gældt	
at hænge, to hang (intr.)	hang	har hængt	er hængt, ere hængte
at hænge, to hang (tr.)	hængte	har hængt	
at knække, to crack	knak	har knækket	er knækket, ere knækkede
at kvæde, to sing	kvad	har kvædet	er kvædet, ere kvædede
at skælve, to tremble	skjalv or skælvde	har skælvet	
at smække, to smack	smak or smækkede	har smækket	er smækket, ere smækkede
at være, to be	var	har været	

6th CLASS.

Verbs which change the short *æ* of the infinitive to short *a* in the past tense, and to *u* in the participles; and the long *æ* of the infinitive to long *a* in the past tense, and to *â* in the participles:—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at brække, to break	brak	har brukket	er brukken, t, ere brukne
at bære, to bear	bar	har båret	er båræn, t, ere bårne
at hjælpe, to help	hjalp	har hjulpet	er hjulpen, t, ere hjulpne
at skære, to cut, score	skar	har skåret	er skåræn, t, ere skårne
at sprække, to crack	sprak or sprækkede	har sprukket	er sprukken, t, ere sprukne
at stjele, to steal	stjal	har stjålet	er stjålen, t, ere stjålne
at træffe, to hit, meet	traf	har truffet	er truffen, t, ere trufne
at trække, to draw, pull	trak	har trukket	er trukken, t, ere trukne

7th CLASS.

Verbs which change the long *y* of the infinitive into long *ø* in the past, and into long *u* or *ø* in the participles, although the latter occasionally retain the long *y* :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at bryde, to break	brød	har brudt	er brudt, ere brudte
at byde, to order, offer	bød	har budt	er buden, t, ere budne
at flyde, to flow	flød	har flydt	er flydt, ere flydte
at flyve, to fly	fløj	har fløjet	er fløjten, t, ere fløjne
at fortryde, to repent	fortrød	har fortrudt	er fortrudt, ere fortrudte
at fyge, to rush	føg or fygede	har føjet or fyget	
at gyde, to pour	gød	har gydt	er gydt
at gyse, to shudder	gøs	har gyst	
at krybe, to creep	krøb	har krøbet	er krøben, t, ere krøbne
at lyde, to sound	lød	har lydt	er lydt, ere lydte
at lyve, to tell a lie	løj	har løjet	
at nyde, to enjoy	nød	har nydt	er nydt, ere nydte
at nyse, to sneeze	nøs	har nyst	
at ryge, to smoke	røg	har røget	er røget, ere røgede
at skyde, to shoot	skød	har skudt	er skudt, ere skudte
at snyde, to cheat, blow one's nose	snød	har snydt	er snydt, ere snydte
at stryge, to stroke, to iron linen	strøg	har strøget	er strøgen, t, ere strøgne.

8th CLASS.

Verbs which change the *a* of the infinitive into long *o* in the past tense :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at drage, to drag, draw	drog	har draget	er dragen, t, ere dragne
at erfare, to experience	erfor	har erfaret	er erfaret, ere erfarede
at fare, to drive	før	har faret	er faret, ere farede
at grave, to dig	grov or gravede	har gravet	er gravet, ere gravne
at jage, to chase	jog or jagede	har jaget	er jagen, t, ere jagne
at lade, to let be, to load	lød	har ladet	
at slå, to slay	slog	har slået	er slået (slagen)
at stå, to stand	stod	har stået	
at tage, to take	tog	har taget	er tagen, t, ere tagne.

9th CLASS.

Verbs which change the *i* of the infinitive into *a* in the past tense :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at gide, to like	gad	har gidt	
at give, to give	gav	har givet	er given, t, ere givne
at klinge, to resound	klang	har klinget	
at sidde, to sit	sad	har siddet	
at stinke, to stink	stank	har stinket	
at tie, to be silent	tav or tang	har tiet	

10th CLASS.

Verbs which take *o* or *å* in the past tense, while they retain the radical vowel of the infinitive in the participles :—

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	ACTIVE PAST PARTICIPLE.	PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.
at le, to laugh	lo	har lét	
at ligge, to lie (down)	lå	har ligget	
at se, to see	så	har sét	er sét, ere sete
at æde, to eat (of animals)	åd	har sædt	er sædt, ere sædte
at sværge, to swear	svor	har svoret	er svoren, t, ere svorne.

Some verbs are both etymologically and grammatically irregular ; of these the principal are the auxiliaries ; as :—

INDICATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.	PAST.	PAST.		
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plur.</i>			
jeg	jeg, vi			
er	var, vare	været	at være	to be
har	havde	haft	at have	to have
kan	kunde	kunnet	at kunne	to be able, can
må	måtte	måttet	at måtte	to be allowed, may
skal	skulde	skullet	at skulle	to be obliged, shall
vil	vilde	villet	at ville	to be willing, will.

Besides these, the following verbs are similarly irregular :—

bör	burde	burdet	at burde	to be obliged, ought
dör	döde	(er) död	at dö	to die
gör	gjorde	gjort	at göra	to do, make
tör	turde	turdet	at turde	to dare, ought
ved	vidste	vidst	at vide	to know.

I. Verbs are distinguished as being *open*, or "*weak*," or *closed* or "*strong*." Under the former head are included verbs belonging to the two regular forms of conjugation, while under the latter, which is the more numerous, and more genuinely Northern in its character, are comprised all the irregular verbs. (See p. 236, *Fifty-Fifth Lesson*.)

II. Some verbs admit of being conjugated in accordance both with the "*weak*" (regular) and the "*strong*" (irregular) mode of inflection, but this is generally where the verb can be used both in a transitive and an intransitive sense. In such cases the transitive is expressed by the regular, and the intransitive by the irregular form; as: *han brækkede Armen*, he broke his arm; *Grenen brak*, the bough broke.

III. Some intransitive verbs may acquire a transitive sense by a change in the radical vowel of the word; as:—

<i>at brage</i> , to crack	<i>at brække</i> , to break
<i>at falde</i> , to fall	<i>at fælde</i> , to fell
<i>at fare</i> , to go, drive	<i>at føre</i> , to lead
<i>at knage</i> , to creak	<i>at knække</i> , to crack
<i>at ligge</i> , to lie	<i>at lægge</i> , to lay
<i>at ryge</i> , to smoke	<i>at røge</i> , to smoke (meat, etc.)
<i>at sidde</i> , to sit	<i>at sætte</i> , to set.

IV. Reflective verbs must be followed by an objective pronoun; as: *jeg bader mig*, I bathe myself (me).

V. Impersonals may be derived from active, neuter, or passive verbs; as: *det blæser*, it blows; *der går han*, there he goes; *her køres ikke*, no one may drive here, *lit.*, here is not to be driven. (See p. 88, *Twenty-First Lesson*.)

ON THE MOODS AND TENSES OF VERBS.

(*Udsagnsordenes Måder og Tider*.)

I. The present indicative is used in a future and conditional, as well as in a present sense; as:—

imorgen rejser han, he is going to leave to-morrow.
rejser han, så går jeg med, if he should leave, I shall go also.

II. The past tense is used to express a period of indefinite time, answering often to the English compound imperfect, and also in a conditional or potential sense ; as :—

jeg læste da han kom, I was reading when he came.
gik hun blot bort! if only she would go away!

III. The future tenses, as already observed, are formed by the help of *at skulle*, shall, implying obligation ; *at ville*, will, implying merely futurity ; *at blive*, to become, and *at få*, to get ; as :—

jeg skal nok komme imorgen, I shall certainly come to-morrow.
jeg vil straks gøre det, I will do it immediately.
om det ikke holder op, bliver jeg gal, if that does not cease, I shall go mad.
når jeg får skrevet, when I shall have written.

It must be observed that the use of *at få*, in this sense, is nearly, if not quite, obsolete among Danes, although still prevalent among Norwegians.

IV. The use of the optative or potential mood is limited to solemn appeals or conventional expressions ; as :—

Vor Herre vær os nådig! the Lord have mercy on us!
Kongen leve! long live the king!
Gud bevare! Goodness! God preserve us!

Where an optative, or conditional sense is to be expressed in ordinary conversation, defective expletives, such as *gid*, and *mon*, or *bare*, are used to convey this meaning ; as :—

gid jeg nu komme godt fra det! if I only may come well out of that!
mon han skulde være blevet syg? could he have fallen ill?
bare han kommer! if only he would come!

(See p. 268, *Sixty-First Lesson*.)

V. Participles (*Tillægsformer*) may be used as adjectives, in which case they must agree, like these, in gender and number with the noun to which they refer ; as for example:—

en brølende Løve, a roaring lion
en indbunden Bog, a bound book
et bundet Dyr, a chained animal.

In some cases these participles may be used adverbially, as for example :—

han kom ridende, he came riding
hun sidder fangen, she is (sits) imprisoned.

When the present participle is used elliptically as a noun, it takes an *s* to mark the genitive case ; as :—

den Lidendes Tilstand, the suffering person's condition.
en Rejsendes Baggage, a travelling person's luggage.

The use of the participle-present as a gerund is not admissible in Danish, which requires some other mode of construction ; as for example :—

on going up the hill, I..., *da jeg gik op ad Højen...*
 after listening to her singing, they..., *efter at de havde hørt på hende*
medens hun sang...

VI. The infinitive of verbs, whether active or passive, admits of being used in the sense of a nominative or objective noun ; as for example :—

at elske sit Barn er en Moders største Pligt, to love her child is a mother's highest duty.
vi erhverve os vor Næstes Agtelse ved at være redelige, we gain the esteem of our neighbours by being upright.
at agtes er noget som Enhver skulde stræbe efter, to be esteemed is what every one should strive after.

PREPOSITIONS. (*Forholdsord*.)

I. Prepositions in Danish admit of being grouped under two heads :—

As primary and simple.

<i>ad</i> , to, at	<i>med</i> , with
<i>af</i> , of, from	<i>mod</i> , against
<i>bag</i> , behind	<i>om</i> , about
<i>blandt</i> , among { (implying surroundings	<i>over</i> , over
<i>efter</i> , after { of the same kind)	<i>på</i> , on
<i>for</i> , for, before (space)	<i>samt</i> , together with
<i>fra</i> , from	<i>siden</i> , beside
<i>før</i> , before (time)	<i>til</i> , to
<i>gennem</i> , through	<i>trods</i> , in spite of
<i>hos</i> * at the house of, with	<i>uden</i> , without
<i>i</i> , <i>inde i</i> , <i>inden i</i> , in	<i>under</i> , under
<i>mellem</i> , between, in the midst (implying different surroundings)	<i>ved</i> , by, at near.

* For remarks on the use of *hos*, see p. 20, Sixth Lesson.

As compound.

bagafter, after
bagved, behind
foran, before, beyond
formedelst, by means of
iblandt, amongst
igennem, through

imellem, between
imod, against
istedetfor, instead of
omkring, round about
ovenpå, on the top of
udenfor, outside of.

The difference between *blandt* and *mellem* will be seen in the following example: *Klinten vokser mellem Stene blandt Hveden*, the corn-cockle grows in the midst of stones among the wheat.

II. Some prepositions have the effect of making the noun, with which they are combined, take a final *e* when the compound word is used adverbially; as for example: *ilive*, alive; *itide*, in time: *tildøde*, to death; *tilskamme*, for shame's sake; *medrette*, in justice.

The final *e* is retained even when the preposition and noun are decomposed into distinct words; as for example: *til Åre*, in years; *til Skamme*; *i Tide*, etc. (See p. 148, *Thirty-Fifth Lesson*.)

III. *Til*, to, *fra*, from, when followed by a noun in the genitive, convey a sense of motion; as: *at gå til Sengs*, to go to bed; *at gå fra Bords*, to leave the table.

IV. Differences in respect to periods of time admit of being indicated by the use of *i*, *på*, and *om*; the first implying the past, where the noun takes final *s*; the second the future; and the third some recurring period; as: *jeg var der i Tirsdags*; *jeg skal der igen på Torsdag*, *men jeg er der ellers altid om Søndagen*, I was there on Tuesday, I shall be there again on Thursday, but I am otherwise always there on Sundays.

På, when used before the names of the days of the week, always conveys a sense of futurity; as:—

han kommer måske på Søndag, he may possibly come on Sunday.
men jeg tror heller at han gør Rejsen hertil på Mandag, but I rather think that he will come here next Monday.

Om answers to the English "on," "in," "about," when a slightly indefinite sense is conveyed ; as for example :—

vi vønte vor Fader om fjorten Dage, we expect our father in about a fortnight.

min Søster var her om Morgen, my sister was here in the morning

V. The prepositions *af*, *for*, *om*, *over*, *til*, *ved* frequently govern an infinitive preceded by *at*, and used as a gerund ; as :—

jeg er ked af at høre den Mand tale, I am tired of hearing that man talk.

han kom ikke for at undskylde sig, he did not come to exculpate himself.

jeg bryder mig ikke om at se ham, I do not care about seeing him.

Bonden var ved at arbejde da jeg så ham, the peasant was working when I saw him.

hun var hjærteligt glad over at se ham, she was heartily glad to see him.

her er ingen Plads til at sidde på, there is no place here to sit on.

REMARK.—When the infinitive is used in apposition with a noun, no preposition precedes it ; as for example :—

den gode Vane at stå tidlig op, the good habit of getting up early.

VI. Some prepositions admit of being placed after instead of before the words which they govern, and thus lose their predominant characteristic ; as for example :—

han gik mig forbi, he went past (by) me.

Dem var det ikke han talte om, it was not you of whom he spoke.

det var mig som hun gav det til, it was to me she gave it.

luk Døren op, open the door.

luk ikke Døren i (til), do not shut the door.

For a list of prepositions which do not admit of such transposition, see p. 206, *Forty-Eight Lesson*.

VII. *Ad*, *on*, *towards*, *at*, *to*, *by* ; and *af*, *off*, *from*, *of*, although occasionally confounded, are generally marked by distinctive meanings ; as :—

han gik ad Skoven til, he went towards the wood.

han gik af Vejen, he went off the road.

For the special mode of using some of the Danish prepositions, see APPENDIX I., p. 275.

CONJUNCTIONS. (*Bindeord.*)

The following are the principal Danish conjunctions :—

I.—COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

<i>at</i> , that	<i>når</i> , when, if (present and fut. time)
<i>både...og</i> , both...and	<i>og, også</i> , and, also
<i>da</i> , as, since (past time)	<i>om</i> , if
<i>der næst</i> , in the next place	<i>så</i> , so, therefore
<i>dersom</i> , in case that, if	<i>samt</i> , together with
<i>fordi</i> , because	<i>siden</i> , since
<i>hvis</i> , if, in case that	<i>som</i> , as
<i>ifald</i> , in case	<i>såvel...som</i> , as well...as.

II.—COMPOUND AND OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.

<i>alligevel</i> , notwithstanding	<i>ligesom</i> , as
<i>efterdi</i> , since	<i>men, såmen</i> , but, indeed
<i>eftersom</i> , whereas, in accordance with	<i>nok så mange</i> , ever so many
<i>eller, ellers</i> , or, otherwise	<i>nok så snart</i> , ever so soon
<i>end, than</i>	<i>skönt (endskönt)</i> } notwithstanding
<i>enddog</i> , although	<i>om endskönt</i> }
<i>for at</i> , in order that	<i>så godt som</i> , as good as, as well as
<i>hverken...eller</i> , neither...nor	<i>uagtet</i> , notwithstanding.

REMARK.—*At*, to, is used to indicate the infinitive of the verb, as in English.

1. Adverbs and prepositions are frequently used in the sense of conjunctions ; as :

han købte mange Ting, nemlig Knive, Sakse, o.s.v., he bought many things, as knives, scissors, etc.
jo større Besværlighed, jo større Ære, the greater the difficulty, the greater the honour.

(See p. 219, *Fifty-First Lesson.*)

2. The conjunctions *at*, that ; *hvis, ifald*, in case, if ; *når*, when ; *dersom, if*, in case, may be omitted, when the second co-ordinate part of a compound sentence expresses the main idea ; as for example :

jeg så (at) han faldt, I saw that he fell.
vidste jeg det (dersom jeg vidste det), spurgte jeg ikke derom, had I known it (if I had known it), I should not have asked about it.

INTERJECTIONS. (*Udråbsord.*)

Danish interjections are either derived from the imperative of verbs, or are mere ejaculatory, or imitative sounds; as: *Ti!* hush! from *åt tie*, to keep silence; *Hej!* Ho! *Puf!* Pop!

ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS.(*Orddannelse.*)

I. Nouns (*Navneord*), as has already been stated, frequently end in *de*, *dom*, *e*, *hed*, *me*, *skab*, and it is by the addition of one or other of these terminal affixes to an adjective, that a large class of nouns is formed; as:—

en Dybde, a depth, from *dyb*, deep.
en Plathed, a flatness „ *plat*, flat.
en Troskab, a fidelity „ *tro*, faithful.

For additional examples of this mode of formation, and for the distinctive differences of meaning attached to the various affixes, see pp. 131, 132, *Thirty-First Lesson*.

1. Many nouns are formed by the addition of *en*, *ing*, *ning*, *else*, *sel*, to verbs; as:—

en Tænken, a mode of thought, from *at tænke*, to think.
en Længsel, a longing „ *at længe*, to long for.

REMARK.—The terminations *ing*, *ning*, generally indicate actions, but occasionally they are used for personal nouns, as: *en Olding*, an old man; *en Hedning*, a heathen. The same is the case with regard to *else*, as: *et Spøgelse*, a ghost, although this affix usually implies a property or mental action. (See p. 15, *Fifth Lesson*, and p. 131, *Thirty-First Lesson*.)

II. Most adjectives (*Tillægsord*) end in *agtig*, *ig*, *lig*, *tig*, *som*, *bar*, *et*, *sk*, or *isk*.

REMARKS.—*Agtig* generally implies direct resemblance or approximation, as : *tyvagtig*, thief-like ; *storgtig*, grand.

Sk, isk, usually indicate the nationality of an individual or thing, as : *dansk*, Danish ; *preussisk*, Prussian ; but the termination *sk* in ordinary adjectives is often associated with words conveying a disparaging meaning, as : *spodsk*, derisive ; *lumsk*, deceitful.

For fuller definitions of the terminations of adjectives, see p. 139, *Thirty-Third Lesson*.

III. Adverbs (*Biord*), as has already been observed, are formed from adjectives, or are identical with them. Grammarians are undecided, and some of the best writers are even at variance with one another, and not determined in their own practice, as to whether any distinction should be made between adverbs and adjectives, where the latter end in *lig*. Thus, while some would write : *det kan umuligt blive farligt*, that cannot possibly be dangerous, others might write : *det kan ikke mulig blive farlig*.

IV. Verbs (*Udsagnsord*) derive great nicety of definition by means of the different particles in which they end, or by a change in their radical vowel, as :—

at flage, to deck with flags

at kvæde, to chant

at flagre, to flap, flicker

at kvidre, to chirp.

1. The German affixes *be* and *er* convey an intensified reflective or psychical meaning to the original verb ; as :—

at tænke, to think

at fare, to move on

at betænke, to consider

at erfare, to learn by experience.

2. The affixes *mis*, *und*, *van*, generally imply a negation, or deficiency, as :—

at forstå, to understand

at gå, to go

at misforstå, to misunderstand

at undgå, to evade.

(See p. 143, *Thirty-Fourth Lesson*.)

V. It may be observed, in regard to certain prepositions (*Forholdsord*) and conjunctions (*Bindeord*), and also with reference to some adverbs, that the differences in their

terminations, which convey different meanings, are due to the survival of the different forms of inflection, which characterised the original Old Northern noun, or adjective, from which they have been derived.

Thus, for instance, in such words as *hjem*, *hjemme*, we trace the original distinction of cases in the terminal *e*, which represents the Old Northern dative in *i*, while the absence of any affix, or the termination *n*, similarly indicates the accusative; accordingly, we have: *hjem* (at *gā hjem*, to go home, acc.), *hjemme* (at *være hjemme*, to be at home, dat.).

The same indication of original distinctions of case are similarly observable in such prepositions, as: *op*, *oppe*, up; *ind*, *inde*, *inden*, in; *ud*, *ude*, *uden*, out. Here, as has already been noticed, the *e* implies rest (dat. and abl.), while its absence, or the addition of *n*, implies motion (acc.).

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

(Ordsammensætning.)

I. The main rule to be observed in the formation of compound words, is that the last member of the verbal group should indicate the part of speech to which the compound word belongs, and should express its main character. Where the compound is a noun, the whole must follow the gender and number of this last member of the group, as: *et Rødringlas*, a claret-glass; *Guldpenge* (pl.), gold money.

II. The combined words may be joined without undergoing any change, as: *et Ølglas*, a beer, or ale-glass; or they may undergo certain alterations, by taking a terminal *e*, *n*, or *ns*, or by dropping a final letter. This is either simply for the sake of euphony, or more frequently in accordance with some earlier mode of inflection, to which the words had conformed in O.N.; as: *Gudelære* (*Gud*, god; *Lære*, doctrine), mythology; *Barnepige*, nursemaid; *Øjenslyst*, lust of the eye; *hjärtensgod*, amiable; *Kvindfolk*, womankind.

III. Some compounds have in the course of time lost the distinctive features of their several parts, as in the expletives *hillemand!* *s'mænd!* which were originally *o, hellige Mænd!* oh, ye Saints! *så sandt, hjælpe mig de hellige Mænd!* it is true, so help me the Saints!

IV. Some compounds can only be interpreted by a reference to the Old Northern, as: *Davre*, breakfast; *Nadvere*, supper (*den hellige Nadver*, the Lord's supper); the O.N. being *dagverðr*, *nattverðr*, (*dag*, day; *natt*, night; *verðr*, a meal); *örkeslös*, idle (*yrkja*, O.N., work; *lauss*, loose, free).

V. Some compounds are perverted renderings of German words (more especially of low German), as: *Bommes*, fustian (Ger., *Baumseide*); *Slobrok*, dressing gown (Ger., *Schlafröck*).

For further notice of compound words, see pp. 150-152, *Thirty-Sixth Lesson*.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

(Sætningsbygning.)

I. The nominative, or subject (*Grundord*) usually precedes the predicate (*Omsagn*), as: *Hunden løber hurtig*, the dog runs quickly; but in a secondary sentence, or in asking a question, the nominative follows the verb, as: *da jeg var i Skoven, løb Hunden endnu*, when I was in the wood the dog was still running; *løb Hunden i Skoven?* was the dog running in the wood?

1. The verb, or predicate, must agree in person and number with the nominative; as: *han går og trækker Slæden efter sig*, he goes and drags the sledge after him; *Hans, Niels og Anders vare i den samme Vogn*, John, Niels, and Andrew were in the same carriage.

REMARK.—In addressing an individual the plural personal pronoun *de*, they (written with a capital *D*, as *De*, *Dem*, *Deres*) is used with a singular verb; as: *er De syg?* are you ill? *De har tabt Deres Stok*, you have lost your stick.

2. Where an adjective is used as a predicate it must agree in gender and number with the subject ; as : *Stolen er bred, men ikke høj*, the chair is broad, but not high ; *Huset er bredt, men ikke højt*, the house is wide, but not high ; *Trapperne vaskes rene*, the stairs will be washed clean.

II. Where two nouns come together, the one of which denotes possession in regard to the other, the first, as in English, is put in the possessive, or genitive case (*Ejendomsforhold*, *Ejeord*), as : *det er ikke Mandens Skyld*, it is not the man's fault. Where two or more nouns are included in the same possessive sense, it is only the last which takes the distinctive mark of the genitive ; as : *på min Moder og min Kones Vegne*, on behalf of my mother and my wife.

For a further definition of the use of the genitive, see pp. 172-175, *Forty-First Lesson*.

III. The object (*Genstand*) follows the subject and its verb directly, in a simple sentence : as : *han skriver et langt Brev*, he is writing a long letter ; *de spise lækker Smørrebrød*, they are eating delicious bread and butter (sandwiches). Some adjectives require that the objective noun should precede them ; as : *han er den Ting mægtig*, he is competent to do that.

1. Nouns of time, space, measure, value, and cost, may be used in the objective case without a preposition after neuter verbs, as : *han blev her fjorten Dage*, he stayed here a fortnight ; *han er kommen mange Mil*, he has come many miles ; *Kanden vejer ti Lod*, the can weighs ten ounces.

2. The verbs *at være* and *at blive* take the accusative after them, when used impersonally ; as : *det er mig*, it is I ; *det bliver Dem*, it will be you.

3. These verbs, as well as *at hedde*, *at kaldes*, to be called, when used as the predicate to the subject, are followed directly by a nominative without an article ; as : *han er Købmand*, he is a merchant ; *hun hedder Louise*, she is called Louise. Where an adjective is used to designate the individual, it is preceded by the independent adjective article, and has the character of a proper noun in apposition to the subject ; as : *Karl kaldtes den Store*, Charles was called the Great.

IV. The dative (*middelbare Genstand, Hensynsord*) precedes the objective, as in English, when expressed directly, as : *han gav Drengen en Skilling*, he gave the boy a skilling. But where it is expressed by a preposition, its place in a sentence changes, as : *han gav en Skilling til Drengen*, he gave a skilling to the boy.

V. When the subject is represented by a personal pronoun (*Stedord*), the latter in all respects follows the rules by which the noun would have been governed, as : *han slog sig da han faldt*, he struck himself when he fell.

REMARK.—The third person plural “they,” *de*, cannot be used in an impersonal sense as “they say,” “they think ;” the Danish mode of construction requiring that a noun, or the indefinite pronoun *man*, one, should be used before the verb, as : *Folk fortælle*, people relate ; *man siger*, one says.

1. The objective case of the personal pronoun is used in some instances in a possessive sense ; as : *det er en Ven af mig*, it is a friend of mine.

2. The interrogative and relative pronouns *hvo*, *hvem*, who, whom ; *hvad*, what ; require to be followed by another relative pronoun (*der*, *som*), when used as the subjects of the secondary clause in a sentence ; as : *jeg véd ikke, hvo der har gjort det*, I do not know who has done it. The relative pronoun is not required, however, where the adverbs *her*, here, *der*, there, may be made to precede the verb ; as : *jeg véd hvo her er*, I know who is here.

The use of the second relative is optional where the verb is preceded by an adverb, as : *hvo gerne arbejder, fortjæner vel sit Brød*, he who works willingly, well earns his bread.

When *hvad for* is used in the place of *hvilket*, which, what, it immediately precedes the noun to which it refers, and may be employed before plurals, as well as singulars ; as : *hvad for Efterretninger bringer han?* what tidings does he bring ?

8. *Hinanden*, each other, *hverandre*, one another ; can only be used reflectively and objectively, and must follow the verb

that is governed by the subject which they reflect; as: *to Venner bør hjælpe hinanden*, two friends should help each other.

For a definition of the distinctive uses of the possessive pronouns *sin, sit, sine*, and *hans, hendes, deres*, see p. 52, *Thirteenth Lesson*, and for the use of the pronouns generally, see pp. 188-185, *Forty-Third Lesson*, and pp. 188, 189, *Forty-Fourth Lesson*.

VI. The verb (*Udsagnsord*) ought to agree with its subject in person and number, and follow it in a simple sentence, as:—

min Broder og min Søster ere ikke i dette Værelse, my brother and my sister are not in this room.

In interrogatives, as already remarked, the verb precedes its subject, as:—

er min Broder i dette Værelse? is my brother in this room?
kommer De? are you coming?

REMARK.—In common parlance and familiar correspondence, and even occasionally in composition, the verb is used in the singular, irrespective of its subject, as:—

vi var der i Går, we were there yesterday.
de taler meget højt, they speak very loudly.
har vi ikke Ret? are we not in the right?

(See p. 198, *Forty-Sixth Lesson*).

1. When an infinitive, or an entire clause of a sentence constitutes the subject, the latter is considered as a singular, and the verb is made to agree with it; as:—

at dø for sit Fædreland er herligt, it is noble to die for one's Fatherland.
at de faldt var beklævet, it was sad that they should have fallen.

2. Some of the auxiliaries, as *ville, skulle, måtte, kunne, turde, burde*, take an infinitive directly as the object of the sentence, without *at*, to, as:—

jeg turde ikke se ham, I did not dare to see him.

3. Some verbs of sensation, or feeling, take an infinitive as the object of the sentence, but only when preceded by *at*, *to*, as:—

han håber at finde hende, he hopes to find her.

4. Some verbs of sense, command, etc., and the defective verb *at lade*, to let, may be followed by an entire sentence having an infinitive with an objective case, as:—

hun så ham løbe hen til Konen, she saw him run towards the woman.

jeg lader dig ikke gå på Vandet i Dag, I will not allow you to go on the water to-day.

At lade, when followed by an accusative and an active infinitive sometimes conveys to the latter a passive sense, as:—

min Fader lader et Hus bygge, my father is having a house built.

5. Every active verb may, by the help of a preposition, be converted into a passive; as: *Soldaten slog Drengen*, the soldier struck the boy; *Drengen sloges (blev slået) af Soldaten*, the boy was beaten by the soldier.

Conversely, by dropping the preposition, and converting the objective into a nominate case, a passive can be turned into an active form, as: *Landet erobredes af Fjenden*, the country was conquered by the enemy, which may be rendered *Fjenden erobrede Landet*.

Where the verb has no direct object, and is used in an intransitive, neuter sense, the passive can only be employed in an impersonal form, as: *der skrives af mig*, there is writing done by me (*jeg skriver*, I write).

6. In addition to the active and passive form, the Danish has a deponent form of the verb (*Gencirkende Form*) which in most respects is identical with the Latin deponent.

7. The indicative mood is very generally employed, both in active and deponent verbs, in the place of the optative or

subjunctive, whose use is practically limited to certain exclamations, or invocations, as :—

*Gud trøste dig ! may God comfort thee !
 Dronningen leve ! long live the queen !*

The present tense (*Nutiden*, indicative) is used, as already shown, to express both that which is passing at the moment, and that which usually occurs at a definite time, as : *Drengen går hver Dag i Skole*, the boy goes every day to school. It may also be used for the imperfect, or past, in historical or descriptive narrative, as : *Cæsar kommer, ser og sejrer*, Cæsar came, saw, and conquered ; and it is used as a future tense, when the precise period of time is indicated by the other parts of the sentence, as : *jeg rejser næste År til Amerika*, I shall go next year to America.

The past tense (*Datiden*) is used to indicate a past period, whose precise limitation is undefined ; as :—

*Generalen ødelagde Landet, the general laid waste the country.
 jeg skrev, da han kom, I was writing when he came.*

It also is used as a conditional, and as a second future ; as :—

*handlede De efter mit Råd, kunde det endnu blive godt, if you had acted in accordance with my advice, all might still go well.
 jeg gik ud i Aften, hvis jeg vidste det blev godt Vejr, I would go out this evening, if I knew that it would be fine.*

The perfect is used to express a completed past ; as :—

jeg har læst Bogen, kender altså dens Indhold, I have read the book, and therefore I know the contents.

The pluperfect is used when reference is made to something that had passed when some other past event was yet in operation ; as :—

jeg var gået, da han kom, I had gone when he came.

The present future (*Fremtiden*) is used when a future is spoken of, which may follow something present ; as :—

jeg håber at du vil gøre det, I hope that you will do it.

The imperfect future (*Förfremtiden*) is used where a future is spoken of, which has reference to a past period; as:—

jeg ønskede at han vilde komme, I wished that he would come.

8. The imperative (*Bydende Måde*) is used in the active and deponent form of verbs (but not in the passive); as:—

giv mig Kniven, give me the knife.

blues over din Frøkhed! blush for thy audacity!

9. Where participles (*Tillægsformerne*) are used as adjectives, they must be made to accord, like the latter, with their subject; as: *Bogen er skreven*; *en skreven Bog*, the book is written; a written book; *Bogstavet er skrevet*; *et skrevet Bogstav*, the letter (of the alphabet) is written; a written letter; *Bogstaverne ere skrevne*; *de skrevne Bogstaver*, the letters are written; the written letters; *en bidende Vind*, a biting wind. The same conformity is required where the participles are used in their genuine verbal character; as: *Bogstavet er blevet skrevet*, the letter has been written.

The present participle may be made to take the place of a relative pronoun, as *den hjemkommende Mand*, the man who is coming home.

REMARK.—On the other hand, the present participle cannot be used, as in English, as a gerund, or in the sense of an ablative absolute, which must be otherwise rendered; as: thinking that he was there, I went to the house, *da jeg trode han var der, gik jeg hen til Huset*.

V. The negative *ikke*, not; admits of a more extended application in Danish than in English, since it may elliptically be made to replace the verb; as: *De kommer, ikke sandt?* you are coming, are you not? (*sandt*, true); *ikke andet?* is there nothing else?

REMARK.—It must be observed that in statements, or questions, involving a negative, the adverb *jo*, yes, must be employed as an affirmation; while *ja*, yes, is required where no negation is expressed, or implied; as: *han er vel ikke syg?* he is surely not ill; *jo, han er syg*, yes, he is; *er han syg?* *ja, han er syg*.

The determination of the right place in a sentence for the negative, *ikke*, presents considerable difficulty, which can only be completely overcome by an extended knowledge of the writings of the best authors; it may, however, be accepted as a general rule:—

(1) That in simple sentences of negation, having reference to a question, or preceding statement, the negative should stand last; as:—

fordærver han sine Børn ? nej, han fordærver dem ikke, does he spoil his children? no, he does not spoil them.
véd De det ? do you know?
jeg véd det ikke, I do not know.

(2) The negative *ikke* should, if possible, stand next to the verb to which it refers; as:—

de Fleste ere glade ved ikke at behøve at ændse Børnens i et Hus, most persons are glad not to be forced to notice the children of a household.
den Enkelte, der virkelig elsker Børn, behøve Forældrene ikke at frygte, parents need not have any fear of the one individual who may chance to have a real love for children.

VI. Although prepositions (*Forholdsord*) generally may be said to govern an accusative, or dative, several, as has already been observed, (*see p. 148, Thirty-Fifth Lesson*), govern a genitive; as:—

mine Børn gå til Sengs Klokken ni, my children go to bed at nine o'clock.

1. Certain adverbs of time and place, composed of a preposition and another part of speech, admit of being dissolved into their several parts, in which case the preposition may be put at the end of the sentence; as:—

der er Skuffen hvor jeg lagde det i, there is the drawer in which I laid it.
her er Bordet jeg tog Bogen af, there is the table from which I took the book.

This post-position of some prepositions is frequent after the relative pronoun *som*; as:—

hvor er Manden, som jeg gav det til? where is the man to whom I gave it?

For a list of prepositions which do not admit of such a transposition, *see* p. 206, *Forty-Eighth Lesson*.

2. The conjunctions *at*, that; *når*, when; *hvis, i Fald, dersom*, if, in case; *altså*, consequently, therefore; may be omitted, as :—

jeg så han faldt, I saw he fell.

gjorde du det, var det mig kært, if you would do that, it would be most agreeable to me (*ifald du gjorde det, så var det mig kært*).

70710900

EDUCATIONAL WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

GERMAN.

Dr. F. Ahn's Practical Grammar of the German Language. With a Grammatical Index and Glossary of all the German Words, and with numerous Additions, Alterations, and Improvements. By D. W. TURNER, D.C.L., late Head-Master of the Royal Institution School, Liverpool, and F. L. WEINMANN, late Professor of German at the same institution. 12mo, pp. cxii., 430, cloth, 3s. 6d.

A New, Practical, and Easy Method of learning the German Language. First and Second Course in One Volume. By Dr. F. AHN. 12mo, pp. 212, cloth, 3s.

A Manual of German and English Conversations: or, Vade Mecum for English Travellers. By Dr. F. AHN. 12mo, pp. viii., 160, cloth, 2s. 6d.

German Commercial Letter Writer: a Complete Series of Letters, Circulars, and Forms suited to all the Requirements of Trade and Commerce. With a German, French, and English Glossary of all Technical Terms; and an Appendix of suitable and business-like beginnings and endings. By Dr. F. AHN, and competent English Assistants. 12mo, pp. 248, cloth, 4s. 6d.

Prose Specimens for Translation into German. With Copious Vocabulary and Explanatory Notes. By H. APEL. 12mo, pp. viii., 246, cloth, 4s. 6d.

A Graduated German Reader, consisting of a Selection from the most Popular Writers, arranged progressively. With a complete Vocabulary for the First Part. By F. O. FROEMBLING, Ph.D., late Principal German Master at the City of London School. Fourth Edition. 12mo, pp. viii., 256, cloth, 3s. 6d.

Graduated Exercises for Translation into German, consisting of Extracts from the best English Authors, arranged progressively. With an Appendix containing Idiomatic Notes. By F. O. FROEMBLING, Ph.D., late Principal German Master at the City of London School. 12mo, pp. xiv., 388, cloth, 4s. 6d.

Der Vetter. Comedy in Three Acts. By R. BENEDIX. With Grammatical and Explanatory Notes, by F. WEINMANN and G. ZIMMERMANN. 12mo, pp. 128, cloth, 2s. 6d.

The German Echo: a Faithful Mirror of German Conversation. By LUDWIG WOLFRAM. With a Vocabulary and Explanation of the Idioms and of peculiarly constructed Phrases, by H. P. SKELTON. Fifth Revised Edition, 12mo, pp. 200, cloth, 3s.

DANISH.

How to Learn Danish (Dano-Norwegian). A Manual for Students of Danish (Dano-Norwegian). Based on the Ollendorffian System of Teaching Languages, and adapted for Self-Instruction. By E. C. OTTÉ. Crown 8vo., cloth.

Key to the above, crown 8vo., cloth.

Ferrall & Repp's Danish-English Dictionary. Small 8vo., pp. 552, cloth, 7s.

S. Rosing's English-Danish Dictionary. Small 8vo., pp. 653, cloth, 7s.

A Guide to the Danish Language. Designed for English Students. By Mrs. MARIA BOJSEN. 12mo, cloth, pp. 250, 5s.

RUSSIAN.

How to Learn Russian: a Manual for Students of Russian. Based on the Ollendorffian System of Teaching Languages, and adapted for Self-Instruction. By H. RIOLA, Teacher of the Russian Language. With an Introduction by W. R. S. RALSTON, M.A. Crown 8vo., pp. 576, cloth, 12s.

Key to the above, crown 8vo, pp. 126, cloth, 5s.

A Graduated Russian Reading Book. With English Notes and a Russian-English and English-Russian Vocabulary. By H. RIOLA, Author of "A Russian Grammar." Crown 8vo., cloth. (In preparation.)

LONDON: TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.





